CHAPTER XXXI.

THE ARTICLE.

FORM.

1. As in Dutch there are two articles in English: the definite article the, and the indefinite article a or an.

2. The definite article has but one form in the written and printed language; but it is pronounced in at least three different ways, i.e. with the e as the ee in see when full-stressed, with the e as in the second syllable of picnic when unstressed and followed by a vowel, and with the e as in the second syllable of father when unstressed and followed by a consonant. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1130.

   Note I. In Early Modern English and, archaically, in later poetry, the is often shortened to th before vowels and h, as in th' enemy, th' hilt, and even before other consonants, as in th' world, where the w was probably dropped. Compare Present English he'll for he will, he'd for he would. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1129; JESPERSEN, Progr., § 199; MATZN., Eng. Gram. § 199; Mätzn., Eng. Gram. § 1130.

   i. Th'one sweetly flatters, th'other feareth harm. SHAK., Rape of Lucre., 172.
       If he should speak o' th'assignation, I should be ruined. FARQUHAR, The Recruiting Officer, III, 2, (294).
       Th'applause of list'ning senates to command, |... Their lot forbad. GRAY, Elegy, 61. (Thus throughout the works of this poet.)
       In th'olden time | Some sacrifices ask'd a single victim. BYRON.1)

   ii. “Thou hast not,” quoth th' miller, “one groat in thy purse.” The King and the Miller of Mansfield, V (PERCY, Rel., VIII, xxii). I changed o' th' sudden from the most fickle lover to the most constant husband in the world. FARQUHAR, The Recruiting Officer, III, 1, (288). Ay, there's a pattern for the young men o' th' times! Id., The Constant Couple, I, 1, (44).

   In the language of the uneducated the practice of curtailing the into th or t has not yet become extinct.

   i. My missis is in labour, and, for the love of God, step in while I run for th' doctor, for she's fearful bad. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. III, 17.
       One day, th' butcher he brings us a letter fra George. Ib., Ch. IV, 28.


H. Poutsma, A Grammar of Late Modern English. II. 33
ii. But the girls were intensely shy and reserved. As "t' vicar's daughters" they taught regularly in the Sunday-school, and a certain amount of visiting fell to their share. Flora Mason, *The Brontës*, Ch. VI, 33.

II. The forms *tother* (*t'other*) and *the tother* (*the t'other*) have arisen from *that other*, in which *that* represents the old neuter definite article. When *the* had become the usual form for the three genders, *that other* and its correlative *that one* (the *w* now heard in *one* was not developed before the 15th century) kept their ground for some time. Owing to the gradual beginning of initial vowels the *t* was then understood to belong to *other* and *one*, which gave rise to *the tother* and *the tone*.

In an analogous manner the *n* of the indefinite article has joined itself to some words with initial vowel in some dialects. In Whitby (Yorkshire) *apron*, *aunt* and *ointment* are severally represented by *nappron*, *naunt* and *nointment*. In *newt* from *ewt*, a variant of *evet* or *eft*, and in nickname from *eke-name*, the *n* has found its way in literary language.

In the 18th century *tother* or *t'other* was very common in colloquial English, innumerable instances being found in Swift, Addison, Steele, Lady Montagu, etc. In the second half it became more and more vulgar, and at the present day it is only heard from the uneducated. Franz, E. S., XII and XVII; id., Shak. Gram.² § 269; Mätz.Eng. Gram.³ I, 340; Storm, Eng. Phil.², 779; Lannert, *An Investigation into the Language of Rob. Crus./Acc.*, V, B, 1; Jespersen, *Elementarbuch der Phon.*, 621.

Sometimes we find *t'other* preceded by another modifier, e.g.: *your t'other*.

i. And so bifel, that in the tas (= heap) they founde, | Thurgh-girt (= pierced through) with many a grevous blody wounde, | Two yonge knighteis ligging by and by (= in due place), | Bothe in oon armes, wroght ful richely, | Of whiche two, Arcita hight (= was called) *that oon* | And *that other* knigheis hight Palamon. Chauc., Cant. Tales, Knightes Tale, 156.

ii. No man may serve two lordis, forsothe ethir he shal haat the toon, | And love the tother; other he shal susteyn the toon, and dispise the tothir. Wycliffe, Matth., VI, 24.¹)

O' the *t'other* side, the policy of those crafty swearing rascals ... is not proved worth a blackberry. Troil. and Cres., V, 4, 8.

Now, serjeant, I shall see who is your captain by your knocking down the *t'other*. Farquhar, *The Recruiting Officer*, HI, 2 (300).

"What's *the tother* name?" said Sam. Dick., *Pickw.*, II, 47.²)

When you mentioned the *t'other's* name, you see he couldn't stand it. Thack., Virg., Ch. I, 6.

iii. I'll lean upon one crutch and fight with *t'other*. Coriolanus, I, 1, 246.

She vaunted 'mongst her minions *t'other* day, | The very train of her worst wearing gown | Was better worth than all my father's lands. Henry VI, B, 1, 1, 246.

A young poet is liable to the same vanity and indiscretion with a young lover; and the great man who smiles upon one and the fine woman who looks kindly upon *t'other*, are both of them in danger of having the favour published with the first opportunity. Congreve, *Love for Love*, Dedication.

When her love-eye was fixed on me, *t'other*, her eye of duty, was finely obliqued. Sher., Riv., IV, 3.

1) Storm., Eng. Phil.², 780. Ib., 779.
There's a barrow 't'other side the hedge. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 163. Will, what a pity it was you had not George, instead of 't'other, to your hand! Thack., Virg., Ch. LXI, 630.

We saw the Scotch play, which everybody is talking about, 't'other night. Ib., 631. (Thus very frequently in this work.) "Who's 't'other man, then?" said Mrs. Tall. Hardy, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. LVII, 472.

iv. Let me see your 't'other hand. Farquhar, The Recruiting Officer, IV, 3, (314).

When the affairs of women come under my hands, I advise with my 't'other friend. Ib., IV, 3, (319).

3. The indefinite article has two forms, a and an, the former being used before a consonant-sound, the latter before a vowel-sound.

i. a man, a yard, a ewe, a unit, a European, such a one, a once-admired beauty, etc.;

ii. an enemy, an uncle, an aunt, etc.

Note I. The preservation of the n before vowels (8) is due to the gradual beginning of initial vowels. Jespersen, Elementarbuch der Phon., 6, 21.

II. An is, of course, also used before silent h, i.e. before heir, honour, honest, hour, hostler (also spelled ostler) and their derivatives: an heir, an heiress, an honour, an honourable action, etc.

Usage is divided before weakly aspirated h in unstressed syllables, but the ordinary practice is to keep the n. It must, however, be observed that Americans and speakers hailing from the North of England are said to aspirate this h distinctly, and this is often done also by over-precise speakers from the south, especially ladies, who are anxious to avoid the taint of vulgarism attaching to the dropping of the aspirate. To these people the use of the shortened form of the article would naturally seem preferable. Rippmann, Sounds of Spoken Eng., § 35.

There is no valid reason for substituting an for a before h in syllables with secondary stress, as in a hippopotamus, a hypothetical clause.

i. an historian [Freeman 1], an historical Arthur [J. S. Mill 1].

ii. a hysterical fit [Scott 1], a historical professor [Freeman 1], a hysterical manner [G. Eliot, Sil. Marn., II, Ch. XVI], a hypothesis [ib., II, Ch. XVII, 139], a hypothesis [Huxley 1], a historian [Macaulay 2], a hereditary possession [Mac., Fred., (663b)], a habitual drunkard [Annand., Conc. Dict., s. v. sot], a hotel [Jerome, Three men in a Boat, Ch. V, 52; Shaw, Getting Married, I, (210)], a historian [Westm. Gaz., No. 5329, 96].

iii. a hypothetical clause [Mason, Eng. Gram., § 438], a horizontal position [R. C. Leslie, Sea-painter's log, 192 3], a hippocentaur [Muirhead, Galus, III, § 97 3].

III. The form an was longer retained before sounded h than before any other consonant, the h being, perhaps, less strongly aspirated in earlier English than it is now. In Shakespeare a is the usual form, but the opposite is the case in the Authorized Version (1611).

1) Murray. 2) Foels—Koch, Wis. Gram., § 80, N. 3) Murray, s. v. horizontal, 2.
By the middle of the 18th century the present practice of using *a* before sounded *h* seems to have been observed by the majority of writers. Occasional instances of *an* before sounded *h* are, however, met even in the latest English. Sweet, N. E. Gr., § 864 ff; Storm, Eng. Phil., 1003; Al. Schmidt, Shak. Lex.; W. A. Wright, Bible Word-Book; Thun, Eng. Stud., VIII; Lannert, An Investigation into the Lang. of Rob. Crus., Accid., I; Uhrström, Stud. on the Lang. of Sam. Richardson, 35.

The following cutting from the Westm. Gaz. (Sat. Ed.), No. 6141, 46 may be acceptable:

"To the Editor of the "Saturday Westminster".

Sir,—I was sorry to notice, in the leading article of the Westminster Gazette of yesterday, a solecism, general in America, but from which our first-class journals have usually kept themselves free, namely, putting the article *a* instead of *an* before such words as *heroic*. Euphony demands that in cases where the syllable beginning with *h*, even though aspirated, is not accentuated, *an* and not *a* shall be used as the preceeding article. Thus we say: *a hovel*, but *an hôtel*; *a history*, but *an historica novel*; *a héros*, but *an heróico action*. The error, which is very distressing to a cultivated ear, no doubt arose from imperfectly instructed persons modelling their language on the precepts of a Grammar Primer instead of the practice of people of education and refinement.—Yours faithfully, Francis W. Caulfield, B.A., Oxford."

Interesting is the extract from a letter written by Hume to Robertson, quoted by Thun (Anmerkungen zu Macaulay's History VI, Eng. Stud. VIII). "But what a fancy is this you have taken of saying always *an hand*, *an heart*, *an head*? Have you an ear? Do you know that this *n* is added before vowels to prevent the cacophony, and ought never to take place before *h* when that letter is sounded? It is never pronounced in these words: why should it be wrote? Thus I should say *a history* and *an historian*, and so you would too, if you had any sense. But you tell me that Swift does otherwise. To be sure there is no reply to that, and we must swallow your *hath* upon the same authority."

*Humble* was pronounced with the *h* mute down to the 19th century and, consequently, had *an* as the form of the indefinite article (Murray). *An humble* fugitive from Folly view. Sher., School for Scand., V, 3, (438). And (I) from their lessons (sc. from the lessons of the Dead) seek and find | Instruction with *an humble* mind. Southey, The Scholar, III.

A correspondent in the Literary World of the year 1894, in page 21 observes that Parliament still presents *an humble address* to the Queen, but that Uriah Heep and his mother would have made this pronunciation impossible to the present generation, even if it had had any currency among educated speakers at the time when David Copperfield appeared. Compare the following passage:

"I am well aware that I am the *umblest* person going," said Uriah Heep, modestly; "let the other be where he may. My mother is likewise a very *umble* person. We live in a *numble* abode, Master Copperfield, but have much to be thankful for. My father's former calling was *umble*. He was sexton". Ch. XVI, 117a.

1. An horn (Chauc., Cant. Tales, Prol., 116), an hundred crowns (Taming of the Shrew, V, 2), *an humble* heart (Jul. Cæs., III, 1, 35), *an Hebrew
(Two Gentlemen, II, 5, 57); an hill (Bible, Matth., V, 14), an house (ib., X, 12), an hundredfold (ib., XIII, 8), an hundred words (Spectator, I), an hundred realms (Goldsm., Trav., 34), an hundred years (Scott, Marm., VI, Intr., viii), an hero's eye (id., Lady, II, xxii), an hundred miles (Lytton, Night and Morn., 33), an heresy (id., Rienzi, I, Ch. 1, 10), an hospital (Nuttall, Eng. Dict., s. v. lazaret).

ii. a half (Bible, Exodus, XXV, 10), a hairy man (id., Gen., XXVII, 11), a hammer (id., Jeremiah, XXIII, 29).

IV. The full form an is also occasionally met with in Present English before u or eu, whether stressed or unstressed, and before one. This is keeping up the tradition of Earlier English, in which u was pronounced as a falling diphthong as in the Dutch nieuw, and the lip-back consonant was not heard in one. Abbot, Shak. Gram. 3, § 80; Franz, Shak. Gram. 2, § 270; Sweet, Sounds of Eng., § 200; id., N. E. Gr., § 1137; Lannert, An Invest. into the Lang. of Rob. Crus., Accid., i; Uhrström, Stud. on the Lang. of Sam. Richardson, 35.

"In the spoken language the form an is now hardly ever heard" (Murray).

"To write an before such words is a gross mistake" (Ripplmann, Sounds of Spoken Eng., § 45).

i. an usurer's chain (Much Ado, II, 1, 197), an eunuch (Twelfth Night, 1, 2, 56), an union (Haml., V, 2, 283), an uniformly good man (Rich., Pamela, IV, 140); an universal good (Scott, Brid. of Trierm., Pref.), an unanimous enthusiasm (Mac., Hist., Ch. I, 137), an universal rout (id., Fred., 19).

ii. such an one (Rich., Sir Ch. Grand., VIII, 313); Ch. Kingsley, Herew., Ch. III, 27b, Browning, Soul's Trag., II; Jerome, Paul Kelver, I, Ch. I, 14b; W. Morris, The Earthly Par., Proel., 7a), many an one (W. Morris, The Earthly Par., The Doom of King Acris., 73a).

V. Vulgarly the form a is sometimes used before words beginning with a vowel.

'If the law supposes that,' said Mr. Bumble ... 'the law is a ass — a idiot'. Dick., O. T. Twist, Ch. LI, 481.

I shall take a early opportunity of mentioning it to the board. Ib., Ch. II, 25.

A aged woman of ninety ... told me that a family of some such name as yours in Blackmoor Vale came originally from these parts, and that 't were a old ancient race. Hardy, Tess, III, Ch. XVII, 139.

Once there was a old aged man over at Mellstock. Ib., 142.

MEANING.

4. The primary and most important function of both the definite and the indefinite article is to indicate that the thing of which we have formed a conception, is marked off or defined, i.e. thought of within certain physical or imaginary outlines or limits.

This must be understood thus. When there is no notion of defining, there is no room for either article; but, as the following discussions

1) Uhrström, Stud., 40.
518 CHAPTER XXXI, 4—5.

will show, there are many cases in which one or the other article is absent, notwithstanding the notion of defining which is conveyed by the discourse.

5. Besides this, its primary function of marking off or defining, which it has in common with the indefinite article, the definite article has the secondary power of denoting:

a) that the thing(s) we are speaking of, is (are) individualized or specialized, i.e. connected in our thoughts with (a) particular person(s), animal(s) or thing(s). This individualizing or specializing is mostly expressed by (a) word(s) used for the purpose, but it is often indirectly indicated by the context, or even left unexpressed altogether, as being readily understood or unimportant. In the function here described the definite article is practically a weak determinative.

i. *The* wine which he drank was sour.

ii. He was armed with a rapier and a dagger, *the* rapier he held in his right hand, *the* dagger in his left. Mason, Eng. Gram.34, §126. (i.e. the rapier with which he was armed, etc.)

I plucked a flower; this is *the* flower. Murray. (i.e. the flower that I plucked.)

iii. And God said: Let there be light: and there was light. And God saw the light, that it was good: and God divided the light from the darkness. And God called the light Day, and the darkness he called Night. Gen., I, 3-5. (i.e. the light that he had created.)

The air was full of the sweet smell of the hay. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 45. (i.e. the air of a certain district; the hay that had been made.)

When vessels are about to founder, *the* rats are said to leave 'em. Dick., ChuZ., Ch. XVI, 133a. (i.e. the rats that are in them.)

*The* Queen is still in London. (i.e. the Queen of England.)

The bride is dressed. (i.e. the bride who is in our midst, who is going to be married, etc.)

Observe the idiom in: Prince Michael had observed to the letter the instructions of the will. Westm. Gaz., No. 5382, 2c.

They were willing to be hanged or shot or die at the stake if their beloved lord would but give them the word. Ib.

Note I. Things that are single in their kind, such as *world*, *sun*, *universe*, etc., although not, of course, admitting of individualizing in the same sense as others, may yet be thought of in relation to other conceptions. Their names are, therefore, preceded by the definite article under the same conditions as ordinary class-nouns.

II. It may be observed that classifying adjuncts (Ch. IV, 1) do not imply any notion of defining, and are, accordingly, of no influence as to the use of the definite article.

Civil strife, as usual, distracted the energies of Northumbria. Green, Short Hist.

Blue ink is not so much in favour as black.

Honest men marry early, wise men not at all. Lit. World.

One of his accusations against modern opera is that it does not give a chance to the human voice. 11. Lond. News, No. 3816, 879a.
III. Individualizing or specializing adjuncts, on the other hand, mostly connote a notion of defining. (4)

Various additions have been made to the systems of the main lines to provide adequate facilities for the Durbar traffic. *Times*, No. 1814, 799d.

Here follow a few sentences showing that this connotation of defining may be absent in an individualizing adjunct.

At one end of Tynemouth a new building has been constructed, with adjacent pleasure-grounds and picturesque walls; it is a winter garden and aquarium, built by the inhabitants of the place on ground which is given them by the benevolent despot of the district, the Duke of Northumberland, for a nominal rent. *Escott, Eng.*, Ch. III, 30.

Mr. Summer was mistaken in concluding that love of slavery and hatred of the Union dictated the foolish things that were often said and the unrightful things that were sometimes done by England. *McCarthy, Short Hist.*, Ch. XXIV, 375. The story of his hair-breadth escape, and how it was thought of her that had nerved him to endurance, would move her he was sure. *John Oxenham, Great-heart Gillian*, Ch. XIII, 90.

From inquiries made at the India Office, it appears that [etc.]. *Times*, No. 1814, 799d.

Visitors from Europe will be well advised to obtain, as soon as may be, . . . the official handbook of information on the Dehli Durbar railway. *Ib.*

Readers who appreciate this paper, may give their friends an opportunity of seeing a copy. *Ib.*

The absence of the definite article is, of course, quite natural when the specializing adjunct assumes a classifying nature (Ch. XXIII, 13, Obs. II and III), as in:

*Family life* is the root of empire. *Nineteenth Cent.*, No. CCCXCXVI, 258. Do not let us rush to the conclusion that treaty law and international obligations are useless, because they break down under some emergencies. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4961, 1b.

The only safe hypothesis for us, to whom sea-power is vital, is that what a competitor can do, he will do or may do. *Ib.*, No. 4961, 1c.

b) that the conception we have formed is generalized. Ch. XXIX, 14 and 21. See also *Sweet, N. E. Gr.*, § 38.


iii. *The steam-gauge* is an instrument for indicating the pressure of steam in a boiler. *Webst.*

iv. As *the Germans* see the Kaiser; as *the British* see the Kaiser. *Westm. Gaz.*

*Note I.* A specialized conception may in its turn be generalized. (Ch. XXIX, 14a, Note I.)

*The African elephant* is taller than the Indian. The care which covers the seed of the tree under tough husks and stony cases, provides for the human plant the mother's breast and the father's house. *Emerson, Domestic Life* (Eliz. Jane Irv., *Lit. Read.*, III, 238).

II. A generalized conception must not be confounded with an indefinite number of individuals of the same class indicated by a singular noun preceded by the definite article, as in *The king went out to hunt the wild boar*.

I this application the definite article has the same function as under a. *Eilert Ekwall, The Unchanged Plural in Eng.*, 4.
III. A conception generalized sometimes approximates to a conception of a thing that is single in its kind. Thus in the following sentence
the field representing a generalized conception, and the air and the water indicating conceptions single in their kind, are understood in the same way:
The desire of earning fame in the sports of the field, the air, and the water, was uppermost in the breast of his friend Winkle. Dick., Pickw., Ch. I, 3.

that the most eminent specimen is meant of whatever is expressed by the noun. In this function the definite article has strong stress. (2.)

I am alone the villain of he earth. Ant. and Cleop., IV, 6, 30.
Clive was eminently the Nabob, the ablest, the most celebrated, the highest in rank, the highest in fortune, of all the fraternity. Mac., Ess., Clive, (535a).
He is the pianist of the day. Onions, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 270.
This hero, so well-known that his name need not be mentioned, because he is the champion, the victor — who should he be except Siegfried? Vernon Lee, The Victor of Xanten (Westm. Gaz., No. 4961, 36).
The Young Men's Christian Association would not deny that humility is a virtue. It is because there are some people who think it the virtue, that the row begins. Chesterton- (II. Lond. News, No. 3677, 495c).

“Good Housekeeping”. The Magazine for the Home. Advertisement. Observe the use of the thing, as in: Miss Pole clutched my arm, and begged me not to turn, for “it was not the thing’. What “the thing” was I never could find out, but it must have been something eminently dull and tiresome. Mrs. Gaskell, Cranford, Ch. IX, 172.
He really looked quite the genteel thing, and was taken by everybody to be a person of consideration. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 22.

Note I. This full-stressed the differs but little from another, which has the force of marking that of all possible specimens or varieties a particular one of special importance or significance is meant.
We spoke of many subjects, but not of the subject. (i. e. the subject which was nearest to my heart, etc.)

This is also the force of the definite article in the Shakespearean expression to die the death when, what is mostly the case, it is applied to the death inflicted by law.
She hath betray'd me, and shall die the death. Ant. and Cleop., IV, 14, 26. Either to die the death or to abjure | For ever the society of men. Mids., I, 1, 65.
For God commanded, saying, Honour thy father and mother; and, He that curseth father or mother, let him die the death. Bible, Matth., XV, 4.

II. Strong-stressed the may be used absolutely.

“How goes it?” — “All well,” said Mr. Gills, pushing the bottle towards him. He took it up, and having surveyed and smelt it, said with extraordinary expressions: “The?” — “The,” returned the instrument-maker. Dick., Domb., Ch. IV, 32.

III. When it has become conventional to denote a particular person animal or thing in the above way, the definite article loses its strong stress, while the noun assumes the character of a proper name. (23.)
This is the case in *The Lord (= God), The Bible, the Scriptures the Nativity, the Conquest, the Reformation, the Peninsula, etc.*
She thinks of nothing but the Isle of Wight, and she calls it the Island, as if there were no other island in the world. *Jane Austen, Mansfield Park, Ch. II, 17.*
When London people talk of the river, they always mean the Thames. *Günth., Leerb., 76.*

IV. To emphasize the notion of particular importance the noun is sometimes followed by an adjunct made up of of + the plural of the same noun.
The land question is the question of questions in Russia. *Rev. of Rev., CCXXIV, 308a.*

d) that a person, animal or thing, in all their eminent characteristics is meant. A similar idea may also be expressed by the indefinite article. (7, d.) The definite article seems to have this function only after an intensive, mostly quite.
She was quite the woman of business, and always judged for herself. *Mrs. Gaskell, Cranford, Ch. XIII, 238.*
I was going on behind the screens, when a gentleman (quite the gentleman, I can assure you) stepped forwards and asked if I had any business he could arrange for me. *Ib., Ch. IX, 167.*
He is quite the gentleman. *Lytton, Night and Morning, 315.*
Babcock was too much the gentleman to mention it again. *Anstey, Fallen Idol, Ch. XVI, 209.*
Compare with this also the construction in: Enrico was of the Germans, German. *Edna Lyall, Knight-Errant, Ch. I, 8.*

6. a) The definite article is the descendant of the Old English neuter demonstrative pronoun *paet,* which was used also as a definite article. Even in Present English the definite article sometimes has the force of either this or that as a demonstrative, or of that as a determinative.
Cæsar said to me, Darest thou, Cassius, now ' Leap in with me into this angry flood, | And swim to yonder point? — Upon the word, | Accoutred as I was, I plunged in. *Jul. Cæs., I, 2, 104. (the = this.)*
He meditated curse more dread, | And deadlier, on the clansman's head, | Who, summon'd to his chieftain's aid, | The signal saw and disobeyed. *Scott, Lady, III, xi, 6. (The article before clansman's head is determinative, that before signal is demonstrative.)*
And from his place on the coach-roof the eager young fellow looked down upon the city, with the sort of longing desire which young soldiers feel on the eve of a campaign. *Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXVIII, 297.*

In some combinations the use of the definite article instead of the demonstrative pronoun has become the rule. Thus in:
for the day. The hammering of the Steam-Boiler Works had stopped for the day. *Walt. Bes., The Bell of St. Paul's.*
upon the instant. Light flashed up in the room upon the instant. *Dick., Chrîstm. Car., II, 33. (The meaning of this phrase passes into that of at the same instant, immediately. It has another meaning in: Important decisions which have to be taken on the instant, are not likely to offer no occasion for criticism. *Spectator, Westm. Gaz., No 5388, 16c.)*

at (for) the moment. i. At the moment it (sc. the structure) has a somewhat incomplete appearance. 11. Lond. News, No. 3832, 452.

ii. He looked down upon the basket, which he had for the moment forgotten. Dick., Chuz., Ch. XXXVI, 285a.

He cannot for the moment recall it to mind. Notes and Queries. For the moment we are over-supplied. Westm. Gaz., No. 5382, 2a.

for the purpose. i. The young Count Von Altenburg had been recalled from the army for the purpose. Wash. Irv., Sketch-Bk., Spectre Bridegroom, 155.

By an Order in Council, passed for the purpose, he has been promoted to the rank of an Admiral of the Fleet. Times.

ii. The fiddler plunged his hot face into a pot of porter, especially provided for that purpose. Dick., Christm. Car5, 11, 46.

I occupy my place in the Cathedral, where we all went together, every Sunday morning, assembling first at school for that purpose. Id., C0p., Ch. XVIII, 1326.

at (for) the time. i. * There was a heavy gale at the time. A Ship on Fire (St0f., Leesb., 1, 3).

** My aunt and I were at that time vacating the two cottages at Highgate. Dick., Cop., Ch. LV, 391a.

ii. (She had) her darlings about her (for the time neither quarrelling nor crying). Ch. Bronte, Jane Eyre, Ch. I, 1.

The definite article is also a full determinative in:

Slowly and sadly Enoch answer'd her. "His head is low, and no man cares for him. I think I have not three days more to live; I am the man". Ten., En. Arden. 897. (i.e. that man whom we are speaking about.)

b) The definite article, as the descendant of the old instrumental case ἐπί of the neuter demonstrative ἐπί, is used adverbially before comparatives as in the more the merrier, the worse for liquor. Ch. XXX, 40.

c) The exact grammatical function of what appears as the definite article before certain predicative superlatives and before adverbial superlatives, as in the actions of which we are the very proudest, he writes the worst, is hard to define. Ch. XXX, 34—36.

7. The indefinite article has the special function of marking that our conception is one that has not yet been mentioned, and that it is not specialized. Its force may furthermore be:

a) that of a weak one, especially before the names of measures, as in: a foot high, wait a minute.

b) that of a weak some or a certain as in:

There is a tide in the affairs of men, Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune. Jul. Cas., IV, 3, 218.

Let a man go down with the proper messages, let a servant carry a note. Thack., Virg., Ch. II, 18.

Once upon a time there was a youth named Kilwych. Now Kilwych set out on a gray steed strong of limb. Onions, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 274.
Note. In Early Modern English *some* often appears to have the value of the indefinite article, especially in connection with *certain.* 


1. Gentle Lucetta, fit me with such weeds | As may beseem *some* well-reputed page. 

Two Gentleman, II, 7, 43.

A man is never undone till he be hanged, nor never welcome to a place, till *some certain* shot be paid and the hostess say ‘Welcome!’ lb., II, 5, 6.

c) that of a weak *any* as in:

I know no man, who has ever paid me *a* particular attention, whom I would not prefer to Mr. Surface. 


She was scrupulous in her devotions, good to the poor, never knowingly did anybody *a wrong.* 

THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IV, 37.

An island is a piece of land surrounded by water. 


Note I. Compare with the above the following quotations in which *any* appears with weak stress, and, consequently, hardly differs from the indefinite article:

And so she sobbed on like *any* child. 

CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XIX, 84b.

Shakespeare foresaw the difficulty of representing a merchant... as executing a bond so hazardous in its conditions, that *any* child would shrink from signing it. 

FURNES, *Note to 'Merch. of Ven.*, I, 1, 2'. (Macm. Eng. Clas.)

He bathed her face with a care equal to *any* woman’s. 


Sometimes weak *any* is merely a metrical variant of the indefinite article.

Or, if there were a sympathy in choice, War, death or sickness did lay siege to it (sc. love), | Making it momentany as a sound, | Swift as a shadow, short as any dream. 

MIDS. *Night Dream*, I, 1, 141-144.

But the meek maid | Swiftly forbore him ever, | being to him; Meeker than *any* child to a rough nurse, | Milder than *any* mother to a sick child. 


Conversely the indefinite article sometimes has the value of strong *any.*

There a dozen girls in this dead-alive neighbourhood, who are a thousand times prettier than you, and who can play, or paint, and all that, while you can’t do a thing, and yet a fellow can’t get you out of his head. 

BAR. VON HUTTEN, *Pam.*, VI, Ch. VI, 311.


II. As a weak *any*, the indefinite article is sometimes hardly distinguishable from the generalizing definite article. (5, b.) Thus it is difficult to see any difference between. A *lion* is a beast of prey and 

*The lion* is a beast of prey. (The indefinite article before beast is a weak *some.*) 

Compare MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*, III, 191. Similarly in the following quotations the meaning would hardly be changed by the use of the other article:

1. One eye had lost its pupil, and was glaring and spectral; but the other had a gleam of *a genuine devil* in it. 

WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 359.

Charles was more of *a gentleman* than *a king*, and more of *a wit* than *a gentleman.*

A cigarette is for the trivial moments of life; a cigar for its fulfilments, its pleasant comfortable retrospections; but in real distress — in the solving of a question, the fighting of a difficulty — a pipe is man's eternal solace. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, JOHN CHILCOTE, M.P., Ch. XII, 130.

II. I was ever of opinion that the honest man who married and brought up a large family, did more service than he who continued single, and only talked of population. GOLDSMITH, VICAR, Ch. I.

Old and broken-down as he (sc. the horse) looked, there was more of the lurking devil in him than in any young filly in the country. WASH. IRVING, SKETCH-BK., XXXII, 359.

By disposition, perhaps, he was more of the politician than the lawyer. Westm. Gaz., No. 4919, 2b.

Note the varied practice in: Until pride be subdued, there is more hope of a fool than of the sinner. SCOTT, ABBOT, Ch. IV, 53.

Thus also in the following quotation we may assume the suppression of either the indefinite or the generalizing definite article (31, b, Note IX). See also the latter part of the first sentence on this page.

In difficulty a silent tongue and a cool head are usually man's best weapons. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, JOHN CHILCOTE, M.P., Ch. XV, 164.

III. Sometimes it is open to question whether the indefinite article is to be understood as a weak any or a weak one. Thus the following sentence is ambiguous:

You are not listening to a word I am saying. OSCAR WILDE, DORIAN GRAY, Ch. V, 89.

IV. Some nouns preceded by the indefinite article in the meaning of weak any, are equivalent to indefinite pronouns: Thus a man, a fellow, etc. are approximate equivalents of the Dutch men. (Ch. XL, 195, a.)

d) to indicate that a person, animal or thing in all their eminent characteristics is meant (5, d), as in:

So was it when my life began; | So is it now I am a man. WORDSWORTH.

A man is never a man, till he can defy wind and weather, range the woods and wilds, sleep under a tree and live on hunter's fare. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., HANDL., I, 133).

But teach high thought, and amiable words | And courtliness, and the desire of fame, | And love of truth, and all that makes a man. TEN., GUIN., 480.

Since the author of "Tom Jones" was buried, no writer of fiction among us has been permitted to depict to his utmost power a Man. THACK., PEND., PREF. (The author has man printed in capitals.)

Note. Also in this function the indefinite article to a certain extent interchanges with the definite. (5, d.) This is shown by their alternative use in:

When you durst do it, then you were a man; | And, to be more than what you were, you would | Be so much more the man. MACB., I, 7, 51.

"You are too much a man of the world not to see with the eyes of the world. If other people think Sotherton improved, I have no doubt that you will." — "I am afraid I am not quite so much the man of the world as might he good for me in some points." JANE AUSTEN, MANSFIELD PARK, Ch. X, 102.

8. a) The indefinite article is the descendant of the Old English an,
which was used both as a numeral and as the indefinite article. Even in Late Modern English a(n) often has practically the same value as the numeral one. The use of a(n) instead of one causes the sentence stress to be thrown forward on to the following noun, which, as unity is the prominent idea in our minds, seems to be contrary to sense. It is especially frequent after:

1) the negative not. (Ch. XL, 119, Obs. 1.)
He lay in the dark empty house, with not a man, a woman, or a child, to say he was kind to me in this or that, and for the memory of one kind word I will be kind to him. Dick., Christm. Car. 5, IV, 96.

2) certain prepositions. In this combination a(n) often has the secondary meaning of the same. For instances in SHAKESPEARE see ABBOT, Sh a k. Gram 5, § 81; FRANZ, Sh a k. Gram 2, f 270. The prepositions referred to, are especially:

at. Seven at a blow. ANDREW LANG. The Blue Fairy Book, The Brave Little Tailor.
The tide of human progress is raised at intervals to higher levels at a bound. SARAH GRAND, The Heavenly Twins, 1, 128.
He emptied the glass at a draught. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXVII, 243.
It see it all at a glance. BYRON, Our Boys, I, (12).
To catch a hundred fish at a haul. WEBST., s. V. haul.
O proud Death! What feast is toward in thine eternal cell, That thou so many princes at a shot So bloodily hast struck? H a m. I., V, 2, 377.
Martha ... told them ... how many hours she worked at a stretch. Christm. Car. 5, III, 72. (Also, but less frequently (up)on a stretch, see below).
Its (sc. of the Budget) rejection by the Lords would at a stroke reduce the House of Commons to an inferior place in the Constitution. Westm. Gaz., No. 5137, 1c.

Two at a time. MURRAY.
They saw that he sat for a few minutes at a time like one in a brown study. Id., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. XXIV, 91a.
For months at a time (they lived) on the most amicable terms. Thack., Virg., Ch. XXXVIII, 393.
He had transmuted the subject at a touch. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 149.
In. At this point the Republicans rose in a body and shouted "Vive la République." Times.
"How delightfull!" cried Marian and Christie in a breath. PHILIPS, Mrs. Bouverie, 73.
They were crying, keening and laughing in a breath. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography.
Loder realised in a glance that the most distinguished of women could wear such ornaments and not have her beauty eclipsed. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XIII, 142.
In a word it was one of those unparalleled storms. WASH. IRV., The Storm-Ship (STOF., Hand I., I, 83).
of. You'll find two of a face as soon as of a mind. PROV.
Birds of a feather flock together. Id.
The gentleman of the profession ben't all of a mind. SHER., Rivals, I, I.
We are of a mind once more. Id., School for Scand., III.
At Spa no two guests are of a nation. Ib., II, 2.
All their proceedings were of a piece with this demand. MAC., Hist., I Ch. II, 232.
I detest people who are always doing 'outré' things like that — it's all of a piece with their fads about no stays and Jaeger's woollen clothes. Edna Lyall, A Hardy Norseman, Ch. XIII, 110.
The power of these princes was much of a size with that of the Kings of Sparta. Swift. 1)

on. They were both tall and their eyes were on a level. G. Eliot, Mid., V, Ch. XLIII, 319.
I don't put myself on a level with you. Dick., Chuz., Ch. XL, 319b.
Our prudery in this respect is just on a par with the artificial blushes of a courtesan. Sher., Critic, I, 1.
We always played seven hours on a stretch. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. I, 2.
(Also, apparently with no appreciable difference (up)on the stretch, as in If he goes to London for months upon the stretch. Mrs. Wood, East Lynne, III, 50.) Compare also: He then sleeps for six weeks on an end. Punch. (= aan één stuk).
to. He always succeeded in being accurate to a figure. T. P. 's Weekly, No. 482, 130a.
The very gold and silver fish ... to a fish, went gasping round and round their little world in slow and passionless excitement. Dick., Christm. Car., III, 61. (= not one fish excepted.)
The monks were Danes to a man. Ch. Kingsley, Herew., Ch. XXVI, 108b.
If the men wavered at all, the women, to a woman, were on Johnny's side. Kath. Tynan, Johnny's Luck.
without. Mrs. Bretton ... desired me to open my drawers and show my dresses; which I did without a word. Ch. Bronte, Villette, Ch. XX, 258.
Note I. The following quotations may show that the numeral one is also used in some of the above collocations. Thus after:

at. You do not know what it is, at one blow, to be deserted by a lovely and fascinating creature. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XI, 89.
The appointment of the Bishop of Stepney at one bound to the Archbishops of York has startled many people. Rev. of Rev., CCXXXVIII, 517a.
These myriads of cows stretching under her eyes from the far east to the far west, outnumbered any she had ever seen at one glance before. Hardy, Tess, III, Ch. XVI, 133. (Also in one glance: The young stranger, comprehending in one glance the result of the observation ... answered [etc.]. Scott, Quent. Durw., Ch. II, 43.)
If we can dispense with physical force, let us abolish the Navy altogether and save £32,000,000 at one stroke. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIX, 232a.
If the Peers are determined not to assent to the Licensing Bill in anything like its present shape, then it is better that it should be disposed of at one stroke. Westm. Gaz.
Go = a quantity of anything supplied at one time. Murray.
Scripture subjects; such as I have never seen since in the hands of pedlars, without seeing the whole of Peggotty's brother's house again, at one view. Dick., Cop., Ch. III, 15b.
in. In one word things between Sir William and me must be behind the curtain. Goldsmith, Good-nat. man, V.
of. He has conspired against me, like the rest, and they are but birds of one feather. Dick., Chuz., Ch. III, 22b.
The Bishops who lately met at Lambeth, were of one mind with the Trade Unionists. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVI, 311a.

1) Murray. 2) Flügel.
Compare with the above also: i. Mr. Pickwick and his followers rose as one man. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXIV, 218.
All western and south-western England rose as one man. Green, Short Hist., Ch. II, § 5, 82.
Spain rose as one man against the stranger. Ib., Ch. V, § 4.
The camp rose to its feet as one man. Bret Harte, The Luck of Roaring Camp, 6.

ii. They (sc. the birds) will rise, when they finally do go, like one bird, will cross the sea in a large and various crowd [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 5454, 3a.

iii. She wondered by what gift he could be sleepless and saddlesore, serene and temperately gay, all at the one time. Hal. Sutcl., The Lone Adventure, Ch. II, 36.

iv. She said in the same breath that it would be ungenerous not to marry Boldwood, and that she couldn't do it to save her life. Hardy, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. XX, 150.

Quesada, the conqueror of New Granada, ... cannot be named in the same breath with Vasco Nunes de Balbao. Athen., No. 4451, 183a.

v. That you should make fun of his infirmities and vulgarities in the self-same breath... is simply unendurable. James Payn, That Friend of Sylvia's.

II. Instances of the indefinite article being used in the sense of the numeral one or the same when no preposition precedes, seem to be very rare. The following is the only one to hand at the moment of writing:

These foils have all a length. Haml., V, 2, 276.

b) Sometimes the indefinite article has the full force of an indefinite pronoun. It is then practically equivalent to some or a certain. We find it in this meaning especially:

1) in certain expressions such as:

a) after a sort (kind), after a fashion, for a time, in a manner, in a measure, in a sense, of a kind (sort), (up)on a day;

β) to have a way, to have a trick.

i. * The Nationalists, indeed, have a policy, after a sort, though even they are not by any means agreed, either in their objects or in their methods. Times.

** The hotel ... has separate bedrooms and beds of a sort, and the traveller is done for (or more frequently "done") after a fashion. Westm. Gaz., No. 6311, 3a.

*** The effect of the successes of Edward the First and of Henry the Fifth was to make France, for a time, a province of England. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. I, 18.

On the south of the Ebro the English won a great battle, which for a time decided the fate of Leon and Castile. Ib., 19.

Flying-fish = a fish which can sustain itself in the air for a time by means of the long pectoral fins. Annand., Stud. Dict.

**** He complained loudly of thus being in a manner dispossessed of his territories by mere bugbears. Wash. Irv., Dolf. Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 114).

Torture in a public school is as much licensed as the knout is in Russia. It would be ungentlemanlike (in a manner) to resist it. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 44.

***** Goodness in a measure implies wisdom. Smiles, Charac., I, 8.1)

****** This was in a sense compulsory upon the writer. Mrs. Gask., Life of Ch. Brontë, 403.

1) Murray, S. v. measure, 14, b.
It was *in a sense*, the great event of his life! *Edna Lyall, Hardy Norseman*, Ch. IV, 39.

*In a sense* it is true; in another sense it is false. *Athen.* No. 447, 67b.

(Here the indefinite is even used in contrast with another.)

******** He had, of course, predecessors of a kind. *Ath€n.*

He held convictions of a kind, but what these convictions were, nobody knew. *Norris, My Friend Jim.*

********* It was upon a day, a summer's day. *Byron, Don Juan*, I, CII.

Now *on a day*—about the year 1054—... Lady Godiva sat... in her bower with her youngest son,... at her knee. *Ch. Kingsley, Herew.*, Ch. I, 9a.

ii. *Brown Major,* had a *trick* of bringing up unpleasant subjects. *Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 94.

** The carrier *had a way* of keeping his head down, like his horse. *Dick., Cop.*, Ch. III, 14b.

He *had a way* of suggesting, not teaching—putting things into my head, and then leaving them to work out their own problems. *Lytton, Caxtons*, I, Ch. IV, 19.

** Note I. There can be little doubt that *some* or a *certain* could be substituted for the indefinite article without detriment to idiomatic propriety in most or all of the above collocations. Sufficient documentary evidence is not, however, to hand at the moment of writing to prove this.

She was perhaps unconsciously wishful that he might *in some measure* be subject to her influence. *Trol., Fram.t Pars.*, Ch. I, 3.

II. Sometimes the indefinite article would seem to be preferable to *some*, when the latter might be understood in the sense of *some considerable*. (Ch. XL, 178, Obs. II). Thus in the combination *for a time.*

III. Also *one*, partly as a numeral, partly as an indefinite pronoun, sometimes appears as an approximate equivalent of the indefinite article in the above sense.

"Are they all brothers, sir?" Inquired the lady who had carried the "Davy" or safety lamp. "*In one sense* they are, ma'm", replied Squeers. *Dick., Nich. Nickl.*, Ch. VI, 29a.

2) before the proper name of a person preceded by a title. When the title is absent, *one* takes the place of *a*. (Ch. XL, 159.)

She is engaged to be married to *a* lieutenant Osborne, a very old flame. *Thack., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 145.

He inquired for *a* Mr. Maldon. *Miss Braddon, Lady Audley's Secret*, I, Ch. V, 57.

Before abstract nouns the indefinite article often has the value of the indefinite num*eral* *some*. (38—40.)

I find *a knowledge* of the Greek and Roman types of mind a help, not a hindrance to a study of the condition$^\dagger$ of modern life. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 469, 578a.

Of late years, the value of *a knowledge* of natural science has become generally recognized as a potent force in our educational system. *Bookman*, No. 261, 103.

*d) Further pregnant meanings of the indefinite article may be observed in:

1) Scrooge was not *a man* to be frightened by echoes. *Dick., Christm. Car.*, I, 20. (= *a kind of* (a) *man*, the word-group *a man* being a kind of prop-word. Ch. XL, 195, a.)

2) His habit is to regale his readers with four false quantities *to a page*. *Mac., Add.*, (736a). (= *to each page.*)

---

e) The indefinite article is sometimes found before a numeral (+ plural noun) to remove its definiteness or to express an approximate estimate. This usage, which at one time was as common in English as it is in Modern Dutch, is now usual only when the numeral is preceded by good (Ch. XXVI, 17, a, Note II), and before many and few (Ch. IV, 6). See also Murray, s. v. A, adj.2, 2.

f) What appears as an indefinite article now in such expressions as twice a day, is in reality a worn-down proclitic form of the Old English preposition an or on. It was at first used only before nouns denoting time, but, when its meaning as a preposition was no longer felt, it came also to be placed before other nouns denoting measure, as in a penny a mile, sixpence a pound, tenpence a hundred, so much a head. This distributive use of the indefinite article appears now as a modification of the numerical meaning. (7, a.) Compare Murray, s. v. A, adj.2, 4; prep.1, 8, b; Sweet, N. E. Gr., § 2046; Mätzner, Eng. Gram.2, III. 191.

Note I. The following quotations may show that other idioms with approximately the same meaning as that of the indefinite article in the above combinations, and corresponding to those used in Dutch, are current in English also:

\(a\) with the definite article:

i. Wheat was at twenty shillings the quarter. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. III, 409.

ii. Favoured spots are pointed out in Manitoba in which wheat has given 60 bushels to the acre. Times.

The average yield of the district this year is 30 bushels to the acre. Ib.

The amount of dirt in the Chicago atmosphere, at a height of 35 ft., is six tons to the acre. Westm. Gaz.

Oxford were rowing at about 34 to the minute. Times, No. 1839, 259b.

iii. He bullied and punished me; not two or three times in the week, nor once or twice in the day, but continually. Ch. Bronte, Jane Eyre, Ch. I, 5.

Two or three evenings in the week he used to disappear mysteriously for several hours. Ch. Kingsley, Alt. Locke, Ch. VI, 68.

He devotes one day in the week to receiving the widows and the orphans. Lytton, Rienzi, IV, Ch. I, 151.

Twice in the week, however, under the graceful direction of Stella, there were public days at the deanery. D. Laing Purves, Life of Swift, 27.

Give him ten drops of this in a little water, that is to say twice in the hour. Buchanan, That Winter Night, Ch. XI, 95.

How many posts have you in the day here? Murray, s. v. post, 4.

\(b\) with the indefinite article:

i. The trees blew steadfastly one way, never writhing round, and scarcely tossing back their boughs once in an hour. Ch. Bronte, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXV.

He comes in his cab twice or thrice in a week. Thack., Pend., II, Ch. V, 51.

They (sc. the old bay posters) were drawing my aunt's yellow chariot, in which she never went out but thrice in a year. d., Sam. Titm., Ch. VIII, 91.

My dear girl has been to see us lately every day, sometimes twice in a day. Dick., Bleak House, Ch. LX, 500.

ii. His habit is to regale his readers with four false quantities to a page. Mac., A d d., (736a).
with each: Among the musical disciples who assembled, one evening in each week, to receive his instructions in psalmody, was Katrina van Tassel. Wash. Irw., Sketch-Bk., The Legend of Sleepy Hollow, 350.

with every: i. Twice every Sunday did we march down the centre aisle of St. Mary's church. Miss Braddon, My First Happy Christm. (Stof., Hardl., I, 66).

ii. This medal is to be awarded once in every five years. Times.

II. Also the Latin per is frequently used in a sense similar to that of the above a, especially in language referring to the paying or receiving of money. In this combination day, month and year are mostly severally replaced by diem, mensem and annum.

i. * They begin, about fifty, to attend twice per diem at the polite churches and chapels. Fielding, Jos. Andr., I, Ch. VIII, 16.

** The salary is Rs. 500 per mensem, rising by annual increments of Rs. 50 to Rs. 750 per mensem. Athen., No 4398, 145c.

*** This unlucky page engaged in an evil hour at six pounds ten per annum, was a source of continual trouble to me. Dick., Cop., Ch. XLVIII, 343b.

Her (Lady Byron's) sole income at this time was £ 130 per annum. Life of Byron (Chamb., Childe Harold).

ii. The works of George Eliot... in 19 Volumes. Also sold separately, price 5 s. per volume. Cabinet Edition.

The writer suggests various methods of preventing waste of what is still the cheapest source of light per candle power. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 171b.

The production per head sank in Victoria from £ 26 in 1871 to £ 25 in 1901. lb., CCXXXI, 256a.

The remuneration will be on a scale of 1s. 6d. per paper examined. Acad. and Lit.

Mr. Wyndham promises us a tax of 2s. per quarter on corn and flour. Westm. Gaz.

USE.

9. When our conceptions are of a nature as described above, the article, whether definite or indefinite, is yet often suppressed. Though the suppression is sometimes simply a matter of arbitrary usage, and any attempt to account for it would often seem to be futile, yet it will be found that in the majority of cases there are certain well founded reasons for it.

These reasons are chiefly the following:

a) The noun from the nature of its application denotes a conception thought of within certain limits, and cannot be accompanied by any specializing adjunct, so that there is no need for either article. This is the case with proper names when used in their ordinary function, as in John is a lazy fellow, England is a mighty empire. For those cases when proper names, owing to a peculiar application, are accompanied by either the definite or indefinite article, see 22 ff.

The omission of the article is often extended to ordinary common nouns, when they are applied in a way which causes them to resemble proper names, as in Will you help me, father? There's father coming. For details see 16, 43.
b) The grammatical character of the noun is modified so as to resemble that of other parts of speech which have no adnominal modifiers:

1) The noun used as nominal part of the predicate or as predicative adnominal adjunct often approximates more or less to an adjective, with the result that the article is omitted (Ch. XXIII, 16). For details see 44—52.

2) The noun has assumed the character of an indefinite pronoun or numeral, the modification often entailing the loss of the article. Thus we find Things had come to this, He has plenty of money, because things and plenty are respectively synonymous with the indefinite it and much. For details see 57—60.

c) The 'specializing is vague, so that there is no call for a word whose chief function is to announce the fact that the conception indicated by the noun should be understood in a specialized way. Thus we find After dinner he went for a walk, He was taken to hospital, because the specializing notions are but dimly thought of. For details see 15.

d) The noun is part of an expression whose component parts are not thought of separately, but are understood as denoting a kind of unit. Thus we say to drop anchor, to change countenance, to say grace, etc. because these expressions stand for one idea. For details see 63.

e) To the above causes, which make themselves felt in ordinary language, literary as well as colloquial, we may add the universal vis inertiae, i.e. the desire of saving time, space and trouble, which is especially prevalent in commercial language, and in a still higher degree in the language of telegrams and advertisements. The article being the part of speech, which of all others can be best dispensed with, it is but natural that it should be the first to be dropped. Thus for at foot of bridge, tram-terminus and facing main entrance to palace, which is a portion of an advertisement, ordinary language would have at the foot of the bridge, the tram-terminus, and facing the main entrance to the palace.

f) It stands to reason that, when the noun is preceded by a modifier which, besides other functions, has the power of indicating specialization, there is no occasion to use the definite article. Thus we say this book, my book, John's book, not *the this book, *the my book, *the John's book. Thus also the king's book, in which the definite article belongs to the modifier, and where the use of an additional definite article as a modifier of the head-word alone would occasion an incongruous accumulation of articles. But there is no such reason to drop the article in the periphrastic equivalent of the last-mentioned collocation: the book of the king, in which, on the contrary, its absence would result in an impossible construction *book of the king. Similarly when an attributive genitive is modified by a demonstrative pronoun, a possessive pronoun or another genitive, as in this boy's book, my brother's book, my master's mistress's maid, usage invariably rejects the definite article.

In a collocation containing a classifying genitive (Ch. XXIV, 44, Obs. V), the definite article may, however, belong to the head-word:
The ladies' umbrellas which I sold that day, fetched a higher price than the gentlemen's umbrellas. Compare also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2059.

Finally it must be observed that in verse the article, whether definite or indefinite, is often discarded, when it would interfere with the measure.

i. Sweetest nut has sourest rind. As you like it, III, 2, 115.


Conversely it is, for the same reason, sometimes used in verse, where ordinary prose would reject it.

It is not that I dread the death. BYRON, Parisina, XIII.

He goes on Sunday to the Church. Longf., Vil. Blacksmith, V.

His hair is crisp, and black and long, | His face is like the tan. Ib., II.

The above seem to be the principal causes that may be responsible for the suppression of the article. They operate both in Dutch and in English, but frequently take effect in one language, not in the other. It is especially the definite article that is more frequently dropped in English than in Dutch, chiefly owing to the fact that in English it has retained more of its original demonstrative or determinative force than in Dutch. It is hardly necessary to observe that when strong-stressed (5, c), its suppression is out of the question.

Conversely it will be seen that the indefinite article is often found in positions in English, where the Dutch idiom rejects it. In both languages, however, the use or suppression of either article often seems to be quite arbitrary, and presents a great many inconsistencies, which baffle all explanation.

Owing to the multiplicity and uncertainty of the causes that may be assigned for the use or suppression of the articles, it is particularly difficult to discuss the details with any degree of method. The following is the order of discussion which at the moment of writing seemed to be the most rational and convenient.

THE USE OF THE INDIVIDUALIZING DEFINITE ARTICLE IN DETAIL.

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE BEFORE COMMON NOUNS.

10. Conceptions primarily undefined, may become defined through being individualized or specialized. This may, or may not, occasion the use of the definite article, according to the nature of the specializing adjunct.

11. When the individualizing is expressed by an adnominal clause, the definite article is used almost regularly.

He forgot to return the money I had lent him. The circumstances recorded in this story, took place some score of years ago. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 10.

Note the usual absence of the article in the phrase. Time was (came) [when (or that) etc.].

I. Time was he would have envied the dandies their fine horses in Rotten Row. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXIX, 311.
Time was when you called him better names than rogue and swindler. Id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXIV, 244.

Time came when you might stand in the little bare stone church on the hill in rapt admiration of that lovely face, wondering what manner of man it was that painted it. John Oxenham, Great-Heart Gillian, Ch. VII, 49.

ii. The time had been when no such exhortations would have been necessary. Scott, Mon., Ch. XXXIV, 367.

The time was when we might have a good piece of salmon up from London for you. W. Morris, News from Nowhere, Ch. XXII, 167.

Compare also: There was a time when the two were inseparable. Roorda, Dutch and English Comp., § 12.

12. When the individualizing is expressed by a prepositional word-group, the omission of the article is more common.

Apart from the defining being sometimes more or less vague or uncertain (57), this seems to be chiefly owing to the fact that the prepositional word-group, if not containing the preposition of, is felt more or less as an adverbial adjunct. Compare: events in South Africa (Times) with the events of the last few years. Thus also Boulevards in Paris were thronged at night is practically identical with In Paris Boulevards were thronged at night (Graphic).

Also adjuncts with of are often incapable of causing the article to be used, when they form a kind of unit with their head-word: Members of Congress. When there is no such unity, the suppression is much less usual. See the quotations marked with a †.

For convenience of comparison with later quotations the following arrangement has been made alphabetical, the singulars having been divided from the plurals.

**Singulars.**

force. All these studies help to an understanding of the relationship of national life to force of arms. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 473, 690a.

literature. † In English literature of the eighteenth century, Berkeley and Butler and Hume are greater names than Gray and Collins. Dowden 1).

love. † You think I will risk my life and liberty for love of the old gentleman. R(OBERT) L(EWIS) S(T(EVENSON)).

opinion. Opinion in Austria Hungary is clearly in a very unsettled state. Westm. Gaz.

If opinion in the press is to be taken, both sides are rather nervous at what is suggested. Ib., No. 6329, 1c.

trade. i. Durban lives simply on the up-country trade — the trade of the two Republics, whose annexation is now demanded. Morning Leader.

The trade of the city is at a standstill. Westm. Gaz., No. 6353, 1c.

ii. Trade with the United States is decidedly better than it was. Ib., No. 4977, 2b.

They have been hailing the Underwood tariff as a new opportunity for British trade with the United States. Ib., No. 6353, 2a.

war. In the war of the future civilization itself may disappear. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 513a.

Plurals.

events. i The events of the last fortnight in Tripoli show that the Italian occupation even of the coast towns is not to be effected by a mere military promenade. Times, No. 1818, 882d.

That fear had been dispelled by the events of recent years. Ib., No. 1819, 904a.

ii. This is the most valuable lesson taught to us and to others by events in the Mediterranean. Ib., No. 1814, 803a.

I want you to understand how impossible it is, after recent events in Canada that your present system can be maintained. Ib., No. 1815, 820a.

members. As in every other crisis, Members of Congress are trimming to the political demagogues who shout the loudest. Times.

Members of the Liberal Party will have read with the greatest satisfaction the words in which the Prime Minister declared [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 5459, 1b.

reviews. Weekly reviews of the home and foreign situation... reveal clearly the profound concern and dissatisfaction with which all classes of society regard the international outlook and the present situation of Germany. Times, No. 1815, 815c.

trade returns. It seems safe to predict that the trade returns for the remainder of the year will not come up to the average of the first seven years. Times, No. 1814, 799c.

Note I. Sometimes the absence of the article may be due to the stressless nature of the noun, as part of an expression that has the value of a mere preposition. (65, c.) See especially ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 31.

* He was at first... somewhat annoyed with himself, at feel of the thrall of her beauty. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. VIII, 59.

** Here at sound of their voices, madame came bustling in from the back. JOHN OXENHAM, Great-heart Gillian, Ch. IV, 35. And suddenly at sound of quiet footsteps, you might turn and blink your startled eyes in amazement, as they fell on the living image of the pictured face. Ib., Ch. VII, 49.

He turned at sound of a step over-stream. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. VII, 101.

At sound of her words, his secret ambitions quickened to stronger life. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXII, 233. (Thus passim, throughout the book, always without the article.)

*** M. le Curé... (was) gratified at thought of this mighty widening of her outlook. Ib., Ch. IX, 67.

II. In the following quotations the absence of the article seems to be due to the demands of measure. Compare ABBOT, Shak. Gram., § 89; FRANZ., Shak. Gram., § 267.

Who comes so past in silence of the night? Merch. of Ven., V, 1, 25.

If you would walk in absence of the sun. Ib., 128.

Will you be pricked in number of our friends. JUL. CÆS., III, 1, 216.

The 'why' is plain as way to parish church. At you like it, II, 7, 52.

13. When the individualizing is indicated by an adnominal noun in the common case (Ch. XXIII, 3, b; 12), the definite article is frequently dropped.

This seems to be due to a variety of causes:
a) These adjuncts often partake more or less of the character of classifying adjuncts (Ch. XXIII, 13, Obs. II and III), which, as has been pointed out in 5, Note II, are of no influence as to the use of the definite article. Thus in *London tailors have raised their prices* the absence of the definite article may be partly due to the fact that, perhaps, more is meant than simply tailors that carry on business in the metropolis, there being, possibly, an intention to refer to a certain degree of superior skill by which these representatives of the tailoring trade are distinguished.

b) The defining notion is sometimes more or less vague. (57.) Thus in the above sentence the adnominal noun *London* marks off the representatives of the tailoring trade of the metropolis with less distinctness than would be done by the prepositional word-group *of London*, the employment of which, accordingly, would entail the use of the definite article.

c) The adjunct is often felt as an equivalent of a noun in the genitive. (9, f.) Thus in the same sentence *London* stands practically for *London's*.

d) The adjunct is often more or less adverbial in import (Ch. XXIII, 12, c): *London tailors* as used in the above sentence may also be interpreted as *tailors in London*.

**Singulars.**


*life.* How proud he would be, if he could show his young friend a little of *London life*! **Thack., Virg.**, Ch. XVI, 168.

*postage.* Previous to the inauguration of *penny postage* ... the cost of sending a letter from London to Edinburgh or Glasgow was 1 s. 3d. **T. P.'s Weekly**, No. 471; 634b.

*practice.* The German, Paul Haenlein, constructed a dirigible balloon much more on the lines of *present day practice*. **Rev. of Rev., CCXXIX**, 30a.

*trade.* Nowhere have these complaints been more just than in *the China trade*. **Times**.

Similar circumstances exist in *the New Zealand* and in *the South Africa trade*. **Id.**

**Plurals.**

*men.* He is ... a Cork man, and *Cork men* are a race apart. **T. P.'s Weekly**, No. 496, 577b.

*people.* i. *The Edinburgh people* are, indeed, the most responsible of all God's creatures. **Id.** No. 471, 620a.

ii. *Edinburgh people* have a way of their own. **Id.**

*politics.* *Cape politics* had been so disagreeable a subject that persons in authority at the Colonial Office dismissed them from their minds. **Froude, Oceana**, Ch. III, 48.

*streets.* He was a wanderer in *London streets*. **T. P.'s Weekly**, No. 472, 652b.
14. Also when the individualizing is effected by an adjective (Ch. XXVIII, 2, b; 3), the definite article often remains absent.

This is due, in the main, to the same causes as those which are responsible for the dropping of the article in the case of the individualizing being expressed by an adnominal noun in the common case. (13.) Thus in All men are swayed and chained by public opinion (LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. III, 86),

a) the adjective public is more or less classifying;

b) the notion of defining implied by the adjective is more or less vague;

c) the adjective is practically equivalent to a genitive.

In The year 1907 was a boom year for British and European trade (The Nation, in Westm. Gaz., No. 4961, 1c), the adjectives British and European are distinctly adverbial in import, as may be seen by comparing the above sentence with The year 1908 was a year of gradually declining trade in Great Britain. Trade at home remained fairly good until May (ib.).

The suppression is, apparently, regular in many word-groups such as English, French, etc., history, literature (but the English language), policy, influence, commerce, trade; English (French, etc.), public opinion, public feeling (but the popular or general sentiment), popular liberty and, probably, many more in which the adjective has coalesced into a kind of unit with the noun it modifies.

Singulars.

blood. But Matilda, though of the royal Saxon blood, was not the their to the monarchy. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. XLII, 448.

commerce. It has been the fashion for some time now to decry British Commerce at every conceivable opportunity. Times.

diplomacy. The whole basis of German European diplomacy has been founded on the idea of Turkey in Europe as an institution. Eng. Rev., No. 49, 148.

drama. Our leading dramatist has some interesting and curulous remarks attributed to him concerning American and English drama. West. Gaz., No. 5231, 7b.

feeling. In the ten days since the affair of the caravans had been reported from Persia, public feeling had run high. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXV, 275. (Compare sentiment.)

government. For all practical purposes the great machine of German government remains in fact and in theory what it was before. Westm. Gaz.

history. In this by-place of nature, there abode, in a remote period of American history, ... a worthy wight of the name of Ichabod Crane. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 344.

influence. German influence has made rapid strides during the last few weeks. Westm. Gaz., No. 5024, 2c.

interest. Public interest in it (sc. the National Insurance Bill) has rather increased than diminished during the months it has been before the public. Times, No. 1816, 843b.
learning. Erasmus embodied for the Teutonic peoples the quickening influence of the New Learning. Green, Short Hist., Ch. VI, § 4, 306. (Thus regularly before the name of this movement in this book.)

liberty. Ghent was what it ought always to have remained, the bulwark, as it had been the cradle of popular liberty. Motley, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 900a.

opinion. Public opinion, in these cases, is always of the feminine gender — not the world, but the world's wife. G. Eliot, Mill, VII, Ch. II, 455. Mr. Redmond understands Irish opinion as we cannot pretend to understand it, but there are some points about British opinion which we hope he will bear in mind. Westm. Gaz., No. 5231, lc.

No student of the French Press can have failed to detect the existence of a similar spirit among influential sections of French opinion. Times, No. 1819, 903b. (Thus, apparently, regularly.)

policy. British policy was admirably expounded by the Prime Minister. Westm. Gaz. It was reported that my right hon. friend...had in a public speech used language attacking German policy. Times, No. 1819, 893c.

pressure. They hold together against the Imperial pressure. Westm. Gaz.

recollection. His leadership of the Opposition in the trying years that followed during the ministries of Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman and Mr. Asquith, will be fresh in the general recollection. Times, No. 1819, 894a.

ritual. Her (sc. Elizabeth's) taste revolted from the bareness of Protestant ritual. Green, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § 3, 378.

sentiment. This is in tune with the popular sentiment. Rev. of Rev., CCV, 27b. We find an admirable summary of the general sentiment in the felicitous speech which Lord Rosebery made. Westm. Gaz. (Compare feeling.)

trade. (This) would not compensate him for what he must lose, if the European trade should be driven by his violence to some other quarter. Mac., Clive, (513a).

Plurals.

affairs. The prominence... given to Canadian affairs will be of service to Canada. Times, No. 1816, 943b.

circumstances. It cannot be said too often in present circumstances that the credit of the Government is an asset of all parties. Westm. Gaz., No. 5231, lc.

conditions. In existing conditions it seems fairly certain that only after a victorious war can Austria hope to gain her ends. Westm. Gaz.

events. Recent events... have drawn the eyes of the world to Canada. Times, No. 1816, 843b.

elections. A number of Canadian correspondents have written, complaining of opinions alleged to have been expressed by the Times on the result of the Canadian elections. Times, No. 1815, 819c.


politics. It was an innovation in American politics. Westm. Gaz.

The following quotation may further illustrate the arbitrariness of usage:

If the gap between intelligent native opinion (= the opinion of intelligent natives) and the official bureaucracy is to be bridged, official India must necessarily revise some of its traditions. Westm. Gaz.

Note especially:

in due time (season, course, course of time). The party was landed at the Royal Gardens in due time. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 54.
In due course of time they got into the hot air of London. W. Black, Madcap, V, Ch. VII, 69.

(the) old(en) time(s) (days). i. * A good old gentleman, one of the olden time. Thack., Pend., II, Ch. XXIV, 260.

** The talking was about the olden times. Mrs. Craik, A Hero, 35.

In the old days... our legislators seem to have had more staying power. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 4b.

ii. The heavy drops fall drip, drip, drip, upon the broad flagged pavement, called, from old time, the Ghost's Walk. Dick., Bleak House, Ch. II, 6.

** If not of those goodly proportions that Maypoles were wont to present in olden times, (it) was a fair young ash. Id., Barn. Rudge, Ch. I, 16.

We'll talk over Boniface and old times. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXIX, 316.

In old days men managed by hook or crook to publish Scandals of the Court or Horrible Revelations of High Life. Chesterton. (II. Lond. News, No. 3684 A, 741.)

Compare with this in ancient times, which does not, apparently, admit of a similar variation.

This quarter derives its appellation from having been, in ancient times, the residence of the Dukes of Brittany. Wash. Irv., The Sketch-Bk., XXV, 242.

15. Some nouns denoting conceptions primarily defined (4), may yet stand without the definite article, when not accompanied by any specializing adjunct (5), the omission being partly a survival of Old English practice (Sweet, N. E. Gr., § 2061), partly the outcome of the factors mentioned in 9, c, d, and e. Compare also 63.

Omission is especially common:

a) before the names of certain localities, institutions and establishments, such as bed, chapel, class, college, confessional, court, church, dock, (ex)change, harbour, home, hospital, jail, market, port, prison, school, town, when the reference is rather to the proceedings carried on there than to the material thing. Murray, s.v. at, 5; in, 1, b; Mätzner, Engl. Gram. 2, III, 214; Ellinger, Verm. Beitr., 35.

The altered application sometimes causes some of these nouns to be practically abstract nouns, and the suppression is favoured by the specializing being often so vague that the noun appears almost used in a generalizing sense. (7.) It is, accordingly, sometimes open to question, whether it is the individualizing or generalizing definite, or the indefinite article which is suppressed. (7, c, Note II.) Compare also 36 and 63.

The omission of the article seems to be favoured, and in the case of some nouns even conditioned, by the presence of prepositions denoting a relation of either place or time.

To the above nouns we may add certain names of actions, which resemble them in their altered meanings, and also under the same conditions more or less regularly reject the definite article. Such are auction, council, lesson, mass, meeting, office, rehearsal, service, term, trial, etc.

Town, without the article, means the town where we live or the large town, often the metropolis, referred to in our daily conversation. The town indicates the place referred to in a narrative with
which we have no further connexion, and also an aggregate of buildings, institutions, etc., rather than a place of human residence. MÄTZN., Eng. Gram, III, 214; ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 35.

**auction.** Last year a single article sold for £ 10.000 at auction. Times, No. 1809, 701c. The captain sells the fish by auction. Daily News, 1881, 29 Dec. 6/4. 1) These...were put up from time to time to auction. ROGERS, Pol. Econ., XIII, 21. 1)

**bed.** I. It would have been in vain for Scrooge to plead that the weather and the hour were not adapted to pedestrian purposes; that bed was warm, and [etc.]. DICK., Christm. Car, III, 35. In due course there was bed; where, but for the resumption of the studies which took place in dreams, were rest and sweet forgetfulness. Id., Domb., Ch. XII, 110.

II. To be (lie, stay, etc.) in bed. To go retire, etc. to bed. She has not been out of bed since. Mrs. Adams, Lett., 349. 1) I won't go to bed. DICK., Pickw., Ch. VIII, 66. His companions remained in bed. Ib., 67. I gave Gus a lecture about spending his Sundays idly; and read out one of Blair's sermons before we went to bed. As I turned over in bed, I could not help thinking about the luck the pin had brought me. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 46. Compare: The two gentlemen moved away from the bed. Mrs. Wood, Orville Col., Ch. II, 23. To lie or sleep in the bed one has made = to accept the natural fruits or results of one's own conduct. Murray, s.v. bed, 5, c.

**camp.** How is the ordinary citizen to acquire either this discipline or this skill from a few afternoons in a drill-hall and a fortnight at the outside in camp once a year? Times, No. 1825, 1031. The artillery are back in camp. Punch, No. 3712, 172b.

**chapel.** I. Men and women might lie another ten minutes in bed...without reprobation, because chapel was missed. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, Ch. IX, 90. II. Lamb never stirred out of the hall that night after chapel. Mrs. Wood, Orville Col., Ch. V, 66. He read the service in chapel when his turn came. MORLEY, Crit. Misc., Pattison, III, 156. 1) Compare: When mass was ended, they retired together from the chapel. Scott, Quent. Durrw., Ch. II, 48.

**church.** I. To attend church. I hope none of you forget church. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 17. II. To be at church. After (before, during) church. To be (stay, etc.) in church. To come (go, etc.) from (to, out of) church. But soon the steeples called good people all to church and chapel. DICK., Christm. Car, III, 62. Compare: He told me, coming home that he hoped the people saw him in the church. Ib., III, 66.

**Note I.** In to go into the Church (= to take holy orders, to become a clergyman); to be in the Church (= to be in holy orders, to be a clergyman); to leave the bar for the Church and similar expressions, church has a collective meaning, and the article has a generalizing function. (32, a.)

II. In the following quotation the article is used merely for the sake of the metre: He goes on Sunday to the church. LONGF., Vil. Blacks., V.

1) Murray.
class. Isn't Yeats the poet the Yeats who was in class with us at school? T. P.'s Weekly, No. 408, 709c.

college. i. That patrimony he dissipated before he left college. MEREDITH, Ord. of Rich. Fev., Ch. I, 2.

ii. I remember Allworthy at college. FIELDING, Tom Jones, IV, Ch. X, 56a (Compare: "I thought", said the Parson, "he had never been at the University." Ib.) At my father's death I paid what debts I had contracted at college. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XX, 216.

After college he hung about his mother's house. THACKERAY.¹)

confessional. He communicated a curious account; that you had been to him that evening at confessional. CH. BRONTÉ, Villette, Ch. XVII, 230.

I went and sought them (sc. companionship, friendship and counsel) in church and confessional. Ib., 231.


council. i. * For Arthur on the Whitsuntide before | Held court at old Caerleon upon Usk Ten., Mar. of Ger., 146.

** If thou never wast at court, thou never sawest good manners. As you like it, Ill, 2, 71. (Compare: Those that are good manners at the court are as ridiculous in the country as the behaviour of the country is mockable at the court. Ib., Ill, 2, 47.)

Our director, his lady, and daughter were presented at court. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 84.

A friend at court is always an advantage. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 468, 529a.

ii. A photograph of the prosecutrix was produced in court. Times.

If they had seen that this would be the outcome of the proceedings, they would not have been in such a hurry to go into Court. Ib.

The proceedings in Court. Ib., No. 1816, 1b.

In these cases it is Mr. A., the plaintiff, who brings the complaint into court. ANNA BUCKLAND, Our Nat. Instit, 43.

Out of court (sc. the judges) had human minds like yours and mine. W. J. LOCKE, The Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. Ill, 45.

Compare: i. Out west they would never have left ffie court alive. Ib., Ch.V, 70.

ii. My poor wife and I walked out of the court, and back to our dismal room in the prison. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 157.

 Silence in the court there! Ib., Ch. XII, 151.

divan. They had rather a grumpy time of it in divan that night. LOCKHART, I, 187.²)

dock. He (sc. the American interviewer) and his notebook are on the spot as the "liner" comes into dock. RITA, America—Seen through Eng. eyes, Ch. III, 63.

exchange. Scrooge's name was good upon 'change. DICK., Chrstm. Car.5, I, 5.

But there they were, in the heart of it (sc. the city); on 'change, amongst the merchants. Ib., IV, 87.

hall. After hall they went to Mr. Buck's to take wine; and after wine to chapel. THACK., Pend., I, 168.³)

Then they went to hall. W. J. LOCKE, The Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. XVII, 180.

On the same evening, his Royal Highness dined in hall. II. Lond. News, No. 3835, 566.

Soon as the meal was over, she stole out of hall. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. IV, 62.

³) MURRAY, s. v. chapel.
harbour. The South African Constitution may now, we think, be reckoned as safely in harbour. Westm. Gaz., No. 5001, 1c.
I woke to hear we were in harbour. Ib., No. 6347, 5a.
headquarters. He had no quarrel with Mr. Cadogan, but only with those at head-quarters, who had belied him. Thack., Henry Esmond, II, Ch. XV, 284.
home. i. There is no place like home. Prov.
Home is home, be it ever so homely. Id.
ii. I am wandering from my story, and must get back to home. Thack., Barry Lyndon, Ch. I, 19.
At one hour he was sure to be at church; at another, at market; in his office at a third; and at home when respectable men should be at home. Ch. Reade, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. I, 5.
A minute later we were in the street and walking for home. Con. Doyle, Mem. of Sherl. Holm., II, B, 77.
She is at home, as usual, — every evening for a few people. Mrs. Ward, Lady Rose's Daught., I, Ch. I, 96.
hospital. i. They will be allowed to proceed to their homes, instead of being made prisoners, as soon as they can leave hospital. Times.
ii. My father died of his wounds in hospital. Meredith, Lord Ormont, Ch. III, 50.
Nobody could live in hospital like Edward Hallin and his sister. Mrs. Ward, Marcella, III, 33.
A patient I had been nursing for weeks, had to be removed to hospital. Ib., III, Ch. IV, 354.
I am going to take this child to hospital. Id., Sir George Tres., I, Ch. IV, 285. (Compare: As they went into the hospital, George caught a few of the things she was saying to the porter. Ib.)
Lord Hardinge was taken to hospital. Westm. Gaz., No. 6111, 1c. (Compare: The Viceroy said manfully, on being taken to the hospital, that this attempt on his life had made no change in his feelings towards India and her people. Ib.)

jail. To be in jail. To let out of jail. To send to jail. Murray.
He had been arrested or suspicion of the crime of Arson and lodged in jail. Meredith,Ord. of Rich. Fev., Ch. V, 34.
lesson. Never before and never again, while Tom was at school, did the Doctor strike a boy in lesson. Hughes, Tom Brown, I, Ch. VIII, 156.
I shall get floored to a certainty at second lesson, if I'm called up. Ib., II, Ch. VII, 316.
Tom renewed the discussion after second lesson. Ib.

market. i. He attended market and sessions. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 20.
In the first place, I shall be seen, and that is no small advantage to a girl who brings her face to market. Goldsm., She Stoops to Conquer, III, (203).
The eggs we had counted on selling at market were broken. Thack., Virg., Ch. LXXX, 847.
Bathsheba said very little to her husband all that evening of their return from market. Hardy, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. XLI, 317.
There rode by a butcher with a basket of meat hastening to market. Robin Hood (Günth., Handbook², 24).
If you could take a cup of tea with us on your way home from market, my father would be glad to see you. Reade, It is never too late to mend, II, Ch. VI, 65.
Compare: i. When the market was over, one of them invited Robin Hood to dine with their company. Robin Hood (Günth., Handbook², 25).
ii. I was first at the market. Lytton, Rienzi, I, Ch. IX, 55.
On reaching the town, Robin Hood put up his horse at an inn, and then went into the market. Robin Hood (Günth., Handbook², 25).
My poor dear mother's own sherry was in the market then. Dick., Cop., Ch. I, 2a. (Thus regularly in this collocation.)

A larger pen with a very flexible nib, ... has this year been put upon the market. Rev. of Rev., CCXXXI, Advertisement. (Thus regularly in this collocation.)

mass. i. To say (sing, hear, attend etc.) mass. Murray.

When mass was ended, they retired together from the chapel. Scott, Q u e n t. D u r w., Ch. II, 48.

Mass had been said in the grey old church among the trees. Hal. S u t c l., Pam the F i d d l e r, Ch. IV, 55.

She heard mass at a very early hour. Times, No. 1818, 887a.

ii. To be (stay etc.) at mass. To come (go, etc.) from mass. To go to mass. Murray.

We had all been to mass at the Cathedral. Westm. G a z., No. 4949, 9a.

The maids were slow on their feet from Mass. Ib.

office. i. To take (leave, etc.) office.

ii. To be (stay, etc.) in office. To come (go, etc.) into (out of) office. Jack in (out of) office. Murray.

For the fourth time in succession Sir Wilfrid Laurier has been returned to office by a General Election. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVII, 403a.

Neither is it well for the same party to remain continuously in office. Ib., Compare: When I came back to the office, I pretty soon let the fellows know [etc.]. Thack., S a m. T i t m., Ch. II, 20.

port. i. Doubt was expressed ... as to the possibility of the measure reaching port this year. E c h o, No. 3273, 2a.

Is there any doubt, Master Pathfinder, that we shall reach port in safety. Cooper, The Pathfinder, 9.

ii. The boats perhaps had sighted some rare vessel, and compete the prize of towing her up to port. Westm. Gaz., No. 6023, 3a.

He captured two Dutch East Indiamen and brought them safely into port. Ib., No. 6011, 9c.

prison. For having broken prison I am ordered for immediate execution. Gay, B e g g a r's O p., III, 2.

Compare: She had only just come from the prison, where she learned my address. Thack., S a m. T i t m., Ch. XII, 167.

My poor wife and I walked out of the court, and back to our dismal room in the prison. Ib., Ch. XII, 157.

rehearsal. Don't you think it is time to go to rehearsal? Thack., P e n d., I, Ch. XI, 116.

When Miss Costigan came home from rehearsal etc. Ib., Ch. XII, 23.

The next day to rehearsal. Oscar Wilde, An Ideal Husband, II, 43.

A certain orchestral player at Drury Lane Theatre had suffered sundry admonishments at rehearsal from his revered conductor. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 468, 524a.

Compare: My poor Theo had a nice dinner waiting for me after the rehearsal. Thack., V i r g., Ch. LXXIX, 842.


He liked all to make their appearance on the eve of school. Ib., Ch. I, 9.

ii. To be at school, to go to school, to put (send) to school. Murray.

To tell tales out of school. Ib.

About ten minutes before school Martin and Arthur arrived in the quadrangle. Hughes, Tom Brown, II, Ch. IV.

There had been some talk on occasions of my going to boarding-school. Dick., C o p., Ch. IV.

We will take the Juvenal at afternoon school. Thack., P e n d., I, Ch. II, 28.

1) Murray. 2) Ellinger, V e r m. B e i t r., 36.
THE ARTICLE.

Did you not say you had a sister at boarding-school? Id., Virg., Ch. XXXIX, 407. Compare: The school is not quite deserted... A solitary child... is left there still. Dick., Christm. Car A II, 37.

It was the close of the forenoon school. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 26.

Both Arthur and Mr. John Pendennis had been at the school. ib., 24. (= at this school.)

They saw five or six nearly new balls hit on the top of the school. Hughes, Tom Brown, I, Ch. IX.

service. I doubt not but you will be honoured with some portion of her notice, when service is over. Jane Austen, Pride and Prej., Ch. XXVIII, 158.

Service concluded, the governor began to turn a wheel in his pew. Ch. Reade, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. X, 112.

Stool of Repentance. A low stool placed in front of the pulpit in Scotland, on which persons who had incurred an ecclesiastical censure, were placed during divine service. E. Cobham Brewer, Dict. of Phrase and Table.

study. One afternoon when he came down from study with Pen... she went out and shook hands with him with rather a blushing face. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XVI, 162.

town. i. Lady Jane is about to leave town immediately. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. III, 40.


ii. A perfect and celebrated “blood”, or dandy about town was this young officer. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. X, 97.

(He) was, I do believe, as happy, whenever his friends brought him a guinea, as he had been during his brief career as a gentleman on town. Id., Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 159.

With your advantages you might turn the heads of half the girls in town. Edna Lyall, Donovan, I, 140.

Compare: He gave her all the pleasures of the town. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 19.

trial. Have you authority to put me in the pillory before trial? Ch. Reade It is never too late mend, I, Ch. I, 18.

Five men and a woman were put on trial for the crime. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 318.

Two days later we were committed for trial at the Central Criminal Court. Annie Besant, Autob., 209.

Compare: After the trial it was proved that one of the five prisoners was never near the spot on the day of the rescue. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 317.

It was represented to the jury that this statement substantially corroborated the evidence given by Fletcher and other witnesses at the trial. Times, No. 1814, 803c.

They now began to be put on their trials. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 316.

b) before the names of meals, such as banquet, breakfast, dinner, lunch(eon), meat, mess, supper, table, tea, and tiffin when used in a more or less immaterial sense. Also before these nouns the omission of the article is especially frequent, when they are preceded by a preposition denoting a relation of time or place; likewise in many collocations, such as to ask (invite) to (for) dinner, etc. to stay (stop) tea or to tea, etc. (Ch. V, 11), to wait dinner etc. (ib.), to come (go) to (into) dinner etc., to take out (take in) to dinner, etc., in which the omission is so usual as to be almost regular. Conversely the article would appear to be commonly used after prepositions not denoting any relation of either time or place, but the evidence available at the time of writing is too scanty to make this more than a surmise.

The entrance of *supper* opportunely adjourned this difficulty. G. Eliot, Mill, I, Ch. III, 17.

*Dinner* was over. Mrs. Craik, John Hail., Ch. II, 12.

*Dinner* will be served almost directly. W. Black, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XIV

"*Dinner is served*", he announced, in his discreet and well-trained voice. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXII, 250.

She seemed to be engaged in a mental calculation of the probable extent of the petitioes, in the event of Sam's being asked to stop supper. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXVI, 236.

I am going to *stay tea*. Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col., Ch. VI, 87.

*** My master has been *waiting dinner* for you these three hours. Robin Hood (Günth., Handb., 140).

I never *wait supper* for anybody. Dick., Pickw., Ch. IX, 73.

\[\text{ii. *After tea* the young gentlemen withdrew to fetch up the unfinished tasks of that day. Dick., Domb., Ch. XII, 107.}\]

One evening *after mess* he told Colquhoun that [etc.]. Besant and Rice, Gold. Butterfly, Ch. XIII.\(^1\)

** At *breakfast* I announced to Diana and Mary that I was going a journey. Ch. Bronte, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXVI, 519.

He paid Dobbin fifty pounds that evening at *mess*. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIII, 133.

We were talking about it *at mess* yesterday. Id., Pend., I, Ch. X, 108.

He was absolute master of the life and liberty of all who sat *at meat* with him. Mac., Fred., (676b).

Till ev'n the knights at banquet twice or thrice I Forgot to drink to Lancelot and the Queen. Lanca. and El., 731.

*** The father and mother were already at table. Mrs. Ward, Marc., I, 33.

*** Only once *during dinner* was there any conversation that included the young gentlemen. Dick., Domb., Ch. XII, 106.

***** He invited me *for dinner* next Sunday in Myddelton Square. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 41.

I just want you to come to my rooms in St. James' Street for *tea and dinner*. Bar. von Hutten, What became of Pam, Ch. XIII, 92.

They have just knocked off *for dinner*. Ch. Reade, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. I, 5.

****** *Come into dinner*, Phineas. Mrs. Craik, John Hail., Ch. I, 12.

******* My husband was often *invited to dinner*. Johnson, Idler, No. 47.\(^1\)

We ought to *ask* him to *dinner*. Murray, s.v. ask, 21.

Her fear was lest they should *stay to tea*. Ch. Bronte, Shirley, I, Ch. VII, 144.

The guest *stayed to dinner*. Lytton, Caxtons, Ill, Ch. VII, 79.

I have come to *take* Miss Yeoland and you *out to dinner*. Baroness von Hutten, What became of Pam, Ch. XIII, 90.

Compare: i. *The dinner* was as hearty an affair as the *breakfast*. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXVIII, 254.

*The supper* was ready laid. Ib., Ch. IX, 72.

*The supper* passed off without any attempt at a general conversation. Ib., Ch. VIII, 66.

On *ordinary evenings* *the supper* was served immediately after they came out of chapel. Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col., Ch. I, 16.
THE ARTICLE.

I will go rest here awhile till the breakfast is ready. Westm. Gaz., No. 4949, 9a.

Throughout the greater part of the dinner my opinion of the young man rose steadily but surely. Grant Allen, That Friend of Sylvia's.

Possibly they ate extremely little during the course of the dinner. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXIII, 251.

ii. He had made acquaintance with him at the mess by opening the conversation. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXIX, 314.

All during the dinner she was playing the coquette openly, for every one to see. W. Black, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XIV.

I am told that it was through you that the boy was invited to the dinner to-night. Ib.

A curious instance of divided usage is:

Tea was served in a style no less polite than the dinner. Dick., Dombey, Ch. XII, 107.

Note I. When these nouns are used in a distinctly material sense, the article is not dropped.

The dinner was not so good as might have been expected.

II. Nor is the article ever wanting when the individualizing is expressed.

He sat down to the dinner that had been hoarding for him by the fire. Dick., Ch. XIII, 5, IV, 97.

c) Before the names of the main divisions of a day, such as day, evening (eve, even, eventide), morning (morn) and night, when the reference is to a natural phenomenon or to an epoch. In either application the article seems to be regularly omitted after such prepositions as at, till (until), towards.

The article is not dropped when distinctly a period is meant: consequently it is never absent after the prepositions during and in. It should also be noted that forenoon and afternoon, although frequently denoting an epoch, apparently, rarely lose the article. Compare We won't go home till morning with We won't go home till the afternoon.


The time was evening. Ib., Ch. VIII, 71.

They watched her breathing becoming more and more difficult, until evening deepened into night and until midnight was past. G. Eliot, Scenes, I, Ch. VIII, 63.

When day broke, the enemy was no more to be seen. Macaulay.

He read the book calmly but earnestly in the warm air, till day declined. Ch. Reade, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. VI, 82.

Evening came. Ib., Ch. V, 55.

It wanted but two hours of day. Ch. Kingsley, Westw Hol, Ch. XVII, 133b.

Gloomy day passed into gloomier night. G. Gissing, Eve Madeley's Ransom, Ch. I.


In that equivocal kind of weather, when a fire becomes agreeable toward evening. Wash. Irv., Sketches, The Inn Kitchen, 150.

One afternoon it began to freeze, and the frost increased with evening. Hardy, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. III, 22.

Gabriel had watched the blue wood-smoke curling from the chimney with strange meditation. At evening he had fancifully traced it down the chimney to the spot of its origin. Ib., Ch. IV, 28.

1) Foels.—Koch, W i s. Gram., § 272.

H. Poutsma, A Grammar of Late Modern English. II.
The Kaiser at that moment was engaged in sport by day and jollification at night at a country-seat in Austria. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 509.
We shall be miles away by morning. Eth. M. Dell, The Way of an Eagle, I, Ch. III, 37.
Boats were being got ready for landing parties towards evening. Times, No. 1814, 802d.

Compare: i. The day had been uncommonly sultry. Wash. Irv. 1)
The afternoon came on wet and somewhat misty. Ch. Bronte, Jane Eyre, Ch. V, 45.
He had ogled the last girl out of the last church, and the evening was beginning to fall. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 45.
There he stood gazing for some minutes lost in many thoughts while the night fell. Mrs. Ward, Marcella, I, 73.
It seemed as if the morning would never come. Sweet, Old Chapel.
The day was closing in. Westm. Gaz.

ii. What enabled Sir George Cary’s illustrious ship, the Content, to fight single-handed, from seven in the morning till eleven at night? Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XX, 150a.
She stated that two men had attacked her during the night. Times, No. 1814, 787a.
Twice during the morning he drove to the entrance of Clifford’s Inn. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. VI, 61.

Note I. The article is also usually dropped when these words are modified by the name of a day, the reference being in this case to an epoch.

On Midsummer Night the emigrants get up an entertainment. Froude, Oceana, Ch. II, 41.
Late on Monday night there was a serious disturbance at the British Wagon Works, Swansea. Times, No. 1814, 787a.

II. The definite article, however, appears to be sometimes used when the morning, etc. referred to is distinctly associated in the speaker's or writer’s mind with another. Compare e.

i. It was rather expected that he would pay a round of calls on the Monday morning to explain and apologize to the Cranford sense of propriety. Mrs. Gask., Cranf., Ch. II, 27.
Early on the Thursday morning Captain Bretton was roused from a short and uneasy sleep on the sofa in his study by the sound of voices on the staircase. Edna Lyall, Knight Errant, Ch. XXXVIII, 375.
We reached Dresden on the Wednesday evening, and stayed there over the Sunday. Jerome, Three Men on the Bummel, Ch. VII, 133.

ii. It was Monday night. On Wednesday morning Monmouth was to die. Mac., Hist., II, Ch. V, 191. (Compare: On the Wednesday morning, at his particular request, Doctor Thomas Tenison ... came to the Tower. Ib., 192.)

III. The article is also frequently dropped before such nouns and word-groups as break of day (= day-break), cock-crow(ing), dawn(ing), dead of night, dusk, midnight, noon, nightfall, peep of day, pudding-time, sundown, sunrise, sunset, twilight, etc., which, like the above, are used to denote a natural phenomenon or an epoch. After a preposition, which is practically the only connection in which the majority of these words and word-groups are found, the article seems to be suppressed almost regularly.

i. Noon approached, and after many adieux and promises to return, he tore himself away. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XVIII, 159.

1) Foels.—Koch, Wis. Gram., § 272.
As twilight deepened, we descended a valley, dark with wood, and long after night had overclouded the prospect, I heard a wild wind rushing amongst trees. Ch. Bronte, Jane Eyre, Ch. V, 45.

Afternoon had made way for twilight, and twilight for dusk. Westm. Gaz., No. 6347, 9a. (Note the distinction made between twilight and dusk.)

Here he sate on the banks of an unknown lake... and that at deep midnight. Scott, Wav., Ch. XVI, 60a.

The fire broke out at dead of night. Ch. Bronte, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXXI, 524. (In this phrase the definite article occasionally appears, apparently, for the sake of the measure: At the dead of night a sweet vision I saw. Thom. Campb., The Soldier's Dream, II.)

I must be on horse before cock-crow. Scott, Mon., Ch. XXXIV, 369.


All this drudgery, from cock-crowing to starlight. Emerson, Young American, II, 301. 1)

I went to bed at day-break. Dick., Cop., Ch. LV, 391a.

He only returned home at dusk. Ch. Bronte, Villette, Ch. XXI, 285.

Doubtless at high noon... the garden was a trite, trodden-down place enough. Ib., Ch. XII, 130.

The band halted at nightfall on this side the Pontine Marshes. Lytton, Rienzi, III, Ch. I, 123.

 shortly after sunrise they crossed those fatal swamps which had already been partially drained by Boniface VIII. Ib., Ch. II, 123.

It would be better if you were to proceed onward to Fondi, where I will join you at sunset. Ib., 137.

He rode on until sundown. Books for the Bairns, No. 56, 31b.

Dick wanted to be there before dusk. W. Morris, News from Nowhere, Ch. XXVIII, 210.

Collation: the light repast or refection taken by the members of a monastery at close of day. Murray, s.v. collation, 8.

By early dawn this morning the multitude were already drifting towards the harbour end. Times, No. 1823, 973d.

Compare: I. Meanwhile the noon was passed, and little impression was made on the iron gate. Scott, Mon., Ch. XXX, 329.

II. These 'thaumata', or wonders, last... till the boy goes to school, and then, somehow or other, the 'thaumata' vanish into thin air, like ghosts at the cockcrow. Lytton, Caxtons, I, Ch. VI, 25.

Year after year he took part with excited fancy in the procession of the Magdalen choir boys to the College tower on May day, to sing at the rising a hymn to the Trinity. Alice S. Green, Introd. to Green, Short Hist., 5.

Percy asks us to ride out — to-night — at the dawn — well, we'll answer him. Hal. Sutcl., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. IV, 57.

IV. The following is an exceptional application of midnight:

Then they fall to together in the midnight. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. IV, 51.

d) before the names of the seasons: winter, spring, summer and autumn, and also before such nouns as Carnival, Lent, harvest, term.

I. With such sentiments, upon a beautiful day in the latter end of harvest, the king mounted his horse. Scott, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXXVI, 446.

Winter came early and sudden that year. Mrs. Craik, John Hal., Ch. IV, 36.

1) Murray, s.v. cock-crow and cock-crowing.
Once he stopped to pick up the large brown fan of a horse-chestnut leaf. "It's pretty, isn't it? only it shows that autumn has come." Ib., Ch. I, 10. Carnival ends on the 5th of February. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 225.

ii. The medical man of the House hoped he might rally in spring. Thack., Newc., II, Ch. XLII, 442.
There are few things that I enjoy so much as the rare invitations which I receive to spend a few days during term at one of the colleges in the University of Oxford. Westm. Gaz.

Compare: i. The winter was gloomy at home as well as abroad. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XI, 151.
As the summer drew on, she passed more of her time in the open air. Hardy, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. LVI, 459.

ii. Bathsheba revived with the spring. Ib., LVI, 459. (Thus probably regularly after with.)
The general election will most probably take place in the autumn. Daily Mail.
I did come here last year, early in the fall. M. E. Francis, Honesty, II, Ch. X.

The following quotations are typical illustrations of divided practice:
It shows that autumn has come... And how shall you live in the winter when there is no out-of-door work to be had. Mrs. Craik, John Hal., Ch. I, 10.
Through the winter Alfred girded himself for this new peril. At break of spring his army closed round the town. Green, Short Hist., Ch. I, § 5, 48.
The threats of the Montenegrins and Serbs are held in check by the approach of winter, and until the spring comes, they are not likely to make any serious move. Westm. Gaz.
The winter has been long. I am glad spring is coming. Bar. von Huttén, What became of Pam, Ch. IX, 63.

e) before the names of months, days and festivals. Epiphany, however, from its meaning, seems to stand regularly with the article. (24, c.)

He will return at Christmas.
His taxes are in arrear, quarter-day passes by, another quarter-day arrives. Dick., Sketches, I, 2a.
I did not go to the office till half an hour after opening time on Monday. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 41.
Late in October Pam caught her heel in a hole in the stair-carpet. Bar. von Huttén, What became of Pam, Ch. XIV, 102.
Lord Mayor's Day was observed on Wednesday in London in the traditional fashion. Times.
It was the beginning of wheat-harvest, when I came to Dunster town. Blackmore, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXVII, 156.

Note. The definite article is not infrequently met with when the month, day or festival is distinctly associated in the speaker's or writer's mind with another. Sweet, N. E. Gr., § 2032; Ellinger, Verm. Beitr., 26; Ten Bruggencate, Taalstudie, VI, 26.

It would be easy to catch Will Wilson on his return from the Isle of Man, which he had planned should be on the Monday; and on the Tuesday all would be made clear. Mrs. Gask., Mary Barton, Ch. XXIII, 239.
As it was, however, it (sc. the letter) reached Silverbridge on Sunday, and lay there till the Monday. Trol., Framl. Pars., Ch. V, 39. (Note the varied practice.) On the Saturday Thompson died. Hughes, Tom Brown, II, Ch. VI, 290. Thompson was buried on the Tuesday. Ib., 201.
16. When a noun is applied to a particular specimen of a conception, so that it partakes of the character of a significant proper name, we sometimes find the specializing definite article dropped. This applies especially to:

a) nouns that are also used in address, which may be:

1) names of relationship:

“Come, come”, says Western, “none of your maidenish airs; I know all; I assure you, sister hath told me all”. Fielding, Tom Jones, VI, Ch. VII, 94b.

If your own horses be ready, you may whip off with cousin, and I’ll be bound that no soul here can budge a foot to follow you. Goldsmith, She Stoops, V, (224).

Father-in-law has been calling me whelp and hound this half year. Ib., I, (174).

Aunt was always at law with her tenants. Thack., Sam, Titm., Ch. IX, 105.

Aunt and Mary used to walk gravely up and down the New Road. Ib., Ch. X, 120.


Had it anything to do with father’s making such a monmet (= blockhead) of himself in thik (= that) carriage this afternoon? Hardy, Tess, I, Ch. III, 22.

Papa will show you the two counties on the map. Scott.1)

Note. It may here be observed that these nouns are usually preceded by a possessive pronoun, when the speaker is not related to the person spoken of in the way indicated by them.

“He (sc. Tiny Tim) was very light to carry”, she (sc. Mrs. Cratchit) resumed,... “and his father loved him so... And there’s your father at the door”. Dick., Chrism. Car.5, IV, 99.

‘T was on this account that your father rode home in the vlee. Hardy, Tess, I, Ch. III, 22.

2) certain titles of courtesy, as used in the language of servants, especially:

Madam, now no longer substituted for the name of a lady entitled to be addressed as ‘madam’ (Murray), mistress being used instead, except in the language of shop-assistants.

i. Poor Harry can keep nothing quiet, and then there would be a pretty quarrel between madam and me! Thack., Virg, Ch. VI, 61.

When madam began to write, she gave us brief notices of Harry and his wife. Ib., Ch. LXXXV, 909.

ii. “I want a rose, please; a large pink rose”; — “Yes, madam; certainly, madam; I will get some one to attend to you immediately: “Miss Jones, madam requires a rose.” The assistant stepped forward [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 6311, 3c.

Master. i. * Master thought another fit of the gout was coming to make him a visit. Sher., Rivals, I, 1.

Master sent me over with the shay-cart to carry your luggage up to the house. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXVIII, 248.

550  

**Master** says he can't eat no dinner. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VIII, 61.

**But tell us, Mr. Fag, how does young master?** SHER., *Riv.*, I, 1. (=Dutch de jongeheer.)

If young master will take a poor mariner's gift, there it is. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westm*. Hol!, Ch. I, 3b.

ii. She come and took 'em away last night, but the master says they must be fetched soon. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VIII, 61.

**Miss.** We got acquainted with Miss while on a visit in Gloucestershire. SHER., *Rivals*, I, 1.

There was another person besides Miss at my aunt's house. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXVIII, 825.

He came hither...to pay court to Miss. Ib., Ch. LXXXIV, 895.


"Missis is not at home," said the man. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. VII, 81.

Missis always turns off the gas at the main herself at half past ten. Mrs. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. I, 20.

Master and Missis are going out to dinner. Ib., 16.

ii. I have spoke to Mr. Helder, friendly, an' he laughed, an' did me a picture of the missis that is as good as a coloured print. RUDY. KIPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. V, 61.

The "missus" could not find it in her heart to bestow such a mark of affection upon him. Tit-bits.

Bishop (reproving delinquent page): "Wretched boy! Who is it that sees and hears all we do, and before whom even I am but a crushed worm?" — Page: "The missis, my lord." *Punch.*

**Note.** Also master and mistress have the possessive pronoun under the same circumstances as the names of relationship. In this case their use is not confined to the language of servants.

"Is your master at home, my dear?" said Scrooge to the girl. DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, V, 108.

Where is your mistress? KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote, M. P.*, Ch. XIII, 139.

3) certain names of professions, especially such as are held by domestic servants, the absence of the article expressing good-humoured familiarity.

**cabby.** i. She sprang out of the carriage before cabby could descend. Mrs. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. I, 15.

ii. Call the cabby up for my trunk and hat-box! *All the Year Round*, 1859, No. 34, 177.

**coachman.** Coachman comes out with his waybill. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IV, 74.

**cook.** i. You had better go down with Sarah into the kitchen; cook will take care of you. Sarah, my love, take him down to cook. MARRYAT, *Jacob Faithful*, Ch. II, 7b.

While he operated, the maids, and Buttons and cook...crowded round him. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. V, (325).

The second-floor arch in a London house ... by which cook lurks down before daylight to scour her pots and pans in the kitchen; by which young master stealthily ascends ... down which miss comes rustling in fresh ribbons...for conquest and the ball. Id., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXVI, 279.

Would you like to go and see if cook has got your dinner ready? *Westm. Gaz.*

ii. For many days did the exhibition continue during which I was domicilled with the cook. MARRYAT, *Jacob Faithful*, Ch. II, 8b.
She put questions to him regarding baby and the cook's health. Thack., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. II, (313).

guard. i. Guard emerges from the tap. Hughes, Tom Brown, I, Ch. IV, 74. Guard looks at him with a comical expression. Ib., 76.

ii. The guard is locking the hind boot. Ib., 75.

(h)ostler. i. Ostler, Boots and the Squire stand looking after them. Ib., 70.1) "Young gent'm'n, Rugby; three parcels, Leicester; hamper o'game, Rugby", answers Ostler. Ib., 69.

ii. Having ordered the Hostler to take care of my Dog. Ellwood, Autobiog., 20.1)

head-waiter. "Tea or coffee, sir?" says head-waiter, coming round to Tom. Hughes, Tom Brown, I, Ch. IV, 74.

nurse. i. There was room enough at Framley Court for baby and nurse. Trol., Framl. Pars, Ch. I, 7.

On opening the door she saw a well-ordered comfortable room, lit by the glow of a bright fire, nurse at her needlework beside the large table, and a neat nursemaid sitting on the floor showing a picture-book to a little boy... There was a pause, every one looked up, and then nurse slowly rose, exclaiming, "Law, Miss Marjory". Mr. Alex., A Life Interest, I, Ch. I, 20.

She makes nurse give us jam whenever we want it. Bar. von Huttten, Pam, Ch. X, 54.

ii. The nurse said she was come to nuss (= nurse) Master Fitzroy, and knew her duty. Thack., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. VI, 327.

The omission of the article before other names of professions seems to be rare or obsolete. Thus in:

Lord keeper and lord treasurer were proposed (sc. at the club). Swift, Journ. to Stella, XXV.

Policeman said he'd call again towards evening. Mrs. Gask., Mary Barton, Ch. XXIII, 241.

Sportsman looks on approvingly, and orders a ditto for himself. Hughes, Tom Brown, I, Ch. IV, 74.

4) certain plural nouns denoting the things with which a person is chiefly occupied, or for which he is conspicuous, such as boots, buttons, lamps, etc. Stof., Eng. Leesb., I, 143.

boots. i. Another (sc. of these worthies) buttoned on a pair of gaiters, with many execrations at Boots for not having cleaned his boots well. Wash. Irv., Bracebridge Hall (Stof., Eng. Leesb., I, 7).

Boots looks in and says [etc.]. Hughes, Tom Brown, I, Ch. IV, 69.

"You make use of my name", he added proudly — "Bob, boots at the Lion." Lytton, Caxtons, V, Ch. I, 106.

ii. "Thank'ee, sir", said the Boots, and away he went. Dick., Pickw., Ch. II, 16.

He asked for the landlady, and missed the old Boots. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXVIII, 298.

In setting off the next morning, the Boots... good-naturedly informed me [etc.]. Lytton, Caxtons, V, Ch. I, 106.

Buttons. Little Buttons bounced up to his mistress, said he was butler of the family. Thack., A little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. VI.

The united strength of the establishment Butler, Footman, Coachman, Lady's maid, Housemaid and Buttons. Cuthbert Bede, Adventures of Mr. Verdant Green, I, 16.2)

1) Murray. 2) Hoppe, Sup. Lex.
Compare the following quotation containing several denominations of the kind described above, all of them, however, with the definite article:

"I thought you were the King's taxes." "No!" said Mr. Winkle. "I did indeed," responded Bob Sawyer, "and I was just going to say that I wasn't at home, but if you'd leave a message, I'd be sure to give it to myself; for he don't know me; no more does the LIGHTING AND PAVING. I think the Church-rates guesses who I am, and I know the Water-works does, because I drew a tooth of his when I first came here." Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXXVIII, 349.

The variable practice is strikingly exhibited in:

I tapped the barometer, and it jumped up and pointed to "very dry." The Boots stopped as he was passing, and said he expected, it meant to-morrow. I fancied that, maybe, it was thinking of the week before last, but Boots said, No, he thought not. Jer., Three Men in a Boat, Ch. V, 52.

5) The noun baby: i. Mrs. Veneering does not expect that Mr. Twemlow can in nature care much for such insipid things as babies, but so old a friend must please to look at baby. Dick., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. II, 11.

She put questions to him regarding baby. Thack., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. II, (313).

ii. The baby howled a great deal during the day. Ib., Ch. VI, (327).

The usage is sometimes extended to terms of endearment. What does little birdie say | In her nest at peep of day? | Let me fly, says little birdie [etc.]. Ten.

b) The names of certain legislative bodies, such as Congregation, Congress, Convocation, Council, Government, Parliament.

Congregation, in the sense of "a general assembly of the members of a University, or of such of them as possess certain specified qualifications." Murray, s. v. 3b. The suppression seems to be practically regular.

This week Congregation has passed the preamble to the financial statute setting up an advisory and supervisory Council. Westm. Gaz., No. 5625, 2a.

Congress, in the sense of the Congress of the United States of America.

The suppression is decidedly the rule.

i. Congress is not wiser or better than Parliament. Emerson, Eng. Traits, Result, 128b.

The president is responsible to the nation and to Congress. Froude, Oceana, Ch. XIII, 203.

Congress will not meet till December. Times.

As in every other crisis, Members of Congress are trimming to the political demagogues who shout the loudest. Id.

It is not easy to read a Roosevelt Message to Congress without using a bad word. Saturday Review.

ii. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year. Constitution, U. S., I, § 1.1)

The Congress mistrusted him. Thack., Virg., Ch. XCII, 983. (For the rest, apparently, regularly with the definite article suppressed in this novel.)

Convocation, in the sense of a) "in the Church of England: A provincial synod or assembly of the clergy, constituted by statute and called together to deliberate on ecclesiastical matters." Murray, s. v. 3;
b) "in the English Universities: At Oxford and Durham: The great legislative assembly of the University, consisting of all qualified members of the degree of M. A.; also a meeting of this body (the earlier sense). In the University of London and the Royal University of Ireland: a body consisting of all registered graduates, having the power of discussing and expressing an opinion on any matter connected with the interests of the University, and of electing certain members of the Senate." Id., s. v. 4. In either meaning the suppression appears to be regular.

i. As the head of the English Church, he (sc. the king) summons and dissolves Convocation, as the assembly of the clergy of the Church of England is called. Anna Buckland, Our Nat. Inst., 7.

Convocation is an ecclesiastical Parliament, summoned in each Province by the archbishops under the command of the King. Ib., 69.

ii. Every measure, before it reaches Convocation, must go through Congregation; and Congregation, as the Act finally passed, means the whole body of residents and next to nobody else. Sat. Rev., 1863, 300.¹

I am sorry to see that even if the Resolution allowing an alternative language to be offered in place of Greek at Responsions is carried in Convocation, it is proposed that the Hebdomadal Board should decree that all Passmen, with the exception of certain classes not yet defined, should be forced to offer Greek at the First Public Examination. Westm. G az., No. 5466, 4c.

Last week Convocation accepted the compromise on the Greek question, whereby students taking honours in science and mathematics are exempted from compulsory Greek. Westm. G az., No. 5625, 2a.

Council, when the reference is to a body assisting the governor of a Crown colony or dependency of Great Britain in an executive or legislative capacity, or in both.

Mr. Satyendra Sinha, who is appointed legal member of Council, is a lawyer of high repute and great practice. Westm. G az., No. 4961, 2a.

Government, in the sense of the English government. The suppression of the article is unusual.

i. What changed his nature was the famine and the way in which Government behave in face of it. Acad. ²

Government must educate the poor man. Emerson.

This he sent up to Government. Hogg, Life of Shelley, II, 210.

ii. The Government have acted wisely in laying these important facts before the English people. Times.

Parliament, in the sense of the English Parliament. The article is mostly absent. In Green, A Short Hist. of the Engl. People, the article is, perhaps, frequently used as dropped.

i. Parliament will be opened by the Queen. Bain, H. E. Gr., 19.

I wonder you don't go into Parliament. Dick., Christm. Car. ⁵, I, 12.

ii. I wonder whether it would be worth any gentleman's while now, to buy that observation (=observation) for the Papers; or the Parliament. Id., Chimes ³, I, 13. The Papers is full of observations as it is; and so's the Parliament. Ib., 14.

On the 27th of November the Parliament reassembled. Mac., Wil. Pitt. The Parliament itself rose and bowed to the vacant throne, when his name was mentioned. Green, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § I, 350.

Above all, we see the Parliament destroyed, the business of the nation stopped, its finances thrown into confusion by one exercise of the power now claimed. Westm. G az., No. 5207, 1c.

¹) Murray, s. v. congregation, 3b. ²) Ten Brug., Taalst., X.
Note. When the word is distinctly understood to denote a period, the use of the article may be the rule.

For the early part of the Parliament the procedure has been to wait on the chapter of accidents, snap divisions [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 6294, 2a.

17. The names of conceptions that are single in their kind are mostly found with the definite article, under the same conditions as in Dutch.

earth. And God saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth. Bible, Gen., VI, 5.
Moses was very weak above all the men which were upon the face of the earth. Id., Numb., XII, 3.
Ye are the salt of the earth. Id., Matth., V, 13.
ecliptic. The path which the earth traverses in its revolution around the sun, is called the ecliptic. Cassell's Conc. Cycl.
Supremacy on the sea is vital to this country. Westm. Gaz.
So much is at stake for us in keeping the command of the sea. lb., No. 4925, 4c.
sun. See under ecliptic.
universe. The greatest object in the universe is a good man struggling with adversity. Goldsm., Vicar.
Peggotty told me it was well-known that Yarmouth was, upon the whole, the finest place in the universe. Dick., Cop., Ch. XIII, 15a.
world. Ye are the light of the world. Bible, Matth., V, 14.

Note I. Sometimes the article is dropped for the sake of the metre.
Last a heathen horde, | Reddening the sun with' smoke and earth with blood... brake on him. Ten., Coming of Arthur, 37.

II. For the common suppression of the definite article before earth, chiefly after the prepositions of, and on, and before sea, chiefly after the preposition at, by and to, see 63.

18. The definite article is often dropped after all and both, even if the noun they modify is accompanied by a specializing modifier.

all. i. They had given him an opportunity of displaying before the eyes of all nations and all ages some qualities which irresistibly call forth the admiration and love of mankind. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. 1, 64.
Of all modern English poets Tennyson has most readers. Wallace, Gen. Instr. to Ten.'s, Princ., 10.
An inspector came up and asked to see all tickets. Westm. Gaz., No. 5024, 7b.
I did more work in half an hour than he had done all day. Jerome, Idle Thoughts, VI, 75.

ii. The omnibus is in favour with all classes of the community. Günth., Leerb., I, 74.
All parties in the Reichstag repudiated the Kaiser's imputation of German unfriendliness to England. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 509.
All news of the day will be found in 6.30 Final Edition of the Westminster Gazette presented in the most readable form. Westm. Gaz., No. 5277, 13.
This accounts for the universal sigh with which the passing of Mr. Balfour has been received by all parties and sections of the House of Commons. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 471, 617b.
Compare: i. *All the five were sentenced to death. M*cCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 317.

If the crowns of all the kingdoms were laid at my feet in exchange for my books, I would spurn them all. Westm. Gaz. (after Fénélon).

ii. * These rufflings and patchings will only make us hated by all the wives of our neighbours. Goldsm., Vicar. 1) Who were the supporters of the Irish people in this demand? All the forces of democracy in this country. Times, No. 1815. 820c.

** Now the man Moses was very meek, above all the men which were upon the face of the earth. Bible, Numbers, XII, 3.

both. i. * Both young ladies applied themselves to tending Mr. Pecksniff’s wounds in the back parlour. Dick., Chuz., Ch. I, 6b.

She spake for a few minutes to both children. Mrs. Alex., A Life Int., I, Ch. I, 21.

ii. * Both sons of my neighbour over the way have made their fortune in Australia.

Compare: i. *Both the prisoners were sent to the Tower by water. Mac. 1) The force of his character . . . enabled him to bid defiance to both the extreme parties. Id., Hist., I, Ch. I, 49.

ii. * Both the Houses of Parliament gave a hearty assent to the measure.

** Both the poets you mention have equally contributed to introduce a false taste into their respective countries. Goldsm., Vicar.

In natural courage and intelligence both the nations which now became connected with England, ranked high. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. I, 64.

19. Common is also the suppression of the definite article before certain nouns modified by last or next, when an epoch is meant.

a) When the modifier is last, the suppression is regular in case the epoch referred to is that immediately preceding the moment of speaking or writing.

i. Last noon beheld them full of lusty life, | Last eve in Beauty’s circle proudly gay. Byron, Childe Har., Ill, XXVIII.

Your conduct of last evening was of a description which no gentleman could endure. Dick., Pickw., Ch. II, 16.

It was only last holidays he had in a manner robbed the great apple-tree. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 31.

All the servants . . . rose up on his entrance and bowed or curtseyed to him. They never used to do so last holidays. Ib.

He tamed two snakes last half. Hughes, Tom. Brown, II, Ch. III, 234.

I was there late last evening. Mrs. Alex., For his Sake, I, Ch. X, 162.

No such procession was allowed in France even under the monarchy of last century. Rev. of Rev. CCXXVI, 310b.

The following passage . . . is one of the finest pieces of English written last century. Ib., CCXXXI, 277a.

At last Election the Liberal-Labour men were returned by a majority of about 6,000. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVI, 310b.

Last tour everybody was talking about it. Times, No. 1823, 981d.

Thus also in: Because I thought you brave, night before last, was no reason why I should have thought you a coward yesterday. Mar. Crawf., Kath. Land., II, Ch. XV, 279. (More usual: the night before last.)

ii. Were I but sure the Lady Isabelle were fit for travel after the horrors of the last night, we would not increase the offence by remaining here an instant longer. Scott, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXIII, 293.

1) Foels.-Koch, Wis. Gram., § 284.
I have lived in Avignon with my aunt until the last year. May Wynne, When Terror ruled, Ch. I, 14.

Note I. The use of these phrases to denote an epoch immediately preceding a moment of the past, is unusual and seems improper. In this case the use of the article may be more common. For instances see also Ch. XXX, 11.

i. They went down to the landing-place, where they had left their goods last night. Dick., Chuz., Ch. XXIII, 195a.

ii. He made a scanty breakfast on the remains of the last night's provisions.


She . . . left me sitting in the neighbouring chamber, the scene of the last night's quarrel. Thack., Newc., II, Ch. XLII, 437.

II. In the following quotation the suppression of the article is exceptional, and due to an excessive desire of shortness:

Kite. But, sir, you have got a recruit here that you little think of. — Plume. Who? — Kite. One that you beat up for last time you were in the country. Farquhar, Recruiting Officer, I, 1, (254).

b) When the modifier is next, the suppression is met with chiefly in adverbial adjuncts and adnominal genitives or their periphrastic equivalents. In these it is regular when the reference is to an epoch immediately succeeding the moment of speaking or writing. Usage is divided in denoting an epoch following upon a moment in the past. Ch. XXX, 12.

i. Next week (fortnight, quarter, half, year, century) matters will have greatly improved.


They promise all sorts of dreadful deeds next Session, if the Home Rule Bill goes through. Westm. Gaz., No. 6305, 36.

There ought to be a General Election before next Session. Westm. Gaz., No. 6329, 2a.

In the Weekly Times of next week a new serial will be begun. Further details will be found in next week's issue.

ii. * 't Was the next day my aunt found the matter out. Sher., Riv., I, 2, (217).

About the middle of the next day . . . a sudden noise below seemed to speak the whole house in confusion. Jane Austen, Pride and Prej., Ch. XXVIII, 159.

That day in private they went into the thing together, and saw that some roguery was being played. The next day it was all out, and ruin stared them in the face. Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col., Ch. III, 50.

The next morning Mr. Eden visited some of the poorest people in the parish. Ch. Reade, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. VII, 83.

The next morning little Capitaine Crepin came back in a great state of excitement. W. Black, The New Prince Fortune., Ch. XIV.

** He was early at the office next morning. Dick., Christm. Car., V, 109.

Susan was up betimes next day. Ch. Reade, It is never too late to mend, Ch. XVIII, 244.

Note. Next sometimes occasions the dropping of the definite article also before other nouns than such as express time. Thus:

a) regularly before door, as in:

Trying to hide himself, behind the girl from next-door but one. Dick., Christm. Car., II, 45.
The sound appeared as if it was in our house instead of next-door. 
Marryat, Olla Podrida.

β) exceptionally in:
You'll cross a lane after next field. Hughes Tom Brown.1)

20. The definite article is often dropped also before some other superlatives:

a) It is mostly omitted before the indefinite numeral most. Ellinger, Verm. Beitr., 27. Sometimes the dropping is attended by a change of meaning: compare He has eaten most apples with He has eaten the most apples. In the first sentence there is a comparison of the apples that have been eaten and those that have been left. In the second there is a comparison of two or more persons as to the number of apples that each has eaten. But, as the following quotations show, the article is often dropped where, according to the principle underlying the distinction between the two above sentences, it ought to be used. In not a few cases the principle cannot be applied at all.

1) The article is not uncommon before the conjoint most.

i. This was the part of his life on which he afterwards looked back with most pride. Mac., Lord Clive, (530a).
Like most writing which is at once very good and very laboured, Junius appears to most advantage in quotations. Lecky, Hist. of Eng., III, 236.2)
He said that he could persuade most men of most things and himself of almost anything. Times.
But, if the question is who in his own time, or indeed in any other, gave the world most harmless amusement, there will be but one answer. Id., No. 1832, 111d.
In the production of most vowels the tongue is convex to the palate. Jones, Pron. of Eng., § 20.

ii. What a troublesome world this is, when one has the most right to expect it to be as agreeable as possible. Dick., Cop., Ch. IV, 22b.
It is those who injure women, who get the most kindness from them. Thack., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XV, 158.
Perhaps it was the hardest task of all which Laura had to go through in this matter: and the one which gave her the most pain. Id., Pend., I, Ch. XXVII, 295.
I like to talk with the man who can drink the most beer. Ib., I, Ch. XXX, 317.
As for the question of drink, the races that produce the most effect on the world are those that consume the most meat and the most alcohol. Mar. Crawf., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. X, 181.
Ask the beggar whom he gets the most pence from. Lytton, Night and Morn., 136.
Which of our kings had the most children? Notes and Queries.
The women who work the most mischief in civilised communities, are supreme egoists. Mrs. Belloc Lowndes, Jane Oglander, Ch. VIII, 127.

Note the change of meaning which the omission of the definite article in the following quotation would entail:

1) Sattler, E. S., XXXI, 341.  2) Ib., 345.
The religious belief of the most civilised nations, and the rude traditions of the roughest savages, alike number it (sc. the delight of meeting at Christmas) among the first joys of a future condition of existence. Dick., Pick w., Ch. XXVIII.

2) The article is less common before the absolute most than before the conjoint. (Ch. XXVIII, 11.)

i. I lose most of my money, if I marry without my aunt's consent till of age. Sheridan, Rivals, I, 2, (217).

Most of the company lounged out one by one to the bar-room in the next block. Dick., Chuz., Ch. XVI, 141b.

He sat most of the evening whistling and talking with Roundhand on the verandah. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 43.

It was four hundred acres, all arable and most of it poor sour land. Ch. Reade, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. I, 2.

Most of the assembly were dissolved in tears. Motley, Rise, I, Ch. II, 58.

Most of the work in these departments is done by men especially retained for this purpose. Good Words, 1885 (Stof., Leesb., I, 94).

Miss Wooler's pupils... were most of them daughters of well-to-do families in the neighbourhood. Miss Flora Masson, The Brontës, Ch. V, 28.

ii. The most of them (sc. his followers) answered "There is no contravening that." Scott, Mon., Ch. XXXV, 376.

There you must spend the most of your time. Jane Austen, North. Abbey, Ch. XXX, 233.

The most of my patrons are boys. Stevenson, New Arabian Nights, 30.

I believe they (sc. the Jews) have the most of it (sc. your money) already. Trol., Barc h. Tow, Ch. XV, 118.

The millionaire must be regarded as the working bee, the most of whose golden store must at his death be appropriated by the community. Rev. of Rev., CCV, 28.

"Heart" is used in many compounds, the most of which need no special explanation. Webster, i. v. heart.

"Fellow" is often used in composition, indicating an associate or sometimes equality: as 'fellow-student'. The most of these are self-explaining. Id., s. v. fellow.

You have a great deal more than the most of your fellow-creatures have. Mrs Oliphant.1)

He (sc. Quiller-Couch) believed that the most of them (sc. the revisers of the Old Testament) could wonderfully improve 'the talent of the ear', as he would call it. Westm. Gaz., No. 6240, 8d.

3) Usage seems to be about equally divided before the substantive most, which is generally used of things, rarely of persons.

i. * Those who know most of Sir Thomas. Trol.2)

I think I have done most by sea. Lady Barker, Lett. 141.2)

** He is more generously equipped in the matter than most. Ethel M. Dell, The Way of an Eagle, II, Ch. XII, 94.

ii. * They who know the most | Must mourn the deepest o'er the fatal truth,|

The Tree of Knowledge is not that of Life. Byron, Manfred, I, 1.

It was Mrs. Dibble who could tell the most. Miss Burnett, Little Lord, 240.

Of all our dramatists Shakespeare loses the most by a dumb-show performance. Westm. Gaz., No. 6353, 7a.

** Sunk... | Too deep for the most to discern. M. Arnold, Youth of Nature, 71.3)
To the most, indeed, he had become not so much a Man as a Thing. CARL., Sart. Res. Ch. III, 11.

To the Editor of these sheets, as to a young enthusiastic Englishman, however unworthy, Teufelsdröckh opened himself 'perhaps more than to the most.' Ib., 13.

4) Some cases call for special mention. The indefinite article is never or hardly ever dropped:

a) when most is modified by by far.

As pre- (prae-) and pro- are great Latin prefixes, it follows that by far the most of the words in this section are of Latin origin MURRAY, Pref. Note to N. E. D., premisal — prophesier.

b) when most is modified by an adnominal clause.

The rat is almost unteachable; the most that can be taught him being attachment to the person. All the Year Round, 1883, July, 42a. This is really the most that I can concede. MURRAY, s.v. most A, II, 5. The most that can be hoped for, is [etc.]. FOWLER, Concise Oxford Dict., Pref.

Note the idiom In: If she knows her letters, it's the most she does. Dick., Our Mut. Fried, 1, Ch. III, 27. (= Dutch: zal het mooi zijn.)

c) in the phrase to make the most of.

We have not made the most of our victories. SWIFT, Conduct of the Allies, Pref., (421a).

How to make the most of her beauty. GAY, Beggar's Opera, 1, 4. Every pretext for physical recreation was seized and made the most of. CH. BRONTE, Villette, Ch. XIV, 156.

Let his enemies make the most of it. DICK., Pickw., Ch. 1, 3. We cannot complain if Protectionist writers and speakers make the most of this plum. Westm. Gaz., No. 5543, 1c.

d) in the phrase for the most part in the sense of for the greater part. Ch. XXX, 9.

i. His neighbours are bad for the most part. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 182.

Reviews of books... are for the most part done by outsiders. Good Words (STOF., Leesb., I, 94).

ii. In Germany as elsewhere, the ninety-and-nine Public Men can for most part be but mute train-bearers to the hundredth. CARL., Sart. Res., Ch. III, 16.

Note I. When not preceded by for, most part seems to stand mostly without the article. The article is regularly dropped before this phrase used adverbially.

i. * I went and took a view of most part of Hungary. S. L. tr. Fryke's Voy. E. Ind., 2.1) I was puzzled to bequeath most part of my clothes... to Lorna. BLACKM., Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVII, 217.

** Mere resin and noise most part. CARLYLE, French Rev., I, 109.2) Old official gentlemen, military most part. Id., Fred.2) His nature was most part a cold one. E. FITZ GERALD.2)

ii. My dear little girl was, thank God, unable to understand the most part of their ribaldry. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 158.

1) MURRAY, s.v. most, A, I, c. 2) SATTLER, E. S., XXXI, 346.
Some few of the younger grovelled at his knees, and kissed his feet, ... but the most part kept a stolid indifference. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Hot!, Ch. XXV, 184b.

II. Before most when equivalent to most part, the article seems to be dropped regularly.

It had rained most of October, but November was, though dark, fairly dry. Baroness von Hutten, What became of Pam. Ch. XIV, 102.
Compare with the above: The personal charms which Tess could boast of were in main part her mother’s gifts. Hardy, Tess, I, Ch. III, 21.

b) What has been said of most most probably applies, in the main, also to least when used as an indefinite numeral. The evidence to hand at the moment of writing is, however, too scanty to justify the drawing of any definite conclusions.

conjoint. i. He showed least mercy to those who had forsaken him. I. Schmidt, Eng. Gram., § 223.
Of the well-defined vowels that which is articulated with least effort is [a]. Rippmann, Sounds of Spok. Eng., § 37.
ii. The fewest words will probably do the least harm in the long run. H. B. Mayor, The Fallacy of the Elder Brother (Nineteenth Cent., No. 393, 813).
Of all people in the world the English have the least sense of the beauty of literature. Oscar Wilde, The Pict. of Dor. Gray Ch. IV, 62.

absolute. i. Those who have most virtue in their mouths have least of it in their bosoms. Goldsmith, She Stoops to Conquer, II, (190).
ii. At last it was the turn of the good old-fashioned dance which has the least of variety and the most of merriment in it. G. Eliot, Mill, VI, Ch.X, 407.

substantive. i. The truly modest and stout say least and are least exceptions. Wych., The Plain Dealer, II, 1.
The few who are wealthy... are the ones who have least to fear. Lit. World 1892, 377a.
ii. Those who know the least, obey the best. G. Farquhar, The Recruiting Officer, IV, I, (307).
The least said the soonest mended. Marryat, Pirate, V. (In this proverb the article is mostly suppressed before both superlatives.)
We, of all the peoples, have the most to lose and the least to gain by war. Eng. Rev., No. 49, 151.

Note. Least never loses the article:
a) when in negative, hypothetical or interrogative contexts it has the meaning of any however small. (Ch. XL, 18, Obs. IV). In this function it approaches, however, distinctly to an ordinary adjective. (Ch. XXX, 8, s. v. least, a.)
Fire-escape intended to be always ready without the least preparation. II. Catal., Gt. Exhib., 330.1)
I visited all the scenes that were in the least degree associated with Winnie, Th. Watts Dunton, Aylwin, XIV, Ch. I, 386.
Have you the least idea of what they are talking about? Bern. Shaw, Getting Married, (241).

b) in the phrase to say the least (of it).

We hold the moral law to be as much, to say the least of it, the appointment of God as any natural law. McCosh, Div. Govt., II, ii, 197.1)
y) when modified by possible:

"And what will you have for dinner, mem?" — "Oh, the least possible!"

AGN. & EG. CASTLE, DLAM. CULT. PASTE, III, Ch. I, 239.

They only wish to do the least possible that will satisfy Wales. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6147, 7a.

c) It may reasonably be assumed that fewest exhibits, in the main, the same practice as least as regards the use of the article. Anything like adequate documentary evidence is not, however, available at the moment of going to press.

Of all my acquaintance he has fewest friends. I. SCHMIDT, ENG. GRAM., § 223.

Those who have fewest children have fewest cares. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. II, 61.

The present Prime Minister has set an admirable example of forcible, condensed speaking, but he has few imitators, and perhaps fewest on the front benches. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5549, 2a.

d) The superlative first often loses the definite article in the adverbial phrase the first thing (place), especially in colloquial language, in which unimportant words are often suppressed for the sake of brevity.

i. Where have you been to, first place? MRS. GASK., MARY BARTON, Ch. XII, 133.

What were you fretting about, first place? IB., Ch. V, 42.

You must pay him first thing. G. ELIOT, MILL, III, Ch. IV, 203.

I meant to have a few words with you on this subject first thing. MRS. WARD, SIR GEORGE TRES., III, Ch. XXI, 177a.

You can order a fly first thing, and bring me my breakfast early. IB., I, Ch. II, 14a.

ii. He must go there the first thing the next day. EDNA LYALL, HARDY NORMAN, Ch. X, 83.

Go down, the first thing to-morrow, by the six o'clock train. G. MEREDITH, ORD. OF RICH. FEB., Ch. LXXI, 251.

I shall go to get news of him, the first thing to-morrow morning. FLOR. MARRYAT, A BEAUTIFUL SOUL, 18.

Compare: It's a jolly time; a goal kicked by us first day. HUGHES, TOM BROWN, I, Ch. VI, 115.

They had done work for first lesson. IB. 1)

e) Occasionally we find the article dropped also before other superlatives than the above, mostly as it seems, for the sake of metre or rhythm. Instances are especially frequent in earlier English. Compare 28, a, 3, a, Note II; 64, c; and see DUBISLAW, BEITR., § 9, ELLINGER, VERM. BEITR., 37; EINENKEL, STREIFZ., 28; FRANZ, SHAK. GRAM., § 267.

So longest way shall have the longest moans. RICH. II, V, I, 90.

Best safety lies in fear. HAM., I, 3, 41.

But grace abus'd brings forth the foulest deeds, | As richest soil the most luxuriant weeds. COWPER. 1)

Blighting my life in best of its career. BYRON, LAM. OF TASSO, IV, 21.

Thus also chief sometimes loses the article:

CALUS MARCIUS is chief enemy to the people. CORIOL., I, I, 8.

O Son, in whom my soul hath chief delight. MILT., PAR. LOST, III, 168

STAPYLTON has chief control of its finances. BAR. ORCZY, THE CASE OF MISS ELLIOTT, CH. II, 18.

1) SATTLER, E. S., XXXI, 341.

H. POUTSMA, A GRAMMAR OF LATE MODERN ENGLISH. II.
The definite article is often suppressed before *one*, when used as the correlative of *the other, another, other* or of another *one*. See Ch. XL, 155-158, and compare also TEN BRUG., Taalst., VI, 28.

a) When it is the correlative of *the other* (Ch. XL, 155, a).

1) Suppression is practically regular:

a) when the two words are connected by *or* or *nor*.

i. * When the question is settled *one way or the other*, I don't believe Mr. Brough will take any further notice of me. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 81.

My Lady Warrington ... had the faith and health of the servants' hall in keeping. Heaven can tell whether she knew how to doctor them rightly: but, was it pill or doctrine, she administered *one or the other* with equal belief in her authority. Id., Virg., Ch. XLV, 465.

They want to eat their cake and have it — to escape conscription and cut down the Navy — it cannot be done, gentlemen! It is *one or the other*, as Cobden saw fifty years ago. Rev. of Rev., CCXVIII, 127a.

The overwhelming majority of the books noted are so prejudiced on *one side or the other* that they are quite negligible. Westm. Gaz., No. 6147, 116.

** The tide of battle seemed to flow now toward the southern, now toward the northern extremity of the lists, as *the one or the other* party prevailed. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. XII, 123.

ii. It is but two months since you were sighing at her feet — making poems to her — placing them in hollow trees by the river-side. I knew all. I watched you — that is, she showed them to me. Neither *one nor the other* was in earnest, perhaps; but it is too soon now, Arthur to begin a new attachment. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVII, 294.

b) when the reference is indefinite.

I don't know that he has accused me of stealing Van den Bosch's spoons and tankards when we dine there, or of robbing on the highway. But for *one reason or the other* he has chosen to be jealous of me. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXX, 743. (*The one ... the other* would be equivalent to *the former ... the latter*. See 2, a.)

Sometimes they (sc. these chieftains) hired themselves to *one* state to protect *it* against *the other*. LYTTON, Rienzi, Ch. IV, 103.

γ) when the two words, connected by *and*, form a kind of unit standing for *each or both*.

When Laura appeared blushing and happy, as she hung on Pen's arm, the Major gave a shaky hand to *one and the other*. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXVIII, 399.

She had taken unfair advantage of him, as her brother had at play. They were his own flesh and blood, and they ought to have spared him. Instead, *one and the other* had made a prey of him. Id., Virg., Ch. XLVIII, 496.

Thus also the definite article is regularly dropped in the phrase: *one way and the other* = to and fro.

To *flounce* = to throw the limbs and body *one way and the other*. WEBST., Dict.

To *wag* = to move *one way and the other* with quick turns. Ib.
Note also the regular absence of the definite article in the saying: *six of one and half-a-dozen of the other* (= Dutch *oud lood om oud ijzer*.)

Mostly they come for skill — or idleness. *Six of one, and half-a-dozen of the other.* Dick., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXIV, 211.

\(\delta\) when the two words are used in reciprocal relation, an intervening preposition having occasioned the substitution of *the other* for *another.* (Ch. XL, 156, c, Obs. III.)

i. They walked *one* behind the *other.* Conan Doyle, *Refugees*, 317.

We depended *one* upon *the other.* Besant, *All Sorts and Conditions* of Men, Ch. XVI, 126.

ii. Here the two bodies are inimical *the one to the other.* Athen., No. 4447, 61c.

2) The article seems to be almost regularly retained before *one*:

\(\alpha\) when the word-group is used substantively and equivalent to *the former* . . *the latter.*

i. The First Minister of State has not so much business in public as a wise man has in private; *if the one* have little leisure to be alone, *the other* has little leisure to be in company. Cowley, *Essays, Of Solitude*, 50.

*The one* vanquished by a single blow, *the other* by efforts successively repeated. Goldsm., *Vic.*, Ch. I.

Mr. Bumble had a great idea of his oratorical powers and his importance. He had displayed *the one,* and vindicated *the other.* Dick., *Ol. Twist,* Ch. II, 24.

ii. Warfare and barter in the market came, *one* as easily as *the other,* to those who tilled the stormy dale. Hal. Sutcl., *Pam the Fiddler,* Ch. VI, 7b.

\(\beta\) in the conjunctive expressions *on the one hand . . . on the other,* *in the one case . . . in the other.* (Ch. X, 10.)

i. The acute Roman took care, *on the one hand,* how he betrayed to the Knight more than he yet knew, or he disgusted him by apparent reserve *on the other.* Lytton, *Rienzi,* II, Ch. IV, 105.

ii. *In the one case* there is no limit to the power of the party to pass any legislation in the teeth of any popular movement; *in the other* the party is to be brought to a full-stop, unless it will submit itself to a plebiscite. Westm. Gaz.

**Guarded by his own conscience on one hand, on the other,* by the remoteness of the hamlet, . . . he had maintained the old decencies of worship here. Hal. Sutcl., *Pam the Fiddler,* Ch. IV, 56.

3) For the rest usage is divided, but there seems to be a distinct tendency to suppress the article.

\(\iota\) *One* hand may wash *the other,* but both the face. Proverb.

You look at it, Arabin, from *one* side only; I can look at it from *the other.* Trol., *Framl. Pars,* Ch. XXXVI, 353.

Of the two rival claimants, *one* did homage to Philip and *the other* to Edward. Green, *Short Hist.*

There are two drawers to my table; in *one* I put my copy-books, in *the other* my letters. Günth., *Leerb. der Eng. Taal.*

The Commissionaire plumped down into the chair, and stared from *one* to *the other* of us. Con. Doyle, *Sherl. Holm., The Blue Carbuncle.*

ii. They (sc. the twins) were both so exactly alike, that it was impossible to distinguish *the one from the other.* Lamb., *Tales, Com. of Er.,* 212.
The product of the first year, great or small, shall be divided amongst us. You the one half, I and my men the other half. Lytton, Rienzi, II, Ch. IV, 105.

The garden was screened by old moss-grown paling, from the neighbouring garden on the one side, and a lane on the other. Id., Night and Morning, 155.

Captain de Catinet had hardly vanished through the one door, before the other was thrown open by Madlle Nanon. Con. Doyle, Refugees, 85.

b) When one is the correlative of another (Ch. XL, 156), of other (Ch. XL, 157), or of another one (Ch. XL, 158), it regularly stands without the article.

i. One man must not look at a horse, while another may leap over the hedge. Mrs. Wood, O r v. Col., Ch. V, 76.

One good turn deserves another. Punch, 1894, 155.

ii. He tried to reassure himself with an old and favourite maxim of his, that one way or other all would turn out for the best. Wash. Irving, Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 124).

The longer it goes on, the nearer it must be to a settlement one way or other. Dick., Bleak House, Ch. XIV, 112.

iii. One after one the men got up and bustled out. Hall Caine, D e e m s t e r , Ch. XXIV, 170.

One said this and one said that. Blackmore, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVI, 213.

22. Partly contrary to ordinary Dutch practice, the definite article stands before nouns modified by such participial adjectives as (afore)said), before-mentioned, etc.

The said face indicated an independent dignity. Mrs. Craik, John Hal., Ch. X, 109.

Annual subscriptions, which must be prepaid, are received to the under-mentioned periodicals. Times, Adv.

THE ARTICLE BEFORE PROPER NOUNS.

23. Proper nouns in their primary and ordinary application stand without either article.

As in Dutch, proper nouns may assume the character of class-nouns, and, like the latter, take the definite or indefinite article. In their altered application they admit of being used in the plural.

i. The lighter, which might have been compared to another garden of Eden, of which my mother was the Eve, and my father the Adam to consort with, was entered by this serpent, who tempted her. Marryat, Jacob Faithful, Ch. I, 3a.

ii. He is a plain John Bull, and has no relish for frippery and nicknacks. Wash. Irv., Sketch-Bk., John Bull, 309.

The lofty alliance had converted the once gentle and dreamy Rose into a very Roxana. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Ho! Ch. XIX, 146b.

iii. A supposition at which the two young Cratchits became livid. Christm. Car. 5, III, 68.

Note in this connection the placing of a before names of persons used as war-cries. This a is now mostly treated as the indefinite article, but is in reality the representative of the obsolete interjection a, which
is a dialect form of o and ah. See Murray, s. v. A, interjection. Dubislaw (Beitr. zur hist. Synt. des Eng., § 11) explains this a as a survival of the French preposition a. 

A Clifford! a Clifford! we'll follow the king and Clifford. Henry VI, B, IV, 8, 52.

“A Hubert! a Hubert!” shouted the populace. Scott, Ivanhoe, Ch. XII, 137. “A Colonna! a Colonna!” “An Orsini! an Orsini!” were shouts loudly and fiercely interchanged. Lytton, Rienzi, I, Ch. I, 14.

The little town was in an uproar with men running to and fro, and shouting “A Monmouth! a Monmouth! the Protestant religion!” Mac., Hist., II, Ch. V, 142. Such as had possessed themselves of pikes in the city waved pennons in the air and cried: “A Roy! a Roy of Calverton”. Max Pemberton, I crown thee king, Ch. XVIII, 234.

They were sore weary, laggards in hope, but still they cried: “A Wyat! a Wyat”. Ib., 233.

24. Many proper names are distinctly significant, and are, consequently, more or less regularly preceded by the definite article.

The function of the article is twofold, i.e. it suggests a specializing or individualizing element, as in the Channel (= the Channel between England and France) or it indicates pre-eminence as in the Book (= the best book or the Bible). Cf. 5. a) and c). This difference is not however, here insisted on, as being of no importance for any practical purpose.

The following groups of significant proper names may be distinguished.

a) names of persons and deities: the Devil, the Father, the Lord, the Redeemer, the Saviour, the Virgin, the Speaker, etc.

b) names of localities: the Channel, the Exchange, the Levant, the Mall, the Mint, the Peak, the Poultry, the Strand, the Tower, etc.

c) names of institutions and social or political events: the Inquisition, the Synod, the Reformation, the Restoration, the Revolution, etc.

Thus also the Epiphany or the manifestation (sc. of the Infant Jesus to the Gentiles in the persons of the Magi), chiefly used as the name of a church festival, also called Twelfth Night.

d) names of books and other publications: the Bible, the Book, the Standard, the Times, the Globe, etc.

A little illustration must suffice:

book. Swear upon the Book | Not to reveal it, till you see me dead. Ten., Enoch Arden, 834.

With the coming of the new year a minor improvement has been made in the way of administering the oath in the courts. No longer is it necessary to kiss the Book. Westm. Gaz., No. 5201, 2b.

Epiphany. While December 25 came to be universally observed as the day of Nativity, the feast of January 6, twelve days after, was retained as the Epiphany. Harmsw. Enc., s. v. Epiphany. (The absence of the article before nativity seems to be exceptional.)

The First Sunday after the Epiphany. Common Prayer.

Tower. The lions in the Tower. Wash. Irv., Sketch-Bk., XXV, 244.

Note. Devil and its substitutes often lose the article in imprecations.


O devil on’t. Ib., II, 2, (233).

Pox on her! Ib., III, 4, (256).
Deuce take the man! Dick., Cop., Ch. XXXV, 249.

Devil take you! Id., Chuz., Ch. LI, 393a.

Plague take them! Thack., Van. Fair, I, Introd.

ii. The devil take me! Congreve, Love for Love, V, 2, (301).

O' the devil! what damned costive poet has given thee this lesson in infustrian to get by rote? Ib., Ill, 3, (241).

The devil fetch me if I do (sc. fetch it)! G. Farquhar, The Recruiting Officer, IV, 3, (320).

Compare with the above: a) Captain Absolute and Ensign Beverley are one and the same person — The devil they are! Sher., Rtv., I, 1, (213).

b) To what the devil does this tend? Thack., Pend., II, Ch. XXXI, 341.

Who the deuce was she? Id., Virg., Ch. VII, 70.

The indefinite article is also found in sentences of this type: What a plague means my niece, to take the death of her brother thus? Twelfth Night, I, 3, I.

What a pox does this Foresight mean by this civillity? Congreve, Love for Love, II, 2, (236).

II. Also Lord sometimes loses the article in the language of invocation. Lord send we may be coming to something better In the New Year nigh upon us! Dick., Chimes, I, 14.

Lord love you! Trol., Framl. Pars., Ch. VIII, 82.

Lord deliver us! Buchanan, That Winter Night, Ch. III, 29.

The article is, of course, regularly dropped before Lord in the vocative.


25. a) When the significant meaning of such words ceases to be understood, they are apt to lose the article.

This is the case with Christ, God; Eden, Heaven, Hell, Paradise, Purgatory; Elysium, Hades, Orcus, Tartarus.

And a river went out of Eden to water the garden. Bible, Gen., II, 10.

He descended into Hell; The third day he rose again from the dead. He ascended into Heaven. Common Prayer.

I know not... if it (sc. the bird) were in winged guise! A visitant from Paradise. Byron, Pris. of Chil., X, 34.

In Homer Tartarus is a place beneath the earth, as far below Hades as heaven is above the earth. Cassell’s Concise Cycl.

Note I. Christ is sometimes found with the article.

Thou art the Christ. Bible, Matth., XVI, 16.

We have found the Messias, which is, being interpreted, the Christ. Id., John, I, 41.

I made them lay their hands in mine and swear | To reverence the King, as if he were | Their conscience, and their conscience as their King, | To break the heathen and uphold the Christ. Ten., Guin., 467.

Christ is dealt with as an ordinary appellative and may, accordingly, stand with any of the ordinary noun-modifiers, when it denotes an image used as an object of worship.

At a meeting of the paths was a crucifix, and between the feet of the Christ a little red patch of dead poppies. Westm. Gaz., No. 6182, 7a.

II. Usage is divided as to heaven, whether in the singular or the plural.

The singular in its various shades of meaning, mostly stands without the article; apparently, regularly when it denotes the Supreme
The plural, on the other hand, in all its varied applications, is almost regularly preceded by the article, except in the vocative. (Ch. XXV, 20.) See also Ellinger, Verm. Beitr., 26.

I. In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. Bible, Gen., I, 1.

The sun slowly sank in the heaven. W. Collins, After Dark, 81.  

When from the heaven does not smile a listening Father, it soon becomes an empty space. Annie Besant, Autobiography, 133.


Things of great height are said by hyperbole to reach to heaven. Murray, s. v. heaven, 1

The clouds, winds, breath, fowls of heaven. Ib., 2.

** (I would) speak with her, if Heaven gives me an opportunity, as Heaven, I feel assured, will give. Ch. Kingsley, West w. Ho!, Ch. XIX, 143b.

** There are more things in heaven and earth, Horatio, | Than are dreamt of in your philosophy. Ham. I, 1, 166.

Papa ... would move heaven and earth for her, if he could. Trol., Orley Farm, Ch. XIX. 2

Nothing in heaven or earth would have stayed her hand now. New Antigone, Ch. XIX. 2

III. Shakespeare sometimes has the article before Heaven when the supreme Being is meant, and before Paradise when it is not the abode of the blessed, but the Garden of Eden that is referred to. Franz, Shak. Gram. 2, § 265.

The heaven such grace did lend her. Two Gentlemen., IV, 2, 41.

Not that Adam that kept the Paradise, but that Adam that keeps the prison. Com. of Err., IV, 3, 15.

IV. God takes the definite article, when preceded by a continuative adjective, but Almighty God is more frequent than the Almighty God.

i. He thanked the good God for all the blessings He had bestowed on him.

ii. * I am the Almighty God; walk before me. Bible, Gen., XVII, 1.

** Great and manifold were the blessings, most dread Sovereign, which Almighty God, the Father of all mercies, bestowed upon us, the people of England. Authorised Version.

On Tuesday in St. Paul's Cathedral the King and Queen rendered thanks to Almighty God for the safe and happy course and ending of their visit to India. Times, No. 1832, 116d.

On the analogy of Almighty God also, perhaps, Almighty Power, as in: The stillness of Almighty Power is here. Ebenezer Elliott, Love, II.

b) The suppression cannot, however, always be accounted for in this way. As is also shown by a comparison of the nouns mentioned in 24 and 25, a, it is sometimes due to no apparent cause, beyond the generally prevailing economy of language.

1) Thus the definite article is mostly omitted before Scripture, notwithstanding the significance of the word. The plural, however, seems to take the article regularly.


i. * So spoke, in the emphatic words of Scripture, the helpless and bereft father. SCOTT, FAIR MAID, Ch. XXXV, 373.

The clergyman... read the service in a lively agreeable voice, giving almost a dramatic point to the chapters of Scripture which he read. THACK., VIRG., Ch. XV, 148.

We have the authority of Scripture for believing that the unjust steward, though he fears not God and regards not man, nevertheless is roused to action if the importunate widow will but be importunate enough. REV. OF REV., CCXXVII, 406a.

** The Scripture moveth us in sundry places [etc.]. Common Prayer.

I asked the boy whether he or his parents were acquainted with the Scripture and ever read it. GEORGE BORROW, THE BIBLE IN SPAIN, Ch. I, 11.

ii. Dutch tiles designed to illustrate the Scriptures. DICK., CHRISTM. CAR. 5, I, 21.

Her religion, manufactured in the main by her own intelligence and an ardent study of the Scriptures, was an aid to her in this matter. RUDY. KIPL., THE LIGHT THAT FAILED, Ch. I, 4.

There's an infallible guide both for you and me, and that's the Holy Scriptures. MRS. WARD, DAV. GRIEVE, I, 238.

2) In the language of the illiterate Bible sometimes drops the definite article.

"Flesh is grass"—Bible says. MRS. GASK. 1)

26. There are, however, numerous cases in which the article continues to be used, although all significance in the name is practically gone, or at least forgotten. Thus the article is regularly used:

a) before all plurals (Ch. XXV, 19, i).

b) before the following singulars. Those mentioned in the second group have a Dutch equivalent without the article.

i. the Carnatic, the Crimea, the Hague, the Herzegovina, the Lindeness, the Lizard (= Lizard Point), the Minch, the Naze (= the Lindeness), the Nore, the Palatinate, the Punjab (= Punjab), the Sahara, the Solent, the Sound, the Sudan, the Ukraine.

ii. the Deccan, the Grisons, the Morea, the Texel (as the name of an arm of the sea).

Note. Alsace, unlike the Dutch de Elzas, has not the article.

iii. the Acropolis, the Alhambra, the Capitol, the Pantheon.

A few illustrative quotations must suffice:

Lindeness. The coast of Norway, studded with isles from its southern extremity; the Lindeness, or Naze, to the North Cape. CH. BRONTE, JANE EYRE, Ch. I, 2.

Lizard. It was only on the nineteenth of July that the sails of the Armada were seen from the Lizard. GREEN, SHORT HIST., Ch. VII, § VI, 418. Arthur's ship is sighted off the Lizard. GRANT ALLEN, HILDA WADE, Ch. I, 25.

Lieutenant Prowse was washed off the conning-tower platform of submarine "C 37" near the Lizard on Saturday of last week. L. LOND. NEWS, No. 3703, 529a.

Morea. Its modern name, the Morea,... was given to it from its resemblance in shape to a mulberry leaf. HARM SW. ENCYCL, s.v. Peloponnesus.

1) FOELS—KOCH, WIS. GRAM., § 267.
Punjaub. During his few years of office he annexed the Punjaub. McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 175.
The manufacturing industry of the Punjab is more extensive than in any other province of India. Cassell's Conc. Cyclop.

Texel. They (sc. the ships) were said to be in the Texel. Mac., Hist., II, Ch V, 119.
While his small fleet lay tossing in the Texel, a contest was going on among the Dutch authorities. Ib., 139.
The Dutch fleet from the Texel, which was to protect a French force in its descent upon Ireland, was met by a far larger fleet under admiral Duncan. Green, Short Hist., Ch. X, 810.
We may be anywhere between the Texel and Cap Gris Nez. Ch. Kingsley, Herew., Ch. VI, 40b.

Before some the article has disappeared or is disappearing: the Buenos Ayres, the Caracas, the Hainault, the Honduras, the Mauritius, the Tyrol.

Instead of the Brazils, modern practice has the singular Brazil.

Buenos Ayres. i. She must have been bound from the Buenos Ayres, or the Rio de la Plata, in the south part of America, beyond the Brazils, to the Havana, in the Gulf of Mexico. Defoe, Rob. Crusoe, 192.
ii. The mean temperature of the Buenos Ayres is nearly the same as at Cadiz. Harmsworth Encycl., s.v. Argentine Republic, 331a.

Caracas. i. (This) was going on, it seemed, to some Señora or other at the Caraccas. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Hol., Ch. XXVII, 206a.
How far is it to the Caraccas? Ib., Ch. XV, 124a.
ii. I am to be governor of La Guayra in Caraccas. Ib., Ch. XII, 100b.
Caracas is connected with La Gualtra by a narrow-gauge line. Harmsworth Encycl.

Hainault. i. Its fantastic belfry (sc. of Mons) marks it as a capital of the Hainault. H. Belloc, Mons (Westm. Gaz., No. 5317, 5a).
The Hainault is still called the Hainault upon stamped paper beyond the frontier line. Ib.
ii. From the middle of the 11th century down to 1477, the countship of Hainault was almost continuously united with it. Harmsworth Encycl., s.v. Flanders.

ii. Honduras is burdened with a heavy external debt. Harmsw. Encycl.

Mauritius. i. The ship bore for the Mauritius: A Ship on Fire (Stop., Leesb., I, 5).
ii. On Thursday she sighted the Island of Rodrigues, and arrived at Mauritius on Monday 23rd. Ib.
He is now the holder of a Government appointment in the island of Mauritius. Con. Doyle, Sherl. Holmes, II, 280.
The omission of these colonies and some others, such as Mauritius, from the list can only be temporary. Ib.

Tyrol. i. I will send you a guide-book from the Tyrol. Beatr. Harraden, Ships, I, Ch. XIX, 107.
The castle, which is the largest in the Tyrol, has fallen from its former high estate. Westm. Gaz., No. 5388, 13b.
Motorists travelling the Tyrol should note the new police regulations regarding motor traffic. Ib., No. 5394, 13b.
ii. The Alps of Switzerland being extended into Tyrol. Cassell's Concise Cyclop., s.v. Tyrol.
The Inn, the Adige, and the Drave have part of their courses in Tyrol, Harmsworth Encycl., s.v. Tyrol.

With its romantic landscape, its many historic associations, and its hospitable, cultured people, Tyrol has an irresistible appeal for every traveller. II. Lond. New, No. 3816, 891a.

Peloponnese (Peloponnesus). i. Sparta...the chief city of the Peloponnesus. Cassell’s Concise Cyclop., s.v. Sparta.


Note. According to Wendt (Synt. des heut. Eng., 164) Barbado(e)s, apparently a plural, often stands with the article, Bermuda is getting more and more common for the Bermudas when the whole archipelago is designated, the Bahamas has not yet been ousted by Bahama, the Havana occasionally appears for Havana.

27. An unconscious or dim perception of the significance that originally attached to all proper names, may also account for the occasional use of the definite article before certain ancient family-names of Scotch or Irish, and more rarely of English history.

The article is said to have the force of representing the bearer of the name as a person of note and (or) as the head of his clan or family, but its use is highly irregular. We find it especially in the old ballads and the romantic tales of Scott. Instances also occur in Shakespeare and, indeed, in the oldest literature. In the latest English we also find it before the names of famous beauties, or ‘stars’. Sometimes the old practice is revived in mock-heroic poetry.

i. We will persuade the Duke of Burgundy | To leave the Talbot and to follow us. Henry VI, A, III, 2, 20.
   My ancestors did from the streets of Rome | The Tarquin drive, when he was call’d a king. Jul. Cæs., II, 1, 54.

The Douglas and the Hotspur both together | Are confident against the world in arms. Id., A, V, 1, 116.
Can I not frame a fever’d dream, | But still the Douglas, is the theme? Scott, Lady, I, xxxv, 18.
Pour forth the glory of the Graeme! Ib., II, vi, 28.
Take arms, if you love the Stewart. Scott, Fair Maid, Ch. XXXV, 373.
Robert the Bruce was present, and assisted the English to gain the victory. Id., Tales of a Grandf., 25b.
Baldeary O'Donnel, who called himself the O'Donnel, a title far prouder in the estimation of his race, than any marquisate or dukedom, had been bred in Spain. Macaulay, Hist., VI, Ch. XVI, 58.

ii. I've seen the Siddons, sir, and the O'Nale — They were great, but what were they compared to Miss Fotheringay. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. V, 57.
Your manner reminded me of Mars. Did you ever see the Mars, Miss Fotheringay? Ib., Ch. XI, 113.
The Fotheringay was uncommonly handsome, in a white raiment and leopard skin. Ib., I, Ch. XIV, 138.
The Sherrick creates quite a different sentiment — the Sherrick is splendid, stately, sleepy. Id., Newc., I, Ch. XXV, 278.
I never knew the Bernstein but as an old woman. Id., Virg., Ch. XXVII, 281. If the Cattarina wrote him billets-doux, I fear Aunt Bernstein would have bade him accept the invitations. Ib., Ch. XXVIII, 289. The Yarmouth bears no malice. Ib., Ch. XLI, 422.

She had not so grand an appearance as the Symonds. James Pain, Glow-worm Tales, I, H, Ch. II, 149.

When the Symonds broke her leg, there was nothing for it but to engage yonder excellent young woman. Ib., 152.

iii. The Balfour and the Chamberlain | Were walking close at hand; | They wept like anything to see | So great a waste of sand: | "If Asquith would but plough it up", | They said, "it would be grand". Westm. Gaz., No. 5249, 5.

Oh! I mustn't forget — I want to present Mr. Dummer ... the Dummer, you know. Anstey, Voces Populi.

Compare with the above the following quotations: Those who wish to investigate the subject, may consult the chronicles of Winton, and the History of Bruce, by Archdeacon Barbour. Scott, Fair Maid, Introd., 16.

Let him arise at your call... — the partaker of the illustrious blood of Douglas. Ib., Introd., 14.

Concerning the Exploits of Edward Bruce, the Douglas, and the Death of Robert Bruce. Id., Tales of a Grandf., 39a.

Bruce struck Comyn a blow with his dagger. Ib., 26a.

Douglas went in disguise to the house of one of his old servants. Ib., 32b.

28. Also when a proper name is not significant, we may find it preceded by the definite article. This is often the case, when it is accompanied by an adnominal adjunct, whether restrictive or continuative. Den Hertog, Ned. Spraakk., III, § 34; Stof., Stud., B, § 16; Einenkel, Streifzüge, 2; Kellner, Hist. Outl. of Eng. Synt., 137; Ellinger, E. S., XX; Id., Verm. Beitr., 29; Mätzrn., Eng. Gram.², III, 164.

a) Restrictive adjuncts may, or may not, cause the use of the definite article.

1) When the adjunct is a clause, the article would seem to be indispensable.

I am referring to the Napoleon who lost the battle of Sedan, not to the Napoleon who died of Saint Helena.

2) When the adjunct is a prepositional phrase, the article is seldom absent, unless the phrase is felt as part of the proper name.

i. Could the England of 1685 be, by some magical process, set before our eyes, we should not know one landscape in a hundred or one building in ten thousand. Mac., Hist., II, Ch. III, 276. The difference in salubrity between the London of the nineteenth century and the London of the seventeenth century was far greater than the difference between London in an ordinary season and London in the cholera. Ib., Ch. III.

ii. * The same may be said of the numberless entries ... applying to London of the last century. Periodical.¹)

When we look at Italy of the Renascence, at England of the sixteenth century, we are amazed. FRANCIS THOMPSON, Health and Holiness, 24.

** Frankfort-on-the-Main, Newcastle-on-Tyne, Newcastle-under-Lyne. Antipholis of Syracuse, Antipholus of Ephesus. LAMB., Tales, Com. of Er. (Thus throughout the tale, irrespective of grammatical function.)

3) Practice is more varied when the adjunct is an adjective.

a) With quality-expressing (participial) adjectives usage may be equally divided, when they enter into a free combination with their head-words. There seems to be a tendency of omitting the article, when the restrictive force of the adjective is weakened, i.e. when the notion of any alternative is but dimly present to the speaker's mind.

names of persons. i. The other was John Comyn, ... usually called the Red Comyn, to distinguish him from his kinsman the Black Comyn, so named from his swarthy complexion. SCOTT, Tales of a Grandf., 25a. The goldsmith ... had given the chain to the wrong Antipholis. LAMB., Tales, Com. of Er., 219.

The married Antipholis had done all the things she taxed this Antipholis with. Ib., 222.

During this time the old Mr. Dickens was confined in the Marshalsea Prison. Miss DICK. (Stof., Leesb. voor Aanvangsklassen, I, 16). The result was his marriage and the adoption of the new Mrs. Acland's son. Mrs. ALEX., A Life Interest, I, Ch. II, 33.

There in a comfortable chair sits the modern Alexander, a map of the battlefield before him. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 114a.

ii. It was not so with old Mr. Osborne. THACK., Van. Fair, Ch. XIII, 128.

Old Mr. Osborne's scowl, terrific always, had never before looked so deadly to her. Ib., 130.

names of countries, towns, etc. I. I see already rising the liberties and the grandeur of the New Rome. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. V, 40.

They had institutions derived partly from imperial Rome, partly from papal Rome, partly from the old Germany, MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 67.

The sight of the new Boston. BELLAMY, Look Backw., 38.

Burglary was not among the perils of the modern Boston. Ib., 39.


Neither our sympathy with the new Turkey, nor our improved relations with Russia, could justify us in encouraging or helping on this adumbrated Slav Confederation. Westm. Gaz. The Powers are all but agreed upon the limits of the autonomous Albania. Westm. Gaz., No. 6177, 16.

ii. * Wherever a language derived from that of ancient Rome is spoken, the religion of modern Rome to this day prevails. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 67.

** New Italy vindicates the memory of every martyr whom the clericals have done to death. Lit. World.

Greater London has got over 100 theatres and music-halls. Graph., No. 2267, 723c.

Note I. But when the adjective forms a kind of fixed or standing combination with its head-word and (or) is understood as part of the proper name, the article is dispensed with.

i. New York, New Orleans, New Zealand, New Caledonia.

Lesser Asia. WEBST., Dict. (more commonly called Asia Minor.)
ii. **Loftus Major, Loftus Minor.** Mrs. **Wood, Or V. Col.**, passim.
(with which compare the elder Osborne. **Thack.**, Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXI, 346; the elder George. ib., II, Ch. XXI, 227; the younger Brutus. **Lyttol.**, Rienzi, I, Ch. V, 39.)

II. In the following quotations the absence of the article may be due to the superlative being understood as absolute. See, however, 20, e.
I have been in **farthest Greece.** **Lamb**, Tales, Com. of Er., 213. **Darkest Africa.** Times.

beta) When the adjective expresses a relation, the article is but rarely met with, at least before the names of countries, towns, etc.
i. **Northern and central France** had by this time fallen into utter ruin.
**Green**, Short Hist.
Réaumur's thermometer is used only in **North-Western Europe.** Cassell's Concord Dict., s. v. thermometer.
It was supposed that **Eastern Roumelia** would in reality be restored to Turkey. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVI, 315b.
Of **Roman London** and of **Saxon London** little is comparatively known. **John Dennis, Good Words** (StoF., Leesb., I, 78).
They had institutions derived partly from **imperial Rome,** partly from **papal Rome,** partly from the old Germany. **Mac.**, Hist., I, Ch. I, 67.
All statesmen are agreed that **Mahometan Turkey** has no right of rule in Modern Europe. Eng. Rev., 1912, Nov., 622.
The Turks ... have not recently taken any special military measures or precautions in **European Turkey.** Ib.
**Medieval Europe** was a camp with a church in the background. **William Barry, The P apacy, Prol.,** 17.

II. Beyond that region lies another vast tract, which may be regarded as the Hinterland either of the Egyptian provinces or of **the French Congo.** Times. (The use of the article may be due to Congo, although the name of a territory, being still felt as the name of the river.)

The following quotations must be given without comment:
"Tell me about my uncle", cried **Virginian Harry.** **Thack.**, Virg., Ch. XV, 150.
She brings before us the prudishness of the theatre-going public in **eighteenth-century Paris.** Athen., No. 4447, 62c.

b) Usage is equally varied when the adjunct is continuative:

1) The article is regularly dispensed with, when the adjunct is a clause or a prepositional phrase.
She's devilish like **Miss Catter,** that I used to meet at Dumdum. **Thack.**, Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 27.
I was quite relieved to find it was only **Brooks** of Sheffield. **Dick.**, Cop., Ch. II, 12b.

2) Usage is highly arbitrary, when the adjunct is an adjective, but there is a distinct tendency:
a) to use the article, when the adjective is purely descriptive, i.e. intended to give information about what is expressed by its head-word;

beta) to omit it, when it is purely emotional, i.e. expressive of some emotion (mostly of sympathy, pity, or admiration, sometimes of contempt) on the part of the speaker or writer.
It stands to reason that we must meet with variable practice with many adjectives which, from the nature of their meaning, are always more or less emotional. Such, among many others, are beautiful, cruel, fair, great, little, noble.

names of persons. i. The cruel Macbeth. SCOTT, Tales of a Grandfather, I, 86.

Antipholis of Syracuse married the fair Luciana; and the good old Aegon... lived at Ephesus many years. LAMB, Tales, Com. of Er., 228.

On this, as on all other occasions, he (sc. Mr. Pickwick) is invariably attended by the faithful Sam. DICK., Pickw., Ch. LVII, 526.

(This respite) made the timid little Amelia almost as happy as a full reprieve would have done. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXV, 264.

It had been as well for Arthur if the honest Foker had remained for some time at College. Id., P. e n.d., I, Ch. XIX, 193.

"Bless me, father", said eagerly the young Pisistratus. LYTTON, Caxtons.
The young Cola bent his mind to listen. Id., Rienzi, I, Ch. I, 11.

So deeply did the young Adrian feel the galling truth of all he uttered. Ib., I, Ch. III, 24.

"Oh, how dull art thou?" answered the fair Irene. Ib., I. Ch. IV, 31.
The inestimable Toots. S A I N T S B., N i n e t. C e n t., Ch. III, 150.


"Don't swear, Will. Harry is much better company than you are, and much better ton too, sir!" — "Tong, indeed, confound his tong," growled envious Will to himself. THACK., Virg., Ch. XVI, 169.

"To it again, you little rogues!" says facetious papa. Ib., Ch. L, 518.

"How do you mean?" asks simple Harry. Ib., Ch. LIX, 615.

While poor Caroline is resting in her coffin, dapper little George... is dancing a pretty dance with Madame Walmoden. Id., Four Georges, II, 55.

They sent this little spar-out of the wreck with their love to good Mrs. Sedley. Ib., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XV, 176.

"We'll find means to give them the slip," said dauntless little Becky. Ib., Ch. XXV, 266.

See us at the palace next week, young Cola. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. I, 16.

As a child and a boy young Tennyson was remarked both for acquisition and performance. ANDREW LANG, Alfred Tennyson, Ch. I, 4.

names of countries, towns, etc. i. The mighty London. WASH. IRV., Hist. of New York.
The place where the British exiles had congregated... was the rich and popular Amsterdam. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 118.
The ambitious, pushing Melbourne. FRouDE, Ocean, Ch. VII, 93.

ii. You have persuaded me to leave dear England, and dearer London. THOM. SOUTHERN, Oroonoko, I, 1, (161a).

In hospitable Cornwall, especially on such a day, every guest was welcome. CH. KINGSLEY, Here, Ch. V, 36b.

I was heartily glad, when... I was whirled away from gouty consumptive Buxton to London. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, VI, 75.

I fell into a wonder that comfort-loving beings could live in horrible New York. JOHN HABBERTON, Helen's Babies, 34.

Its long struggle with Teutonic Caesars... had daunted the courage even of unwearied Rome. WILLIAM BARRY, The Papacy, Ch. I, 34.

The responsible Ministerial journals do not indulge in ebullitions of this kind against perfidious Albion. Times.

Even in thickly populated London miles upon miles of streets are lined with wage-earners' cottages. Westm. Gaz., No. 5255, 4c.
In happy England six is the ordinary complement of a first-class carriage. Ib., No. 5283, 4c.

Going south through sleeping France the difficulty is to keep them (sc. the foot-warmers) out on a moderately warm night. Ib.


Few persons would give a longer expectation to poor Russia than to rich Germany. Id., No. 6059, 3a.


Sometimes the importance of the town itself has declined ..., but its stately Town Hall survives as a monument of its former commercial importance. Remote Bolsward and shrunken Franeker are instances of this, and a more signal example is the graceful Stadhuis of decayed Veere. Graph., No. 2258, 362a.

Note I. Sometimes the use or absence of the article is conditioned by the metre. Compare the two following pairs of sentences.

   ** All the conspirators save only he, | Did that they did in envy of great Caesar. Id., V, 5, 70.

ii. * The ocean queen, the free Britannia, bears | The last plunder from a bleeding land. Byron, Childe Har., II, xiii.
   ** Full swiftly Harold wends his lonely way | Where proud Sevilla triumphs unsubdued. Ib., I, XLV.

II. Some adjectives lose (almost) entirely their original meaning, when used as emotional words. This is, for example, the case with old, poor, and, to a large extent, with dear, little. There is, consequently, a wide difference between poor John and the poor John, old John and the old John.

Poor duke of Shrewsbury has been very ill of a fever. Swift, Journ. to Stella, XXV, June 25.

As I spoke, poor Mr. Burchell entered the house. Goldsmith, Vic.

He would make a gentleman of the little chap, was Mr. Osborne's constant saying regarding little Georgy. Thack., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXI, 227.

In the following quotations the use of the article seems to be improper:

For it was my honest friend, the poor Jack Wildman, who now lay in this sad condition. Blackmore, The Maid of Sker, III, 177. 1) The poor Marie wept for him constantly. Mrs. Oliphant, The Laird of Norlaw, II, 133. 1)

III. Several of such purely emotional adjectives are sometimes accumulated before one noun.

Poor dear old Bishop Grantly had on this matter been too lenient. Trol., Bar. Tow., Ch. IX, 60.

Poor dear old Dad has just told me that he has had a big loss on Change. Westm. Gaz., No. 6101, 6c.

Our reader must now please to quit... the humdrum life of poor little Fairoaks, and transport himself... to London. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXVIII, 296.

Twinkling in her breast poor old Pen saw a locket, which he had bought of Mr. Nathan in High Street with the last shilling he was worth. Ib., Ch. VI, 74.

IV. Some emotional adjectives are apt to attach permanently to their head-word, insomuch that they are more or less felt as part of the proper name. Thus Little Dick (Goldsmith, Vicar), Tiny Tim (Dick., Christm. Car.)

1) Ellinger, E. S., XX.
Also distinctly descriptive adjectives which are constantly used before one and the same name in the course of a narrative or in the daily conversation of certain circles, are apt to lose some of their independence, and, consequently, to discard the article. Thus Black Sambo (THACK., Van. Fair); Blind Bertha (DICK., Crick.).

The loss of the article imparts a certain degree of familiarity to the combination, and is, therefore, incompatible with the dignified style of poetry. Hence in TENNYSON'S Idyls of the King there is no omission of the article before the permanent epithets given to the principal knights, unless required by the metre. Thus the fine Gawain, the meek Sir Percivale, the pure Sir Galahad, etc., but:

So Arthur bad the meek Sir Percivale | And pure Sir Galahad to uplift the maid. TEN., Lanc. & El., 1256-7.

Some of such combinations have become traditional. Such are Bloody Mary, Good Queen Bess, Bluff King Hal; Merry England, Old England, Sunny France.

The English are very fond of their country; they call it 'Old England' and 'Merry England'. Scott, Tales of a Grandf.i)

V. Adjectives that are used as titles, such as honourable, noble, reverend, are not, of course, emotional, and, consequently, do not dismiss the article. The Right Honourable Francis Goodchild, Lord Mayor of London. THACK.2) The Worshipful Francis Goodchild, Esq. becomes Sheriff of London. Id. 2)

Thus also when the person is indicated by his social status or rank, as in: That refined patron of the arts, and enlightened lover of music and the drama, the Most Noble the Marquis of Steyne. Id., Pend., I, Ch. XIV, 140.

They are Suffolk people, and distantly related to the Right Honourable the Earl of Bungay. Id., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. I.

VI. This also applies to participles used as adjectives. Note that when such participial adjectives as aforesaid, before-mentioned are placed after the head-word, the article is dispensed with.

i. "Plead you to me, fair dame?" said the astonished Antipholis. LAMB, Tales, Com. of Er., 218.

The said Eliza, John and Georgina were now clustered round their mama in the drawing-room. CH. BRONTÉ, Jane Eyre, Ch. I, I.

This association does hereby return its warmest thanks to the said Samuel Pickwick Esq. DICK., Pickw., Ch. I, 1.

The aforesaid Martin, whom Arthur had taken such a fancy to [etc.]. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. III, 237.

ii. In default of which issue the ranks and dignities were to pass to Francis aforesaid. THACK., Henry Esm., III, Ch. VI, 380.

VII. Adjectives, especially when purely descriptive, are not often placed before geographical proper names, a class-noun being mostly inserted between them. Thus the populous Amsterdam is less usual than the populous city of Amsterdam.

In the centre of the great city of London lies a small neighbourhood . . . , which goes by the name of Little Britain. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXV, 241.

Close upon the village of Clavering before-mentioned. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 19.

My godmother lived in a handsome house in the clean and ancient town of Bretton. CH. BRONTÉ, Villette, Ch. I, 1.

1) FOELS.—KOCK, Wis. Gram., § 255. 2) Ib., § 257.
At last we reached the large handsome town of Irkutsk. Conway, Called Back, Ch. XI, 130.

VIII. The article is, of course, never used when the head-word is a vocative.

Fair Greece! sad relic of departed worth. Byron, Childe Har., II, LXXIII.

29. Compound proper names both or all of whose parts are insignificant, reject or take the article under the same circumstances as those made up of only one name.

30. When one or all the parts of a compound proper name are significant, usage is variable.

a) The definite article is mostly used when the noun modified is a plural.

Thus in: the Kaatskil Mountains, the Rocky Mountains; the Ochil Hills; the Sulu Islands; the Low Countries, the Netherlands, the United States.

The alternative usage is instanced by:

The road which leads across Marlborough Downs in the direction of Bristol. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XIV, 118.

The Armada dropped anchor in Calais roads. J. R. Green, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § 6, 419.

b) The definite article is mostly used, when the defining part is an adjective.

Adjectives derived from proper names, such as Atlantic, Caspian, Chinese, etc., are considered as significant words:

i. the Arctic Ocean, the Antarctic Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean, the Baltic Sea, the Black Sea, the Caspian Sea, the Mediterranean Sea, the North Sea, the Pacific Ocean (= the South Sea. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Hol!, Ch. XVII, 134, b);

ii. the Argentine Republic; the Holy Land; the Orange Free State; the Transvaal Republic;

iii. the British Museum, the Inner Temple, the Middle Temple, the National Gallery, the Royal Exchange; the White House.

iv. the Holy Ghost, the Holy Virgin.

To the N. W. (sc. of the Capitol) are the Treasury, the White House, and [etc.] Harmsw. Encycl., s. v. Washington.

Note I. In some of these names the noun is sometimes or usually suppressed: the (Antarctic, the Atlantic, the Baltic; the Mediterranean, the Pacific; the Argentine, the Transvaal; the Engadine.

The United States will increase its fleet in the Pacific, and possibly in the Atlantic also. Westm. Gaz.

There was a remarkable volte-face of the Liberal Press with regard to the Transvaal. Times.

We get beef from the Argentine. II. Lond. News, No. 3680, 490b.

II. According to Wendt (Synt. des heut. Eng., 166) White House no longer requires the article.

Exception are a) some names of streets, which are more frequently found without than with the article; the High Street is, however, quite common, especially in referring to the smaller towns.

H. Poutsma, A Grammar of Late Modern English. II.
I was charged seven dollars to go to Central Park from Thirty-second Street and back again. *Rita, America—Seen through Eng. eyes*, Ch. I, 31.

The Windsor hotel in *Fifth-Avenue* was destroyed in three hours. *Graph.* There are shops in *Main-Street* that would make a good figure in Paris. W. * Archer* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4931, 4a).

I began to wonder whether I were not back among the Vanderbilts and Goulds in *Fifth-Avenue*. Ib., No. 4967, 12c.

**High Street.**

i. Pen felt a secret pride in strutting down *High Street* with a young fellow who owned tandems, talked to officers, and ordered turtle and champagne for dinner. *Thack., Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 43.


The Messrs Foker and Pen strolled down *the High Street*. *Thack., Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 42.

We actually boasted a pavement in *the High Street* of our town of Norton Bury. *Mrs. Craik, John Hal.*, Ch. I, 5.

Neither the ignominious procession up *the High Street*, nor the near view of death had power to disturb the gentle and majestic patience of Argyle. *Mac., Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 131.

Also names of streets made up of an adjective + the noun *Road* seem to have the definite article as a rule.

Aunt and Mary used to walk gravely up and down *the New Road*. *Thack., Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 120.

β) some names of countries, provinces, districts, towns, boroughs, etc., which regularly stand without the definite article, e. g.: *Great Britain, Mid-Lothian, East Anglia, West-Ham, Westminster, Grand Rapids, Green Hill*, etc.

Can you tell us the way to Green Hill? *Sweet, Country Walk.*

γ) some compound names containing *Holy*, especially *Holy Church, Holy Kirk, Holy Week, Holy Writ*, which almost regularly lose the definite article.

**Holy Church.**

i. *Holy Church* is merciful. *Scott, Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XII, 174.

Can you expect that the king dare pass over such an offence against *Holy Church*. Ch. Kingsley, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 11b.

Was not the blessing of *Holy Church* upon their union? *Ch. Reade, The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. XVII, 74.

It was not I, who was intended for *Holy Church*. *Westm. Gaz.* No. 4949, 9a.

ii. If I were to let thee go hence at large, I were thereby wronging the *Holy Church*. *Scott, Mon.*, Ch. XXXI, 339. (For the rest, apparently, regularly without the article in this novel.)

**Holy Kirk.**

i. We shall not be wanting ... to do whatever may advantage *Holy Kirk*. Ib., Ch. VI, 94.

ii. Your vassals are obliged to rise for the defence of the *Holy Kirk*. Ib.

**Holy Week.**

i. In *Holy Week* all the out-door world is stirred by strange emotions. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4967, 15b.

This week being *Holy Week*, Her Majesty's and the Haymarket will be closed all the week, reopening on Easter Monday. *Morn. Leader.*

ii. The Pope designs to officiate at some of the Functions of the *Holy Week*. *Lond. Gaz.*

1) *Mupray.*
Holy Writ. Trifles light as air | Are to the jealous confirmations strong | As proofs of Holy Writ. Othello, III, 3, 324.
It is all foretold in Holy Writ. Ch. Kingsley, Herew., Ch. XXVI, 108.
The immeasurable advancement of the negro, manifested in character, courage, and cash is confirmation strong as proof of Holy Writ that [etc]. Westm. Gaz., No. 4937, 5a.

c) The definite article is mostly used, when the defining part is a class-noun.

Thus regularly in the names of hotels, inns, etc., and of theatres, as the Swan hotel, the Bull Inn; the Court Theatre, the Blackfriars Theatre, the Globe Theatre, the Criterion Theatre; and also almost regularly in the names of some other buildings, such as the Queen's Hall, the Guildhall, the Mansion House, the Crystal Palace, etc.
i. The stranger continued to soliloquise, until they reached the Bull Inn, in the High Street, where the coach stopped. Dick., P.ick w., Ch. II, 9.
The lad and three others were discovered making a supper off a pork pie and two bottles of prime old port from the Red Cow public-house in Grey Friars Lane. Thack., Newc., I, Ch. VI, 68.

ii. Mr. N. N.'s new comedy was produced at the Court Theatre on Tuesday. Times.
The Tyranny of Tears at the Criterion Theatre. Graph.

iii. Compounds with Hall: * It (sc. the Mayor's Court) is held at the Guildhall before the recorder. Harmsworth Encyclop., s.v. Mayor's Court.
Among them (sc. the famous buildings) may be mentioned the Guildhall, ... St. Paul's Cathedral; the Mansion House etc. Ib., s.v. London.
Sir Harry Johnston will be received by the Mayor and Corporation at the Guildhall. Westm. Gaz., No. 6177, 8b.
Herr Havemann gave a recital at the Queen's Hall, Truth, No. 1802, 105a.
The memorable occasion of last week at the Queen's Hall. Times.
In Free Trade demonstration at the Queen's Hall. Westm. Gaz., No. 4949, 1b.
** The wooden giants in Guildhall. Wash. Irw., Sketch-Bk., XXV, 244.
At a great Free Trade meeting in Queen's Hall on March 9 Lord Avebury presided. Westm. Gaz., No. 4949, 5.
Among the coming musical events ... there are two very interesting concerts, fixed for the afternoons of Oct. 3 and 10 at Queen's Hall. II. Lond. News, No. 3777, 394b. (In the same article a few lines further down: One of the signs that tell of the autumn season is the reopening of the Queen's Hall on Sunday's.)

iv. Other compounds. * The musical performances given at the Crystal Palace have attained a great reputation for their high standard of excellence. Hazell's Annual, 1894.
One (transparency) represented a moonlit landscape, the other the Houses of Parliament and Clock Tower at Westminster. W. Archer (Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 12c).
Funds are collected at the Mansion House for distribution among sufferers from war, pestilence, floods and other misfortunes. Harmsworth Encyclop., s.v. Mansion House.
** The Dalai Lama the next day drove to Government House. II. Lond., News, No. 3703, 535.
The alternative usage is found:

a) in some names of institutions: All Souls College, Queen's College, University College.
Sir W. Anson, Warden of All Souls College, has been nominated as Vice-Chancellor for the ensuing year. *Times.*

Dr. Mayrath, Provost of Queen's College, laid down the office of Vice-Chancellor. *Ib.*

Professor Osbert Chadwick delivered an address at University College. *Ib.*

β) in names of towns: Cape Town, Cedar Rapids, etc.

A meeting of Africander members of Parliament was held in Cape Town. *Times.*

Speaking at Cedar Rapids Mr. Mc Kingley observed that [etc.] *Ib.*

γ) names of streets: Bow Street, Dock Lane, etc.


The steeple of Bow-Street. *Ib., XXV, 244.*

The Red Cow public-house in Grey Friars Lane. *Thack., Newc., I, Ch. VI, 68.*

He (sc. Disraeli) outdandied every other dandy in London, and drew after him bewildered crowds as he walked down Regent Street or up Bond Street, in garments of colours too glittering for anything but the melodramatic stage. *T. P.'s Weekly, XVIII, No. 466, 450a.*

Note, however, the Haymarket: He took four sporting sketches to a printseller in the Haymarket. *Thack., Newc., I, Ch. XXVII, 300.*

Walking down the Haymarket the other day, I paused and looked into that delightful old bow-windowed shop. *Graph.*

Instances of divided usage are:

**Cape Colony** (the most usual) and the Cape Colony.

i. An old Boer hunted in Cape Colony so far back as the end of the last century. *Lit. World.*

A detachment of troops was sent to secure the line of communication between Cape Colony and the British territories to the North. *Times.*

The real danger is in Cape Colony. *Ib.*

The British possessions in South Africa comprise Cape Colony, Natal, the Orange River Colony, the Transvaal and [etc.] Harmsworth Encycl., s. v. South Africa.

ii. The Cape Colony was originally a Dutch colony. *Froude, Ocean., Ch. III, 42*

**Land's End** and the Land's End, usage being, perhaps, equally divided.

i. There is still extant in the neighbourhood of Land's End a tradition that the Scilly Isles were once part of the mainland. F. J. Rowe, *Note to Tennyson's Land. and E.I., 35.*

Mr. Tregarthen has added to his studies of wild life at Land's End. *Westm. Gaz., No. 6147, 14c.*

ii. The invaders doubled the Land's End and ravaged Cornwall. *Freeman, Norman Conq., I, Ch. V, 295. 1)*

Does this 'bus go to the Land's End? *Westm. Gaz.*

**Regent's Park** (the most usual) and the Regent's Park. i. The society's collections of living animals are lodged in the Zoological Gardens in Regent's Park. *Harmsw. Encycl., s. v. Zoological Society.*

ii. Baines represents the house in the Regent's Park. *Thack., Newc., I, Ch. XXVII, 299.*

I hired a furnished house in the Regent's Park. *Dick, Letters 2).*

---

1) Murray, s. v. double, 9. 2) Ten Brug., Taalst., VI.
d) The definite article is now used now dropped, when the defining word is a proper name.

1) It is mostly dropped before the names of buildings, bridges and other structures: Buckingham Palace, Westminster Abbey, Victoria Station, St. Paul's Cathedral, Lincoln's Inn, Gray's Inn, Exeter Hall, Magdalen College, Richmond jail, London Bridge, Waterloo Bridge.

Stephens was committed to Richmond Prison. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 314.

So Aldred... sat in York keep. Ch. Kingsley, Here w., Ch. XXIV, 103a. "You will not burn York? O God! is it come to this? — "And why not York town, or York minster, or Rome itself with the Pope inside it, rather than yield to barbarians?" ib., 103b.

A sermon was preached in Westminster Abbey by the Archbishop of Canterbury. Times. (Compare with this: the Westminster Cathedral, the name of the seat of the Roman Catholic Archbishop of Westminster.) Exeter Hall was crowded on Saturday afternoon. Times.

The annual meeting was held at Grosvenor House. Id.

The Emperor William devoted Thursday morning to this duty at Buckingham Palace. Graph.

Irregularities: If you like, we can telegraph to some friend to meet you at the Christiania station. Edna Lyall, A. Hardy Norseman, Ch. XVII, 156.

His father, John Dickens, was at this time stationed in the Portsmouth dockyard. Forster, Life of Ch. Dick., I, Ch. I, 1b. (Compare: Their home, shortly after, was again changed, on the elder Dickens being placed upon duty in Chatham dockyard. ib., I, Ch. 1, 2b).

The definite article is, however, almost regularly used in the names of hotels, museums and theatres, but names of hotels with the name of the proprietor in the genitive stand without the article: the Clarendon Hotel, the Windsor Hotel; the South Kensington Museum; the Garrick Theatre, the Savoy Theatre; but Claridge's Hotel.

Thus also in the Alexandra Palace, the Albert Hall, the Fleet Prison, the Marshalsea Prison and in certain foreign names, such as the Mont Valérien.

i. * The Budget Protest League held a dinner at the Ritz Hotel on Thursday to commemorate the close of its work. Westm. Gaz., No. 5179. 1b.

One of the most disastrous fires of recent years was that by which the Windsor hotel in Fifth-Avenue was destroyed. Graph.

** I am at Claridge's Hotel. Max. Pemb.: Doctor Xavier, Ch. VI, 29a.

ii. Sir Norman Lockyer last week distributed prizes at the South Kensington Museum. Times.


Mr. N. N. has decided to revive H. M. S. Pinafore, which will be produced at the Savoy Theatre. 1b.


** On Sundays Mrs. Hogarty used to go to Saint Pancras Church, then just built, and as handsome as Covent Garden Theatre. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. X, 120.

There is a tale to the effect that a certain orchestral player at Drury Lane Theatre had suffered sundry admonishments at rehearsal from his revered conductor. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 468, 524a.

iv. The Alexandra Palace is not far from Charing Cross.
The frequenters of the Albert Hall were exacting as ever in the matter of encores. 

It was late before the Emperor and Empress reached the concert at the Albert Hall. 

The Fleet Prison is pulled down. Dick, Pickw., Pref. 

There had been taken to the Marshalsea Prison a debtor, with whom this narrative has some concern. Dick., Little Dorrit, Ch. VI, 29b. 

He was confined in the Mont Valérien pending the Esterhazy trial. Times. 

Curious is the following quotation, as exhibiting the different practice of father and daughter: The most notable event of last month in the Revival of the Drama was the production at Worthing Theatre of "Julius Caesar" by the Sompting Village Players. My daughter, has written the following report of the performance. — "I have just returned from witnessing a unique dramatic performance given at the Worthing Theatre." Rev. of Rev., CCXXXI, 267a. 

Here follow some instances of divided usage; the head-word is: university, college, school, etc. i. When he met the Princess, he was a student at Bonn University. Times. 

In a Convocation of Oxford University Dr. Meyrath, Provost of Queen's College, laid down the office of Vice-Chancellor. Ib. 

ii. Cuff, on the other hand, was the great chief and dandy of the Swishtail Seminary. Thack. Van Fair, I, Ch. V. 41. 

A meeting of the canvassing committee of the Birmingham University was held last week. Times. 

At a court the Victoria University held in Liverpool the degree of Doctor of Science was conferred on Lord Lister. Ib. 

Dr. Saundby, Professor of Medicine at the Mason University College, delivered the address at the opening of the Cardiff Medical School. Ib. 

hall. i. A great public meeting was held in St. James's Hall, London. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 316. 

In the evening the imperial party heard a sacred concert in St. George's Hall. Graph. 

The only recital announced by M. Paderewski this season, drew a large audience to St. James's Hall on Tuesday afternoon. Times. 

ii. Mr. Louis de Rougemont gave his first public lecture on Monday in the St. James's Hall. Id. 

I note with satisfaction that you have abandoned the idea of holding the meeting in the Ulster Hall. Id., No. 1831, 83a. 

hospital. i. Edinburgh has some noble hospitals and charitable institutions. Among these are... Heriot's Hospital... Watson's Hospitals. Penny Cycl., IX, 275/1. 1) 

ii. A curious position of affairs has arisen at the St. John's Hospital for Diseases of the skin in Leicester Square. Truth, No. 1802, 75a. 

Note I. The noun modified is sometimes dropped in the names of buildings that are preceded by the definite article. 

The father of the Marshalsea. Dick., Little Dorrit, Ch. VI, 29b. 

The marriages were subsequently celebrated in any building within the Liberty of the Fleet. Harmsworth Cycl. 

Few have been privileged to assemble so large and distinguished an audience as that which gathered at the last night of the season at the St. James's. Graph. 

1) Murray.
It is thoroughly characteristic of modern politics, at least on the Unionist side, that this eminent breaker of Parliaments should be dined at the Ritz and presented with a cigar-box for a trophy. Westm. Gaz., No. 5179, 1b. "The Servant in the House", at the Adelphi. II. Lond. News, No. 3680, 630b. Mme Sarah Bernhardt produces at the Adelphi the Hamlet, in which she appeared here last night. Times.

He did not wait long to try to put in practice the lessons he had learned at the St. James's. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVI, 303a.

II. In the names of hotels the two nouns are sometimes transposed.

He is staying in London at the Hotel Métropole. Times.

A farewell dinner was given by Dr. Carl Peters on Monday at the hotel Cecil. Ib. The great fire at the hotel Windsor, New York. Graph.

This is rarely done in the names of other buildings: Castle Lowestein taken by stratagem. Motley, Rise, III, Ch. V, 445a (Compare: On the western verge of the isle of Bommel stood the castle of Lowestein. Ib.).

Near it (sc. Apeldoorn) is Castle Loo, the summer residence of the royal family. Harmsworth Cycl.

2) The definite article is almost regularly dropped before the names of streets, squares, parks, etc., i.e. proper names containing such nouns as circus, crescent, cross, field(s), garden(s), park, square, street, terrace; e.g.: Oxford Street, Queen's Street; Finsbury Circus; Charing Cross, Soho Fields; Covent Garden; Hyde Park; Russell Square, King's Square, etc. But: the Thames embankment.

i. * We had a temporary lodging in Covent Garden. Dick., Cop., Ch. LV, 391a. The Emperor was in Buckingham Palace Gardens by eight the next morning. Graph. (with which compare: The weather cleared up and showed the Marlborough House grounds to advantage. Ib.)

He crossed Fleet Street from Clifford's Inn to Middle Temple Lane. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XII, 131.

** The Captain... gave a dinner at the Kildare Streete. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. V, 59.

ii. He turned up the Thames Embankment. W. J. Locke, Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. V, 70.

Note I. Compounds of road mostly drop the article when a street is meant, and retain it when denoting a track for travel forming a communication between one city, town, or place and another.

i. * They crossed from the Angel into St. John's Road. Dick., Ol. Twist, Ch. VIII, 83.

Its (sc. that of the North-East London Railway) city terminus is at the Monument, whence it runs to Hackney Road in tube. Harmsworth Encycl., s. v. London, 26c.

Some 500 vehicles per hour pass the junction of Oxford Street and Tottenham Court Road. Ib., 26a.

Sussex-Gardens itself is apparently a subsidiary highway, and the traffic in that direction from Edgware-Road to Bayswater, passes three quite unimportant crossings. Westm. Gaz., No. 6317, 8c.

** That the book furnished a hint for which the time was ripe, was seen by the success of the movement which had for its result the People's Palace in the Mile-end road. Times.

I picked it (sc. my pink toque) up in the Edgware Road. Agn. & Eg. Castle, Diamond cut Paste, II, Ch. II, 119.

The den of the occult one was dim, and eastern of the Tottenham Court Road. Ib.
Going into a large house near the Bayswater road, she went upstairs to her daughter's bedroom. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6311, 3c.
The Marble Arch was reached; there, still oblivious of his surroundings, he had crossed to the Edgeware Road, passing through it to the labyrinth of shabby streets that lie behind Paddington. *Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. III, 2.

ii. Panting and crying, but never stopping, (I) faced about for Greenwich, which I had understood was on the Dover Road. *Dick., C. O.*, Ch. XXII, 90a.
I doubt if I should have had any (sc. notion of going back), though there had been a *fiss* snow-storm in the Kent Road. *Ib.*, Ch. XIII, 90a.

II. Observe also the frequent absence of the definite article in the names of other localities as in:
As for the suburban mothers and daughters, their envy is reserved for the processions, between Hyde Park Corner and Marble Arch, later in the day. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5607, 8d. (*The Marble Arch* would be a reference to the monument as in: (He moved) rapidly till *the Marble Arch* was reached. *Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. III, 26.)

3) Usage is divided in geographical names, some regularly taking the definite article, some as regularly rejecting it.

a) Those which take the article are especially such as contain any of the following nouns: basin, channel, district, pass, peninsula, range, reef, river, rock, valley.

basin. *The Thames basin* may be divided into two parts. *The Congo basin*. *Times*.

channel. The Severn turns out a noble river by the time it reaches the King's Roads, and forms *the Bristol Channel*. *Mrs. Craik, John Hall*, Ch. II, 18.

district. The cattle of the Calgary district. *Times*.
pass. Describing his visit to the Khyber Pass, Mr. Fisher writes [etc.]. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3875, 141a.

peninsula. Singapore, a British settlement off the southern extremity of *the Malay Peninsula*. *Cassell's Conc. Cycl*.

range. This morning *the Drakensberg Range* is draped in snow. *Times*.

river. One summer morning in the year 1756... the Young Rachel... came up *the Avon river* on her happy return from her annual voyage to the Potomac. *Thack., Virg.*, Ch. I, 4.
It is the Severn River, though at this distance you cannot perceive it. *Mrs. Craik, John Hall*, Ch. II, 18.

*The Peace river* flows nearly due east for a couple of hundred miles. *Times*.
Thus also: And the fog rose out of *the Oxus stream*. *Matth. Arnold*, *Sohrab and Rustum*, 2.

rock. *The Inchcape Rock* has been the death of many a sailor.


Note I. Except for some newly coined names, such as Peace-river, the noun river is now mostly dispensed with: *the Severn*, *the Rhine*, *the Thames*, etc.

II. The definite article is sometimes suppressed before such bare names of rivers:
regularly in English names of towns, such as Newcastle-on-Tyne, Stratford-on-Avon; German names of towns retaining the article: Frankfurt-on-the-Main, Frankfurt-on-the-Oder (Cassell's Conc. Cyc.). The article is not, of course, suppressed in such colloclations as London on the Thames, Liverpool on the Mersey, the name of the river not forming part of the proper name.


And when you saw his chariot but appear, | Have you not made an universal shout, | That Tiber trembled underneath her banks? J u l. C a s s., I, 1, 46.

Bring us not over Jordan. B i b l. N u m. s, XXXII, 5.
E'er since a truant boy I pass'd the bounds | To enjoy a ramble on the banks of Thames. C O W P E R, T a s k, I, 115.

Peace waits us on the shores of Acheron. B Y R O N, C h i l d e H a r., II, viii.
I little thought, when first thy rein | I slack'd upon the banks of Seine [etc.]. S C O T T, L a d y, I, ix, 12.

Before Shakespeare's resting-place, under the tall spire which rises by Avon. T A C K., V i r g., Ch. I, 7.

A large part of the country beyond Trent was, down to the eighteenth century, in a state of barbarism. M a c., H i s t., I, Ch. III, 249.

Through the black Tartar tents he pass'd which stood | Clustering like bee-hives on the low flat strand | Of O x u s. M a t t h. A R N O L D, S o h r a b a n d R u s t u m, 14.

There was already river pollution: dyes and dirt floated down from mills and towns. T e v i o t, below Hawick, was a vulgar Styx; and below Galashiels, T w e e d was little better. But from Teviot Stone to Hawick, the water was clearer than amber; so was E t t r i c k, almost till it joins Tweed; so was Yarrow; so was A i l; and they were not over-fished. L i. L o n d. N e w s, No. 3618, 882a.

III. When, what is often done, the proper name is placed after the nown river, it has not, of course, the article: the river Danube. While on the subject, it may be observed that anciently appositional of was placed between the class-noun and the proper name: the river of Thames. M U R R A Y, s. v. o f., 23. Thus also archaically in:

He had a tedious but easy water-journey down the river of Rhine. T A C K., H e n r y E s m o n d, II, Ch. X, 230.

And then, behold, beneath him was the long green garden of Egypt and the shining stream of Nile. C h. K I N G S L E Y, T h e H e r o e s, I, iv, 70.

Those which reject the article are especially such as contain any of the following nouns: bay, bill, city, cliff, harbour, haven, head, hill, island, mountain, plain, sea, sound, strait(s), town.

bay. This district stretches from Hudson's Bay to the Great Lakes. T i m e s. E n g l a n d at the present moment is directing a very keen, critical eye upon Delagoa Bay. Id.

bill. P o r t l a n d B i l l (also the Bill of Portland). 1)

city. K a n s a s C i t y at the mouth of the Kansas river. H a r m s w o r t h E n c y c l o p.

cliff. To the right the white curve of Ramsgate cliffs looks down on the crescent of Pegwell Bay. G r e e n. 1)

harbour. Drake dropped anchor again in Plymouth harbour. G r e e n.

haven. M i l f o r d H a v e n, a land-locked arm of the sea. H a r m s w. E n c y c.

head. B e a c h y H e a d rises to a perpendicular height of 564 ft. Id.

1) F O E L S.— K o c h, W. s. G r. M., § 263.
island. You will see Ram Head and Cawsand Bay and Drake's Island. MARRYAT.

The Khalifa was last heard of at Baha, three days west of Abbah Island. TIMES.

mountain. We stumbled down Penmaenmawr Mountain. WEST M. GAZ., No. 6311, 3a.

plain. The road lay right across Salisbury plains. MAC., HIST., II, CH. V, 170

strait(s). The British India line (London and Brisbane via Torres Straits). HARM S WORTH ENCYC., s. v. BRISBANE.

sea. From Behring Sea to the Gulf of Pe-chi-li stretches her (sc. Russia's) sea-base. TIMES.

sound. The Prince of Wales, who is serving as a midshipman in the battleship Hindustan now in Plymouth Sound, paid a visit to Devonport Dockyard last Friday. TIMES, No. 1807, 660a.

4) The article is now practically regularly suppressed before geographical names in which any of the nouns cape, fort, lake (loch, lough), mount, port precede the proper name.

dcape. From Cape Comorin to the Himalayas. MAC.

dfort. Fort St. George had risen on a barren spot. Id., CLIVE.

dlake. Lake Leman lies by Chillon's walls. BYRON, PRIS. OF CHIL., VI, I.

The rapids between Lakes Lindemann and Bennett. GRAPH.

dloch. Loch Katrine lay beneath him rolled. SCOTT, LADY, I, XIV, II.

dlough. He had brought from the neighbourhood of Lough Erne a regiment of dragoons. MACAULAY.

mount. At Mount Edgcumbe you will behold the finest timber in existence. Id.

dmont. There are places in which Mont Blanc might be sunk without showing its peak above water. HUXL., COL. ES., VIII, I, 12.

dport. Port Arthur was ceded to Japan.

N O T E I. Mount is often dispensed with: An eruption of Vesuvius. TIMES.

Such is Vesuvius, and these things take place in it every year. LYTON, LAST DAYS OF POMP., MOTTO.

PARNASSUS, IDA, ATHOS, OLYMPUS, ÆTNA. BYRON, CHILDRE, IV, LXIV.

O B S E R V E the exceptional suppression of the article before Caucasus in:

And they knew that they were come to Caucasus, . . . Caucasus, the highest of all mountains. CH. KINGSLEY, THE HEROES, II, IV, 152.

C O M P A R E: Kazbek, volcanic mountain in the Caucasus. HARM S WORTH ENCYC., s. v. KAZBEK.

Trans-Caucasia ... lies between the Caucasus on the north and Turkey-in-Asia and Persia on the south. CAS. CONC. CYCL., s. v. TRANS-CAUCASIA.

II. The ancient names of mountains in England, Wales and Scotland are never preceded by mount, and stand without the article.

'T were long to tell... | When rose Benledi's ridge in air. SCOTT.

The Cambrian Range includes all the Welsh mountains, the highest of which is Snowdon.

III. Early Modern English sometimes has the article before mount.

FRANZ, SHAK. GRAM., § 265; MÄTZN., ENG. GRAM., III, 162.


I am going to the Mount Zion. BUNYAN, PILGR. PROGR., (160).

1) FOELS.-KOCH, WIS. GRAM., § 263. 2) IB., § 261.
The following is a Late Modern English instance:
In other ways...he (sc. Blake) was also a forerunner; striking into the light and air high up on the mount Parnassus new fountains of song, which were in the future to become rivers of fresh emotion, thought, and imagination. STOP A.B. BROOKE, STUD. IN POETRY, Ch. I, 2.

IV. German names of mountains usually have the definite article:
the Brocken, the St. Gothard, etc.

Two parties from the Monchjoch and the Finsteraarhorn had anticipated us. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6311, 3a.
The Breithorn, the Glandegg and the Théodul are no place for you and me. Ib.
Thus also in the foreign names instanced in the following quotations:
1. Of course there is not that sort of excitement in store for us as we make for...the Monte Rosa at Zermatt. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6311, 3a.
2. The inn (is) as remarkable in some respects as its neighbour at Nant Borant, on the other side of the Col de Bonhomme. Ib.
3. The snowy summits of the Sierra Nevada shone like silver. WASH. IRV. 1)

V. Names of promontories ending in head, ness or point never stand with the article: Beachy Head, Fife Ness, Corsill Point, etc.

5) The definite article is regularly retained before the names of ships, or other means of locomotion.

1. Over the little mantel-shelf was a picture of the Sarah Jane lugger. DICK., COP. CH. III, 25b.
On the 14th of October following the Rodney cutter arrived with the sad news in England. THACK., VIRG., CH. LXXIV. 788.
The Phaeton frigate on which Moore had procured a passage, left Spithead on Sept. 25th. STEPHEN GWENN., THOM. MOORE, CH. II, 29.
The Boston frigate took him to New York. Ib.

2. Under pretence of going to read a Greek play with Smirke, this young reprobate set off so as to be in time for the Competitor down coach. DICK., PEND., I, CH. VI, 67.

Note I. The noun modified is often dispensed with: the Osborne the Mauretania.
The owner of the Young Rachel...gave the hand of welcome to Captain Franks. THACK., VIRG., CH. I, 3.

II. When, what is often done, the proper name is placed after the class-noun, the former loses the definite article: the ship Good Fortune (TEN., ENOCH ARDEN, 523).
A wireless call for help...came from the steamship Niagara. TIMES NO. 1842, 1d.

THE USE OF THE GENERALIZING DEFINITE ARTICLE IN DETAIL.

31. The definite article is normally used:

a) before adjectives partially converted into nouns, which denote either a class of persons or a quality in a generalizing way (CH. XXIX, 14—15; 21).

1. * The blind are objects of compassion, not of sorrow. ANNIE BESANT, AUTOB., 342.
2. ** The Dutch are slow to move, but when moved are moved effectually. FROUDE, OCEANA, CH. III, 51.

II. The beautiful can never die. CH. KINOSLEY, HYP., CH. II, 6b.

1) FOELS.-KOCH, WIS. GRAM., § 261.
Note I. Also when an adjective denotes a single person in a generalizing way after such verbs as to commit, to do and to play, the definite article is regularly used. (Ch. XXIX, 16.)

He had always a great notion of committing the amiable. Dick., Pick w., Ch. XIV, 125.

II. When in denoting an abstraction a pure noun is used instead of a partially converted adjective, the article is regularly absent (Ch. XXIX, 22, Obs. II, β). See, however, 35.

Then the inspiring love of novelty and adventure came rushing in full tide through his bosom. Wash. Irrv., Dolf Heyl. (Stof. Handt., I, 124).

b) before singular nouns denoting persons, animals or things spoken of in a generalizing way.

i. We often had the traveller or stranger visit us. Goldsm., Vic., Ch. 1,(236).

Those who see the Englishman only in town, are apt to form an unfavourable opinion of his character. Wash. Irrv. 1)

ii. The fox, whose life is, in many counties, held almost as sacred as that of a human being, was considered as a mere nuisance. Mac., Hist., II, Ch. III, 307.

The lion is a beast of prey.

iii. God made the country and man made the town. Cowper. 2)

What comes by the wind goes by the water. Ch. Reade, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. I, 23.

It was war to the knife between Marjory and myself. Mrs. Alex., A Life Interest, I, Ch. IV, 76.

Remarkable exceptions are man, whether denoting the human species or the male human species, and woman. The absence of the article may be due to the fact that these nouns, when used in a generalizing way, assume more or less the character of indefinite pronouns. (57.)

i. * Universal History, the History of what man has accomplished in the world, is at bottom the History of the Great. Carlyle, Hero Worship, 10. Man everywhere is the born enemy of lies. Ib., 4.

Of all living creatures none are created so unequal in strength, size, courage, skill, in anything: as man. Walt. Besant, St. Kath., II, Ch. I, 1.

** Man's love is of man's life a thing apart, Tis woman's whole existence. Byron, Don Juan, I, cxciv.

ii. Woman forgives but too readily, Captain. Thack., Van F a l r, I, Ch. XXIII, 237.

Play is not so fatal as woman. Id., Newc. I, Ch. XXVIII, 308.

Of all this and much more, the rosy landlady of the Blue Dragon took an accurate note and observation, as only woman can take of woman. Dick., Ch u z., Ch. III, 156.

Ay, though he loved her from his soul, with such a self-denying love as woman seldom wins. Ib., Ch. XXXI, 251a.

Woman's love is a robe that wraps her from many a storm. Lytton, Rienzi, III, Ch. III, 142.


Fear not the face of man, but look not on the face of woman. Ch. Kingsley, H y p., Ch. I, 5a.

1) Foels.-Koch, Wis. G r a m., § 267. 2) Webst.
Note I. Sometimes the article is used, mostly when syntactically connected with another noun which has the generalizing article, or a plural without the article.

i. * Every age produces those links between *the man* and the baboon. *Macaulay.*

A French man of letters has just published a most curious and valuable work on Mad Dogs, which demonstrates the continuity, not only of madness in the Dog, but of folly in *the Man.* *Newspaper.*

** The woman looms much larger in the world of books than *the man,* and she reads more sociological works than the other sex. *Fortn. Rev.,* 1912, 164.

ii. It is almost impossible to realise the prejudices which existed in Crimean times against giving either authority or responsibility to women in what was regarded as *the man's* sphere. *Westm. Gaz.,* No. 6377, 11a.

II. In such sentences as *The child is father of the man* (Wordsworth), *You can see the woman in the little girl,* quoted by Murray (s.v. *the,* II, 19) as exceptions, the reference is rather to a quality than to a person understood in a generalizing way. (Ch. XXIX, 22, Obs. II, a.)

“The childhood,” said Milton, “shows *the man,* as morning shows the day. *Emerson. Domestic Life* (Eliz. Jane Irv., Lit. Read., III, 238. (In this quotation the suppression of the definite article before *morning,* which is at variance with the meaning conveyed and with accepted usage, improves the rhythm.)

III. In the following quotation the definite article is, apparently, used for the sake of the metre. It may have been dropped for the same reason before *men* in the preceding line.

Your beauty is no beauty to him now; | A common chance — right well I know it — pall'd — I For I know men: nor will ye win him back, | For *the man's* love, once gone, never returns. *Ten., Ger. and En.*, 330—3.

IV. Classifying adjuncts sometimes cause the definite article to be re-established, but continuative adjuncts have no such effect.


The gentle art of doing nothing appears to be one of those which education has taken from *the modern man.* *Westm. Gaz.,* No. 4967, 5a.

Strange—strange are the ways of *the modern woman.* *Mrs. Belloc Lowndes, Jane Oglander,* Ch. XX, 268.

Of course, there are other instances (sc. of the way in which over-elaborated societies end up with their tails in their mouths; in a posture not merely twisted but inverted), at which I have already glanced. There was *the primitive man,* whom we left offering sacrifice to the gods. *Chesterston* (II. Lond. News, No. 3801, 271b.)

How wisely has the modern Confessor adapted himself to *the modern Man.* *Francis Thompson, Health and Holiness,* 19.

** The nobler conceptions of human life... are necessarily totally incomprehensible to *primitive man.* *Times,* No. 1826, 1049b.

So far, no trace of *Neanderthal man* has been discovered in England. Id., No. 1832, 109b.

Mr. Munro was well advised in selecting *prehistoric man* as the subject of the first course of the Munro Lectures. *Athen.,* No. 4433, 419a.

Man, especially *English man,* is so very afraid of doing a new thing. *Westm. Gaz.,* No. 6299. 4c.


2) *Prick van Wely, E. S.,* XLVI, 336.
ii. Much may be learned with regard to lovely woman by a look at the book she reads. Thack., Men's Wives, Ch. II, (328).

It was long indeed since an English sovereign had knelt to mortal man. Mac., Hist., III, Ch. VIII, 97.

All the people in Seriphos said that he was not the son of mortal man. Ch. Kingsley, The Heroes, I, Ch. II, 31.

V. The article cannot be dispensed with before the combination adjective + man, when man is used as a prop-word. (Ch. XXIX, 14b.)

If there is a man in the world needs the love and sympathy of a wife, it is the literary man. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 478, 4a.

Even in Ireland, which has a reputation for witty sons, the Cork man is held to be supreme for his wit. Id., No. 496, 577b.

VI In the following quotation the suppression, due to the measure, seems to be rather that of the possessive pronoun than the definite article:

Do what you can for fellow-man. Ch. Mackay, There's Work for all to do, I.

VII. The definite article is regularly placed before man and woman in the collocations to play the man or woman. (Ch. XXIX, 16, Note III.)

I told him he had better play the man a little more. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVIII, 137a.

There will be fearful vengeance taken on those tyrants, unless they play the man to-day. Ib., Ch. XX, 153a.

VIII. The use of the definite article before man in the Authorised Version, Gen. II, 15, 16, 18 and, perhaps, more places, may be due to some specializing element, such as (the man) which I (he) have (had) created, being understood.

And the Lord God said, It is not good that the man should be alone. Bible, Gen., II, 18. (Compare: God created man in his own image. Ib., I, 4.)

IX. It may have been observed that in some of the above quotations it seems as plausible to assume the absence of the indefinite as of the generalizing definite article, the function of the one being sometimes practically the same as that of the other (7, c, Note II). This will also become apparent from a comparison of a midge and man in the following quotation:

As a midge before an elephant, so is man when opposed to Fate. J. D. Beresford, Force Majeure (Westm. Gaz., No. 6299, 9a).

32. The definite article is less regularly used before collective nouns in a generalizing sense.

a) Some of these, especially such as express a class, a sect or a section of society, never reject it any more than their Dutch equivalents. For illustration see also Ch. XXVI, 9.

aristocracy. Who says that the aristocracy are proud? Mrs. Gask., Cranf., XI, 206.

bar. The dinner to be given by the English Bar to M. Berryer. Times.

church. The death of dean Stanley is a loss to the Church. Lit. World. Dr. Maclagan has done good service in the Church. Westm. Gaz.

clergy. The new Protestant clergy were often unpopular. Green, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § III, 378.
The publican has thrown his weight into the same scale, and the clergy certainly have not remained at home. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5219, 2a.

**commonalty.** He may look very well on the outside, but I detect at once in his speech the flavour of the great unwashed, the mob, the commonalty. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's.*

**community.** The omnibus is in favour with all classes of the community. GÜNTHER, *Leerb.* (According to BAIN, H. E. Gr., 60, the Americans say: Community thinks so too.)

**democracy.** I think that the democracy would be with them (sc. the Liberals) as in 1910. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6305, 7a.

**gentry.** The gentry rode their own horses or drove, in their own coaches. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 50.

**herd.** The herd has been eating and drinking and marrying as usual. CH. KINOSLEY, *Hypatia*, Ch. II, 7b.

**laity.** That is the essential part of a book which we do not hesitate to describe as a metical manifesto of real importance addressed equally to the medical profession and the laity. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5231, 10b. The appeal... is as much to the medical man as to the laity. Ib.

**mass.** All great regenerations are the universal movement of the mass. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VIII, 52.

**mob.** Is the mob more bold, more constant? Ib., I, Ch. VIII, 52.

**multitude.** To me, all great regenerations seem to have been the work of the few, and tacitly accepted by the multitude. Ib., I, Ch. VIII, 52.

**nobility, people, priesthood.** In Gaul were two orders, the nobility and the priesthood, while the people, says Cæsar, were all slaves. MOTLEY, *Rise*, Hist. Intr., 4b.

**peasantry.** The peasantry go barefooted. BAIN, H. E. Gr.

**people.** Tell the people how much I have loved them always. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 331. (See also under nobility.)

**priesthood.** See under nobility.

**public.** Do you suppose that the public reads with a view to its own conversion. G. ELIOT, *M. i. d.*, V, Ch. XLVI, 343.

**rabble.** The rabble call him lord. HAML., IV, 5, 101.

**town.** The town has asserted that I never yet patronized a man of merit. GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. man*, IV.

**world.** The world have paid too great a compliment to critics. FIELDINO, *Tom Jones*, V, Ch. I, 63.

b) But the definite article is suppressed, contrary to the Dutch practice, before many other nouns of a similar collective sense, such as Christendom (= the christians, or the christian countries collectively), humanity, humankind, manhood, mankind (with the accent on the second syllable = the human species, with the accent on the first syllable = the male sex) maturity, posterity, royalty, society, womankind; and also before the names of abstractions and of religious philosophical and artistical systems that have a collective meaning, such as childhood, infancy, youth; barbarism, Catholicism, Christianity (= the Christian faith); Islam, Mohammedanism, Paganism, philosophy, Protestantism, Romanism.

The suppression of the article is, apparently, due to the original abstract
meaning of these words, which, indeed, pervades their altered application also in a more or less degree (34), partly also, perhaps, to their having to a certain extent the character of indefinite pronouns. (57.) The first of the following quotations aptly illustrates their different treatment, as compared with that observed with the collective nouns mentioned higher up. For illustration see also Ch. XXVI, 9.

**barbarism, philosophy.** The struggle is not even between philosophy and barbarism. The struggle is one between the aristocracy and the mob. CH. KINGSLEY, Hypatia, Ch. II, 8a.

**Catholicism, Protestantism.** We often hear it said that the world is constantly becoming more and more enlightened, and that this enlightenment must be favourable to Protestantism, and unfavourable to Catholicism. MAC., E.S., Popes, (542b). Jerusalem, after all, is the cradle of the faith, not of Protestantism, nor of Catholicism, but of Christendom at large. TIMES.

**childhood.** The two real interests of childhood and play (Miss Austen's opinion of children). I. L. O. N. D. News.

Childhood is poetic and creative. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 483, 193a.

**Christendom.** He would rather you addressed the populace than the best priest in Christendom. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. VIII, 52.

The eyes of all Christendom will be directed hither. Ib., II, Ch. III, 84.

**Christianity.** See under paganism.

**humanity.** Thus the rascally tailors were to be put down, humanity clad and the philanthropists rewarded with a clear return of 30 per cent. LYTTON, Caxtons, II, Ch. II, 32b.

His mode of life has very much resembled that of Tom Jones, Roderick Random, specimens of humanity whom I hold in peculiar and especial detestation. SARAH GRAND, The Heav. Twins, I, 109.

The difficulty to keep so poor a specimen of humanity as Richard Boyce in his place. MRS. WARD, Marcella, I, 194.

**humankind.** Her separation from her parent had reconciled her to all humankind. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XLVI, 353b.

Her brother and her nephew represented to her the flower of humankind. MRS. WARD, Marcella, I, 159.

Compare: One lingering sympathy of mind | Still bound him to the mortal kind.

SCOTT, Lady, III, vii, 16.

**Islam.** The Caliph of Islam is said to be considering whether in response to this attack by a Christian Power upon the Moslem Empire in Africa, he ought to proclaim a Jehad in defence of endangered Islam. STEAD, Letter to the Times (quoted in Weekly Times, No. 1814, 796c).

**manhood.** English manhood is not peculiar in being lectured from time to time on its manners. WESTM. Gaz.

**mankind.** i. Courage becomes the first quality mankind must honour. LYTTON, Caxtons, III, Ch. II, 59.

Honour is the foundation of all improvement in mankind. Ib., 60.

Only queens should rule mankind. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol, Ch. XVI, 130a.

ii. Should all despair | That have revolted wives, the tenth of mankind | Would hang themselves. WINTER'S TALE, I, 2, 99.

The infinite simplicity and silliness of mankind and womankind at large. TROL., Lady Anna, Ch. IX, 67.1)

1 MURRAY.
Compare: You don't know human nature, male human nature! AGN. & EG. CASTLE, DIAM. CUT PASTE, II, Ch. I, 114.

maturity. Youth suffers and howls with pain, while maturity suffers and smiles at the futility of howling. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 469, 569a.

mortality. Pasteur and Lister have done so much by their genius to alleviate the sufferings to which mortality is heir. Westm. Gaz., No. 6329, 11b.

Paganism, Christianity. Do not fancy that the battle is merely between Paganism and Christianity. CH. KINGSLEY, HYP., Ch. II, 8a.

posterity. Posterity has not yet confirmed honest Hogarth's opinion about his talents for the sublime. Thackeray.

Protestantism. See under Catholicism.

Romanism. To-day's issue of the Nuova Antologia contains an article upon the progress of Romanism in England. Times.

Royalty. Royalty in most countries is fond of the stage, but merely as a spectator II. Lond. News.

society. i. This one thing is clear — Society must deal with the unemployed, or the unemployed will deal with Society. Annie Besant, Auto Biog., 319.

If you choose to associate with the scum of society, you may do as you like. Grant Allen, That Friend of Sylvia's.

Note I. Continuative adjectives do not cause the article to be used before the above nouns, but restrictive adjectives may.

i. Fortunately — most fortunately for erring humanity — no dog cares two wags of his tail about your moral character. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 66.

The inestimable benefits conferred upon suffering humanity by Lord Lister. lb., No. 6329, 11a.

ii. * He had been at the Treasury, and for a month or two at the Admiralty, astonishing official mankind by his diligence. Trol., Framl. Pars., Ch. II, 15.


II. It seems difficult to account for the regular use of the generalizing definite article before Papacy, a noun which is, apparently, of a similar collective meaning as the other names of ecclesiastical systems.

The Republic of Venice was modern when compared with the Papacy, and the Republic of Venice is gone and the Papacy remains. The Papacy remains, not in decay, but a mere antique, but full of life and youthful vigour. Mac., Popes, (542a).

Dr. Windhorst's task as the Champion of the Papacy was anything but an easy one. Graph.


III. Creation seems to take the definite article, when the reference is to living beings, and to throw it off, when it has the wider sense of all things created. When not used in a collective sense, but denoting the beginning of the world, it seems to take the article regularly: creation standing for creation of the world.

H. Poutsma, A Grammar of Late Modern English. II.
i. I will not enlarge this quaint saying to the most beautiful part of the creation in general. Fielding, *Tom Jones*, XV, Ch. II, 98b.

A fine girl is worth all the priestcraft in the creation. Goldsm., *Vicar*, Ch. VII.

My life has been chiefly spent in a college or an inn, in seclusion from that part of the creation that chiefly teach men confidence. Id., *She Stoops*, I, (180).

(His horse was) sweating and terrified, as if experiencing that agony of fear with which the presence of a supernatural being is supposed to agitate the brute creation. Scott, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXII, 227.

He is fond of hearing stories how the mightiest of the brute creation may be deceived by the wiles employed against them. Deighton, *Note to Jul. Cæs.*, II, I, 203-7.

The landlady ... had already given vent to an indignant inquiry whether Mr. Wardle considered himself a lord of the creation. Dick., *Pickw.*, Ch. X, 85.

The Lords of the Creation are ripe for reform. Westm. Gaz., No. 5277, 4b.

ii. No change, no degradation, no perversion of humanity, in any grade, through all the mysteries of wonderful creation, has monsters half so horrible and dread. Dick., *Christm. Car5.*, III, 84.

Acknowledged history is but a grain of sand on the shore of creation. Good Words.

While there is another town left in creation, I'll never trouble you again, Tergou. Ch. Reade, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. XI, 60.

But ever and anon his childish prattle recurred to what impressed his imagination even more deeply than the wonders of creation. Hardy, *Tess*, I, Ch. IV, 35.

iii. The simple words in which the writer of Genesis records the proceedings of the fifth and sixth days of the Creation. Huxley, *Col. Es.*, VIII, i, 35.

c) Collective nouns of the second kind, i.e. such as denote conceptions without limits (Ch. XXVI, 7), like material and abstract nouns (34), regularly reject the definite article.

Infantry (foot) seldom resists cavalry (horse).

33. Before plural nouns when denoting a class of persons, animals or things in a generalizing way, the definite article is mostly used.

a) Thus we find it normally in the following quotations:

And Jesus said unto them, *The foxes* have holes, and *the birds of the air* have nests; but the Son of Man hath not where to lay his head. Bible *Matth.*, VIII, 20.

Then you're no friend to *the ladies*. Goldsm., *She Stoops*, II, (194).

The fact is, that the cigar is a rival to *the ladies*. Thack., *Fitzboodle P ref.*, (204).

From indulging in that simple habit of smoking, I have gained among *the ladies* a dreadful reputation. Ib., (209).


While man is very little higher than the beasts, he is also very little lower than the angels. Malet, *Mrs. Lorimer*, 209. 1)

Sir Robert Peel's apostrophe to the *Conservatives* was reproduced by Mr. Balfour in his speech at the Primrose League demonstration at Haffieid. Graph.

If only the ladies could all have their own way in this world, and never be thwarted, then were the Millennium near at hand. Ib.

It is necessary that the nationalists shall be absolutely independent. Ib.

The Extremists ask for nothing less than the establishment of complete Ministerial responsibility, while the Moderates are willing to be content with some assurance that the Chancellor will in future be responsible to the Reichstag. Westm. Gaz.

Note I. When what is meant is not a class in a generalizing way, but an indefinite number, the article is not, of course, used.

The stranger who would form a correct opinion of the English character, must sojourn in villages and hamlets; he must visit castles, villas, farmhouses, cottages [etc.]. Wash. Irving.

Such plurals correspond to singulars preceded by the indefinite article in its varied functions. (7.)

i. Days elapsed before any one understood what had happened.

ii. Boys showed us the way.

iii. * Islands are pieces of land surrounded by water.

** Lions are beasts of prey.

iv. We want men for such a task.

But in like manner as the indefinite article, as a weak any, is sometimes practically equivalent to the generalizing definite article (7, c, Note II), plurals without the article are sometimes used in, apparently, the same meaning as plurals with the generalizing definite article.

When leaves fall and flowers fade, great people are found in their country-seats. Lytton, What will he do with it?, V, Ch. I, 242.

The task before Liberals and Free Traders is to drive home the fact that the Opposition policy is one of food taxes as a preliminary to full-blooded Protection. Westm. Gaz.

II. The difference between the generalizing (or indefinite) singular and the indefinite (or generalizing) plural is clearly brought out by the following quotations:

Men die, but Man is immortal. Periodical. 2)

Most thinkers write and speak of man; Mr. Browning of men. Symons.

III. Sometimes the use or absence of the article is conditioned by the metre. Thus in:

Men are God's trees, and women are God's flowers; | And when the Gascon wine mounts to my head, | The trees are all the statelier, and the flowers | Are all the fairer. Ten., Beck., ProL, (694b).

IV. Sometimes the absence of the article may be due to the noun assuming more or less the vagueness of an indefinite pronoun. (57).

Liberals therefore are beginning to ask with much insistence what future is there either for the Government or for the party, if no means can be found of removing the obstruction of the Peers. Westm. Gaz. (= Dutch Van liberale zijde begint men te vragen enz.)

If the English tongue should ever die out, future generations would have to learn English as a dead language in order that they might read Milton. Ib., (=Dutch...zou men voortaan Engelsch moeten leeren, enz.)

1) Foels.—Koch, Wis. Gram., § 267.
Regular is the suppression of the definite article before plurals used in a generalizing sense after a superlative, when the notion of comparison with other specimens of the class is obscured, i.e. when little more is meant than a high degree of the quality expressed by the adjective. Thus English is the easiest of languages = English is a very easy language; English is the easiest of the modern languages = Of the modern languages English is the easiest to acquire.

The misses Osborne had had the best of governesses. Thack., Van Fair, I, Ch. XII, 114.

That very evening Amelia wrote him the tenderest of long letters. Ib., Ch. XIII, 133.
The best of women (I have heard my grandmother say) are hypocrites. Ib., I, Ch. XVII, 179.

Dare any soul on earth breathe a word against the sweetest, the purest, the tenderest, the most, angelical of young women? Ib., I, Ch. XVII, 188.

They vilipended the poor innocent girl as the basest and most artful of vixens. Ib., I, Ch. XVI, 131a.

Riding is the most healthy of exercises. G. Eliot, Mid., I, Ch. II, 12.

With his jests and his frankness he made the best of crimps. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVI, 131a.

Few of us realize how recently the changes have begun, which have made London the healthiest instead of the unhealthiest of cities. Graph.

Even the healthiest of persons is liable to stomachic derangement sometimes. Westm. Gaz., No. 6029, 13c.

He (sc. the hawfinch) is among the shyest of birds. Ib., 13a.

Compare with the above the following quotations, in which the use of the article has the effect of imparting to the superlative its ordinary meaning of exceeding all others:

(He only procured) a trifle occasionally... by obtaining an appearance at one or other of the commonest of the minor theatres. Dick., Pickw., Ch. III, 24.
The Last of the Barons. Lytton, name of a novel.
The Last of the Mohicans. Fenimore Cooper, name of a novel.

Man is the shortest-lived of the beasts. 11. Lond. News, No. 3831, 428a.
The Nation, best and brightest of the Weeklies. (For the absence of the article before the superlative see 20, e. Thus also in: Professor Reinhardt, most popular of theatrical directors, was responsible for the staging. 11. Lond. News, No. 3796, 76b.)

Note I. The article is sometimes suppressed also when there is a distinct notion of comparison with other specimens of the class.
The greatest of faults is to be conscious of none. Carlyle, Hero Worship, II, 43.

Rotterdam is the most enterprising of Dutch cities. Lit. World.

II. The same construction may be observed with a singular abstract noun instead of a plural.
Both appeared to be in the best of health. Times, No. 1809, 698c. (= in excellent health.)
This would be denounced... as the rankest of treason. Westm. Gaz., No. 6389, 1b.

III. Sometimes a noun expressing a high degree of excellence, takes the place of the superlative. Such a noun may be preceded by the indefinite article, and the preposition of may be replaced by among.
i. The prince of charioteers. Sher., Riv., I, 1.
Archibald Forbes, the prince of war correspondents. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 4971, 613b.

A prince of dreamers. F. A. STEELE, name of a novel.

iii. She (sc. Lady Mary Wortley Montagu) was a queen among women. T. P.'s Weekly.

IV. A singular noun identical with the plural sometimes has the value of a superlative: the sin of sins = the greatest of sins.

Acquiescence in things as they are is the sin of sins. Rev. of Rev., CXCIV, 138b. (That is) the gift of gifts. 11. Lond. News, No. 3844, 945a. Compare with this A Whig of the Whigs, he (sc. Lord John Russell) proved typical of a period which [etc.]. Bookman, No. 262, 162a (= a Whig to the backbone.)

Here mention may also be made of such a collocation as in his heart of hearts (= in his inmost heart), in which the article is suppressed on the same principle.

Like many fond parents I have in my heart of hearts a favourite child. And his name is David Copperfield. DICK., Cop., Pref.

The fact is that the Germans in their hearts of hearts know perfectly well that no one of these neighbours can attack them with any chance of success. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 976.

IV. Partially converted adjectives denoting a class of persons in a generalizing way, never lose the article.

Master Jeremy... fell into the error of supposing that we clods and yokels were the simplest of the simple. BLACKM., Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVIII, 228.

34. The definite article is rarely used before the names of materials, and of actions, states or qualities (material and abstract nouns) when spoken of in a generalizing way.

a) The Dutch idiom in this case is variable. Although, as a rule, the article is dispensed with, it is not infrequently met with. Thus the article would (or might) be used in translating the following sentences:

i. Money makes the mare to go. Prov.

Besides its commonest use as the working substance in engines, steam is also largely employed for heating. Harmsworth Encyclop. In Scotland gas is governed by the Sale of Gas Act Ib., s.v. gas, (121c).

ii. Health is above wealth. Prov.
Art is long, life is short. Id.
'Tis safest in matrimony to begin with a little aversion. SHER., Riv., I, 2, (220).

What an enormous camera-obscura magnifier is Tradition. CARLYLE, Hero Worship, 23.
Charity begins at home, justice begins next-door. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXVII, 227a.

Self-preservation is the first law of nature. Id., Ol. Twist, Ch. X, 24a.
So long as nature supports me, never, never, Mr. Clump, will I desert the post of duty. THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. XIX, 201.
Nature, in all its operations, impresses man with the idea of an invisible Power. LYTTON, Caxtons, III, Ch. II, 52.

Marriage is the best state for man in general. REV. E. J. HARDY, How to be happy though married, Ch. II, 26.
Fame and reward are powerful incentives, but they bear no comparison to affection. Ib., Ch. III, 34.

Charity covers a multitude of sins. Lit. World.

Note. Indefinite or vague specializing bears some resemblance to generalization, and, therefore, has the same effect.

On all grounds opinion had better be left to ripen before positive steps are taken on either side. Westm. Gaz., No. 6359, 7a.

Opinion has fortunately moved forward somewhat. Ib., No. 6365, 2a.

His career owes nothing whatever to influence or to circumstances apart from his brilliant ability. Ib., 2b.

b) The generalizing definite article is also rejected before the above nouns.

1) in sentences in which what is considered true at all times, is applied to a special case.


2) when the ideas they express are personified. Personification of an abstraction is essentially only a modified form of generalizing an abstraction. It is often even difficult to tell how far generalizing has passed into personification. Thus some of the quotations given above might with a fair show of justice be cited as instances of personification. The uncertainty is also shown by the variability of the pronouns used in referring to abstractions. (Ch. XXVI, 38, b.)

The clearest form of personification is that in which a quality is represented as a deity, as when we speak of Chance, Fate, Providence, Fortune, etc.

The names of personified abstractions are practically significant proper names, and also as such would reject the article.

Abundance. It is a time when Want is keenly felt and Abundance rejoices. Dick., Christm. Car. 5, I, 14.

Art. Art is a jealous mistress. Storm, Eng. Phil., 352.

Chance. Chance afforded him an opportunity of making the acquaintance of this class of society. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXX, 317.

Death. Death alone parted them. Academy.

Fate. As Fate would have it, the two had stopped just opposite him. Ch. Kingsley, Westward Ho!, Ch. XIX, 146a.

Fortune. Fortune favours the bold. Prov.

Cursed as I am with more imperfections than my fellow-creatures, kind Fortune sent a heaven-gifted cherub to my aid. Sheridan, Riv., V, 1, (272). I afraid of Fortune! Why Fortune has done her worst: I defy her to do worse than she has done! Walt. Besant, St. Kath., Ch. VIII.

History. History, we believe, will do justice to it (sc. this Parliament). Westm. Gaz., No. 5, 173, 2a.

Love. Love looks not with the eyes, but with the mind. Mids., I, I, 224. Love flies out of the window, when poverty comes in at the door. Prov.

Mercy. Mercy blotted out the accusation. Sterne, Tristram Shandy, VI, 8.

Misfortune. It seemed as if Misfortune was never tired of worrying into motion that unwieldy exile. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXII, 351.

Nature. Nature meant very gently by women, when she made that tea-plant. Id., Pend., I, Ch. XXXII, 347.

Omnipotence. Bright retorted that it was an affliction which not even Omnipotence could inflict on the noble lord. Truth, No. 472, 650c.
Omniscience. He only learned that the more he himself knew, in his little human way, the better he could distantly imagine what Omniscience might know. DICK., Our Mut. Friend, II, Ch. X, 183.

Providence. Providence has been kinder to us than we to ourselves. GOLDSM., Vic.

Rumour. Rumour called her a Spaniard. G. MEREDITH, Lord Orm., Ch. II, 39.
Rumour had subsequently more to say. Ib.
So it came about that, when on the night of the big row contiguity produced physical conflict, the Colonel was in it. At least, so Rumour says. Westm. Gaz., No. 4943, 5a.
Rumour has run wild during the present week. Ib., No. 5237, 1b.

Time. Time heals many a sore. Prov.
Time will show. Dick., Chuz., Ch. XVI, 133a.
Time and tide wait for no man, saith the adage. Ib., Ch. X, 80a.

35. Both before material nouns and abstract nouns the generalizing definite article is occasionally met with.

a) Sometimes the use of the article may be due to the requirements of metre or rhythm (9, g.) or to a desire to give the sentence a proper balance.

A feeling of sadness and longing | That is not akin to pain, | And resembles sorrow only | As the mist resembles rain. LONGFELLOW, The Day is Done, III. (Note the absence of the article before rain, although used in the same grammatical meaning as mist.)

ii. She is as pure as is the ice. OUIDA, Moths, III, 264. 1)

iii. Only a little ice where the fire should glow, only a cold look, where the love should burn. Rev. E. J. HARDY, How to be happy though married, Ch. 10, 104. 1)

But this would hardly account for the use of the article in:
Pray, gentlemen, let me have one honest man in my company, for the novelty's sake. FARQUHAR, The Recruiting Officer, V, 5, (339).
It is evident that as long as the steam power was to be used only as an auxiliary, it would be impossible to reckon on speed and certainty of arrival. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. I, 13. (Compare: Neither the Sirius nor the Great Western was the first vessel to cross the Atlantic by means of steam propulsion. Ib., Ch. 1, 13.)

When everything else falls away, the love will endure because it cannot die while there is any life, if it is true love, for it is immortal. RID. HAG., Jess, I, 86. 2)

I am not of a mind to venture my life for the truth's sake. MOTLEY, Rise, Hist. Introd., 39a.
She had remained pure as the snow. EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. XVII, 155.

In the following quotation, given by WENDT (Synt. des heut. Eng. 172), the use of the definite article, indeed, makes for rhythm, but the indefinite article would seem to be more appropriate.

1) TEN BRUG., Taalst., VI, 24. 2) Ib., X, 218.
Admirers of the strenuous life must acclaim Professor Wright, who has just completed his great English Dialect Dictionary. Periodical.

b) The article is rather common before the names of certain diseases, such as bronchitis, fever, gout, indigestion, rheumatism, whooping-cough and the compounds of ache. This practice, however, is now regarded as more or less vulgar. Wyld, The Growth of English, Ch. V, 65.

Before most names of diseases, especially when scientific names, the article is practically never used. Such, among many others, are cholera, consumption, pleurisy, phthisis, diphtheria, paralysis, neuralgia, etc. Before others we mostly find the indefinite article. (41, a.) The definite article is practically regular before plague and pest. It may here be observed that the article is exceedingly common before plural names of diseases. See the illustrative quotations given in Ch. XXV, 19, c.

ache. i. I was to spend the day with Miss Sheridan, who was ill with the tooth-ache. Miss Linley (G. G. S., Life of Sheridan, 28).

JANE AUSTEN, Mansfield Park, Ch. VII, 74.

i. I was to spend the day with Miss Sheridan, who was ill with the tooth-ache. Miss Linley (G. G. S., Life of Sheridan, 28).

I am very much afraid she caught the head-ache there. Ib., 76.

Miss Pritchard had the head-ache. Thack., Virg., Ch. LXXX, 848.

He came because I had the tooth-ache. Ib., Ch. LXXXIV, 895.


fever. i. The latter caught the typhus fever. Ch. Bronte, Jane Eyre, Ch. III, 25.

Colonel Washington has had the fever very smartly. Thack., Virg., Ch. XII, 122.

Miss Birch died of the scarlet fever. Id., Van Fair, I, Ch. I, 3.

ii. His Excellency, Colonel Rawdon Crawley died of yellow fever. Thack., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 372.

Having gone to bed ill with fever [etc.]. Id., Pend., II, Ch. XVI, 163.

Percie had died of fever. Story of Rob Roy, 45.

Fever and a bad head-ache have prevented me from writing to my adorable friend. Truth, No. 470, 595c.

gout. i. Master thought another fit of the gout was coming to make him a visit. Sher., Riv., I, 1, (213).

ii. Gout is the chief disease from which rheumatism has to be distinguished. Roberts, Handbook Med., I, 231. 1)

measles. i. Don't you remember dying of the measles and coming here to be buried? Miss Braddon, My First Happy Christmas (Stof., Handl., I, 77).

ii. The worthy medical man round the corner has a right to tell me that I have measles. Chesterton (II. Lond. News, No. 3817, 869c).

plague. i. During the 19th century the plague in Europe was confined almost exclusively to Turkey and S. Russia. Harmsworth Encyclop. s. v. plague, (382c).

From June 1890 to January 1900 the plague prevailed in Oporto in Portugal. Ib.

ii. At length it seems as if plague was being got over. Westm. Gaz., No. 6299, 2a.

rheumatism. i. If this frolic should lay me up with a fit of the rheumatism, I shall have a blessed time of it with dame van Winkle. Wash. Irw., Sketch-Bk., Rip van Winkle.

1) Murray.
ii. On wet Sundays, or whenever he had a touch of rheumatism, he used to read the three first chapters of Genesis. G. Eliot, Adam Bede, Ch. XVIII, 161. It was evident from the way he moved, that every one of his poor old joints was stiff with rheumatism. Westm. Gaz., No. 5201, 9a.

small-pox. When my poor James was in the small-pox. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIX, 201.

A few quotations containing names of diseases which never take the generalizing definite article, must suffice.

He died of cholera. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 181.

She died from inflammation of the lungs. (?), Mad. Leroux, Ch. I.


She possessed a husband whom she had left ill with malaria at Florence. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. VII, 82.

c) The generalizing definite article is also more or less common before the following abstract nouns:

chase, which has it practically regularly, except for certain expressions, such as to hold chase, to give chase, to be (hold) in chase. Sometimes the use or absence of the article is determined by the measure.

i. The gentleman is going to the chase. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVII, 175.

All the fierce gaiety of his nature broke out in the chivalrous adventures of his youth, ... in his defiant ride over the ground which Geoffry Martel claimed from him, a ride with hawk on fist, as though war and the chase were one. Green, Short Hist., Ch. II, § 4, 75. (Note the different practice before war and chase.)

The Normans made the chase and war the only noble occupations. Suggestive Lessons, IV, 90.

ii. Spies of the Volsces | Held me in chase. Coriol., I, 6, 19.

And now the two canoes in chase divide. Byron, The Island, III, x.

Since long ago that men in Calydon | Held chase. W. Morris, The Earthly Par., The Son of Croes., XXI.

Next day King Helge gave chase to Frithiof. Edna Lyall, A Hardy Norseman, Ch. III, 28.

light, which regularly has the article in the collocation to see the light = to come into the world, to be brought forth or published. Usage is divided in the collocation to bring to (the) light. The article seems to be regularly suppressed in to come to light.

i. * Many documents from his hand ... will probably never see the light. Motley, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 901a.

This book first saw the light in the pages of an illustrated daily paper. Lit. World.

** "Here they are, here they are!" cried Ned exultingly, as he brought two young owls to the light. Sweet, The Old Chapel.

ii. * Everybody wished to bring to light some of the treasures. Max Müller, Sci. Relig., 185. 1)

** They will stick at nothing to keep the truth from coming to light. Times.

To crop out = to come to light. Webst., Dict.

The fraud came to light. Graph.

death, which regularly has the article in the collocation to the death with to in a temporal meaning. See also Franz, Shak. Gram. 2; § 262; Ellinger, Eng. Stud., XXXI; id., Verm. Beit., 26.

1) Murray.
I will battle it *to the death*, and die game at last. Dick., Letters. I).

I trust thee *to the death*. Ten., Coming of Arthur. 133.

Lestrange... vowed to wage war, not only *to the death*, but after death, with all the mock saints and martyrs. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. III, 386.

They swore a great oath... to obey their officers *to the death*. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Hol!, Ch. XXI, 174a.

Here is seemingly a quarrel *to the death*. Punch.

Shere Khan knew that Mother Wolf would fight *to the death*. Rudy. Kipling, Jungle Book.

They would resent an insult to themselves or one of their family to the death. Philips, Mrs. Bouverie, 96.

A thousand Granitanians swore unsolicited to follow him to the death. W estm. Gaz., No. 5382, 2c.

Note. When *to* has not a temporal meaning, the article is not used. Thus it is absent in:

He was *frozen to death*, starved to death, frightened to death. He bored himself to death. He drank himself to death. These terms have been done to death. He was *put to death*. Sheridan... wounded to death, was removed to the White Hart Hotel. (T. P.’s Weekly, No. 475, 746b.)

In the following quotations the definite article is, apparently, used for the sake of the metre:


Leave me to-night: *I am weary to the death*. Ten., Ger. and En., 358.

Tho' he... | ...were himself nigh wounded to the death. Ib., 918.

*Law*, which has the article regularly, or almost regularly, in certain applications or collocations, dropping it as regularly in others.

*Law* has the article:

a) when denoting the body of enacted or customary rules recognized by a community as binding, often with a notion of personification.

He was at a loss how it should come to pass that *the law*, which was intended for every man’s preservation, should be any man’s ruin. Swift, Gul., IV, Ch. V.

Laws grind the poor, and rich men rule *the law*. Goldsmith, Trav., 386.

Ignorant of *the law*, *the law* seemed to him, as it ever does to the ignorant and the friendless, [etc.]. Lytton, Night and Morn., 120.

“If *the law* supposes that”, said Mr. Bumble,...*the law* is a ass — a idiot. Dick., Ol. Twist, Ch. L, 481.

Combination is an instinct which, as *the law* cannot eradicate it, it is sound policy on the part of *the law* to recognize. Escott, England, Ch. X, 156.

In that year the principle was asserted that *the law* owed its duties of protection to women as well as children. Ib., Ch. X, 138.

*The law* forbids, allows. Fowler, Concise Oxf. Dict.

To lay down *the law*. Ib.

Observe especially to break (infringe, transgress) the law, as in:

Neither will it be necessary for you to break the law in an attempt to deprive us forcibly of the use of property. Times, No. 1831, 83a.

Mr. Pankhurst... (gave) an undertaking not to break the law while her trial is pending. W estm. Gaz., No. 6165, 2c.

Note I. The following quotations may exhibit exceptional practice:

Your late husband’s estate will be seized upon by law. Dick., Chuz., Ch. LIV, 419a.

---

The regulations prescribed by law. Escott, England, Ch. X, 151.

II. It may be observed that when a branch of the law is meant, as in canon (civil, common, martial) law, the article is absent, although a generalizing sense is meant.

The crown lawyers pleaded against Canon Law. William Barry, The Papacy, Ch. I, 37.

β) in the sense of binding injunctions in general, especially in the phrase to give the law to (= to impose one's will upon).

Mr. Brady gave the law at Castle Brady. Thack., Barry Lyndon, Ch. I.

(Occasionally without the article: In literature she gave law to the world. Mac., Hist. III, Ch. I, 397.)

γ) when denoting a science: He consults men learned in the law. J. H. Newman, Par. Serm. I)

I have studied the law. Punch. (Occasionally without the article: These chapters were rewritten under the immediate eye of W. H., who studied law 35 years ago. Mark Twain, Pud. Wilson, 5.)

Note. The article is absent in the combinations student-at-law, student of law, professor of law:

Simple questions and answers for the use of students-at-law. Punch.

δ) in the sense of judicial remedy, especially in the phrases to take (to have) the law of a person, to take the law into, one's own hands, to have the law in one's own hands.

There's a hackney-coachman downstairs, vowing he'll have the law of you. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 60.

I'll take the law of yer for assault an' battery. Mrs. Ward, Mars., I, 152.

The term (sc. lynch-law) is said to be derived from a Virginia farmer named Lynch, who thus took the law into his own hands. Webst., Dict., s.v. lynch-law.

ε) in the sense of the legal profession.

Bred to the law. Fowler, Concise Oxf. Dict.

Law stands without the article:

a) in the sense of controlling influence of the law.

The Reign of Law. Escott, England, Ch. X, 156. (Compare: the Reign of Terror.)

Law . . . is at each stage the organised public opinion of the country. Westm. Gaz., No. 6323, 1c.

β) in the sense of law-courts as providing judicial remedy, especially in the phrase to go to law.

Go to law upon the spot and retain me. Dick., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. III, 29.

γ) in the combinations court-of-law, son-in-law.

Note. In such a sentence as It may be common sense, but is not law, the absence of the article before law is due to its application as a predicative noun. (Ch. XXIII, 16, a.)

peace, which almost regularly has the article when it stands for the King's peace (= the general peace and order of the realm, as provided for by law). Murray. Thus in:

a) the collocations to keep (preserve) the peace, to break (disturb) the peace, and allied combinations, such as preservation (breach, disturbance) of the peace.

1) Murray.
i. We were bound over to keep the peace. Thack., Virg., Ch. LV, 570. Keep the peace, or I'll lay a heavy hand on the pair of you. Hal. Sutcl., The Lone Adventure, Ch. II, 45.
Sir Edward Grey may be satisfied of his own ability to keep the peace. Westm. Gaz.
We remain of opinion that, in spite of all these hitherings and thitherings, the Balkan question will eventually be settled without disturbing the peace. Ib., No. 4937, 1a.
I will do the best of my power to cause the peace to be kept and preserved. 11. Lond. News, No. 3775, 342.
The Man who defies the law is he who provokes others to a breach of the peace. Times, No. 1831, 91c.
The Constabulary had received instructions...to disperse by force assemblies from which a disturbance of the peace might be apprehended. 11. Lond. News, No. 3851, 177.

ii. The High Commissioner was hoping against hope that peace might be preserved. Times.
A warning that peace must be kept during the bye-election. 11. Lond. News, No. 3851, 177.
The venerable Ruler, whose wisdom has helped so much to preserve peace. Ib., No. 3879, 276.
His services in the difficult work of keeping peace on the Indian frontier it would be hard to overrate. Westm. Gaz., No. 6246, 2a.

β) in the collocation Justice of the Peace (formerly also Justice of Peace.

i. In counties the Court is held before the Justices of the Peace. Anna Buckland, Our Nat. Instl., 47.

ii. The clerk...doubted whether a justice of Peace had any such power. Fielding, Amelia, I, Ch. II.
You talked, for all the world,' as if you was before a Justice of Peace. Goldsmith, She Stoops, Ill, (205).

Note. Similarly in constable (officer, conservator, sergeant) of the peace.

γ. in the collocations: to be sworn of the peace (= to be made a magistrate), the commission of the peace (= the authority given under the Great Seal empowering certain persons to act as Justices of the Peace in a specified district), precept of the peace, sessions of the peace.

I am sworn of the peace. Merry Wives, II, 3, 54.
In England this title (sc. that of Justice of the Peace) was first conferred by an act of 1360, and the commission of the peace in counties became a permanent institution from about that time. Harmsworth Encyclop.

Note. In other combinations peace rejects the article. Thus in to make (to conclude, to bring, to bring about, to secure) peace.
Lord Morley's aim has been not to disturb an existing peace, but to bring peace in disturbed conditions. Westm. Gaz., No. 4937, 2a.
The Powers...have at least secured peace among themselves, even if they have not made peace in the Balkans. Id., No. 6341, 2a.

36. The generalizing article is also suppressed:

a) before some of the names of localities, institutions and establishments, and allied words mentioned in 15, a. For illustration see also that §.
church. Church begins at two. G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, Ch. XVIII, 159.
Church is good for the publican. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. II, 40.
college. College he seems to have disliked. LYTTON, Life of Lord Byron, 14b.
home. Home is home, be it ever so homely. Prov.
market. A silver fox skin...will fetch in open market between two thousand and two thousand five hundred dollars. Ill. Lond. News, No. 3877, 211
prison. Our friend seems to think that prison is a hospital. JOHN GALSWORTHY,
J u s t i c e, III, 1, (70).
You don't understand what prison is. Ib., IV, (101).
Prison for lads should be the last, and not the first, resort. Daily News, 1897, 30 Aug., 5/1.
school. School would be a complete change. CH. BRONTE, Jane Eyre, Ch. III, 25.
'Would you like to go to school?' Again I reflected: I scarcely knew what school was. Ib., 24.
You've had your holiday and school's begun again. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XI, 125.
Compare: For those who followed Lister's guidance the hospital ceased to be a slaughter-house. Westm. Gaz., No. 6329, 11b.
b) before the names of meals. (15, b.)
I allowed half an hour for this meal and an hour for dinner. GOLDSMITH, Vicar, Ch. IV, (256).
I never wait supper for anybody. DICK., Pickw., Ch. IX, 73.
Dinner is generally the most substantial meal we take in the course of the day.
c) before the names of certain of the main divisions of a day, when the reference is to a natural phenomenon, or to an epoch. The article is not suppressed, when distinctly a period is meant: hence it is always retained after the prepositions in and during. Nor is it, apparently, ever dropped before afternoon and forenoon. (15, c.)
Ev'n silent night proclaims my soul immortal. YOUNG, Night Thoughts, I, 102.
Evening must usher night, night urge the morrow. SHELLEY, A d o n a i s, XXI.
Night is generally my time for walking. DICK., The Old Cur. Shop, Ch. I, 1a.
d) frequently before the names of seasons. The article seems to be especially common after the prepositions in and during, which help to express a period. (15, d.)
i. Winter is long and harsh; summer is brief and burning. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. XX, 331.
All the gardeners could not keep the impress of autumn's destroying hand from the grounds about the Court. Miss BRADDON, Lady Audley's Secret, I, Ch. XIV, 152.
In summer the heat of the sun is tempered by the fresh keen air of the mountain. Ib., Ch. IX, 129.
ii. * In the summer I often leave home early in the morning, and roam about fields and lanes all day. DICK., The Old Cur. Shop, Ch. I, 1a.
There were glass houses to protect the delicate plants in the winter. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. VIII, 121.
The remarkable family gatherings were held every year, usually in the autumn.
T i m e s.
It is a pretty sight to see these orchards in the spring. GÜNTH., Leerb., 76.
The squirrel is monogamous, and in the spring rears usually two or three young. Westm. Gaz., No. 6059, 13a.
**People say, it is best to live in the country during the summer, and in town during the winter. Laurie's New Third Standard Reader.**

The following is a remarkable instance of divided usage:

_in the winter_ this walk is sheltered from the bitter east winds by the belt of wood, and _in summer_ pleasantly over-shaded by the overhanging trees. L. MALET, Mrs. LORIMER, 42. 2)

**Note.** When the name of the season is followed by a (continuative) adnominal clause, the article is indispensable.

_In the winter_, which he spends in Melbourne, this highland home of his is sometimes swathed in snow. FROUDE, _Oceana_, Ch. IX, 129.

e) almost regularly before the names of months, days and festivals. (15, e.)

i. The inhabitants most religiously eat pancakes on _Shrove Tuesday_, hot-cross buns on _good Friday_, and roast goose at _Michaelmas_; they send love-letters on _Valentine's Day_, burn the Pope on the fifth of November, and kiss all the girls under the mistletoe at _Christmas_. WASH. IRV., _Sketch-Bk._, XXV, 243.

ii. Why such impress of shipwrights, whose sore task | Does not divide the _Sunday_ from the week? HAM., I, 1, 76. (The use of the article is, apparently, due to the metre.)

The gallery being shut up on _the Wednesday_. ELIOT'S _Life II_, 182. 3)

**Note.** The article seems to be regularly kept before _Sabbath_.

To keep (break) the _Sabbath_. MURRAY.

She called upon him categorically to state whether he did not think that travelling on _the Sabbath_ was an abomination and a desecration. TROL., _Barch. Tow._, Ch. V, 37.

37. The difficulty of deciding whether the conception formed in our minds is specialized or generalized, is often responsible for the vacillation in the use of the article. Thus in:

*What is the design*?...—_A cook... with a beautiful muraena (taken from the life), on a spit at a distance._ LYTTON, _Last Days of Pomp._, I, Ch. II, 16a.

He had been all the morning at Carrel's studio drawing from the life. DU MAURIER, _Trilby_, 6.

He had been working for three or four years in a London art-school, drawing and painting from the life. Ib., 103.

Men and women must be studied from the life. Id., _Soc. Pict. Sat._, 18.

He copied from the life only glaring and obvious peculiarities. BAIN, H. E. Gr., s. v. from.

---

** A study from the life. Dick., Crick., I, 24.

*** I will put you in my first novel, a little idealised perhaps, but true to the life. Beatrice Harraden, The Fowler, I, Ch. XIII, 68.

ii. * Taken from the life. 11. Lond. News.

** Studies from life at the Zoo. Id.

*** The characters were overdrawn and untrue to life. W. J. Locke, Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. II, 17.

Note. Compare with the above: studies, etc. from nature, invariably without the article.

b) to speak, say, or tell (the) truth. i. To tell the truth, he did not care to venture there in the dark. Wash. Inv., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 151). He was very good-natured, generous, told the truth. Thack., Newc., I, Ch. XXIV, 272.

To say the truth, she certainly was not (sc. an angel). Id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 10.

To speak the truth, you are my child. Ten., Lady Clare, VI.

ii. To say truth, ma'am, 'tis very vulgar to print. Sher., School for Scund., I, I, (370).

I am engaged as a poetical gazetteer, to say truth, and am writing a poem on the campaign. Thack., Henry Esmond, II, Ch. XI, 245.

No matter what the verses were, and, to say truth, Mr. Esmond found some of them more than indifferent. Ib., II, Ch. XI, 245.

She was a mild and patient creature, if her face spoke truth. Dick., Christm. Car., IV, 97.

Speak truth and shame the devii, that's my motto. Lytton, Night and Morn., 125.


To speak truth, if I thought I had a chance to better myself where I was going, I would go with a good will. Stevenson, Kidnapped, 10.

Note. The article seems to be regularly absent in the absolute infinitive clauses to say truth, truth to say, truth to tell; and—to be as regularly used in the absolute infinitive clause to tell you the truth. Compare with these phrases also to say true, to tell one true, and see Ch. XVIII, 24.

i. I have seen him but little, nor, truth to say, esteem him much. Lytton, Rienzi, I, Ch. VIII, 53.

Truth to tell, good looks are the exception, not the rule, in Naples. Edna Lyall, Knight Errant, Ch. I, 8.

ii. To tell you the truth, he had some forty stout countrymen of his with him. Ch. Kingsley, Hypatia, Ch. II, 76.


Sir Nicholas tells you true. Ten., Queen Mary, V, 1, (636a).

Sir Nicholas tells you true. Ten., Queen Mary, V, 1, (636a).

C) worth (the) having, living, etc. i. Something which was well worth the having. Dick., Dombey, Ch. I, 2.

Any recipe for catching such a son-in-law was worth the having. Id., Chuz., Ch. XVIII, 157a.

I knew all along that the prize I had set my heart on, was not worth the winning. Thack., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXI, 254.

Life might perhaps be worth the living. Rider Hagg, Jess, Ch. IV, 33.

A cheaper and smaller edition might be worth the issuing. Acad.

The secret was hardly worth the telling. Whiteing. 1)

ii. He means to give you some present worth having. Dick., Chuz., XXIV, 204a.

Domestic felicity, like everything else worth having, must be worked for.

Rev. E. J. Hardy, How to be happy though married, Ch. I, 12.

---

1) Konrad Meier, E. S., XXXI, 328.
USE OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

38. The chief feature of the use of the indefinite article in English, as compared with Dutch, is its frequent employment before the names of actions, qualities or states, to denote that a special variety or instance is meant. (Ch. XXV, 24, a.) Compare also FRANZ, Sh a k. Gram. 2, § 276. While in both languages the use of the article is quite common, when the nature of the variety or instance is specified by an adnominal clause, it is rather rare in Dutch and frequent in English, when there is no such specifying.

i. Dat is een zelf-opoffering als wij zelden aantreffen.
   That is a self-sacrifice such as we seldom meet with.
   Dat is een zelf-opoffering die achting afdwingt.
   That is a self-sacrifice which commands respect.

ii. Hij heeft aanleg voor muziek.
   Dat is jammer.
   He has a turn for music.
   That is a pity.

Both English and Dutch are, however, highly variable and arbitrary in the use of the indefinite article before abstract nouns; that is to say, not only do some nouns now take now lose it, but also there are many that, from no cause lying in the nature of their signification, seem to be excepted from the prevailing tendency. Some of these latter are included in the following illustrations for comparison.

It is hardly necessary to say that the subject here raised is one of almost illimited extent, and that, therefore, only a few of the most remarkable points can be touched upon.

39. Two peculiar English idioms may be recorded at the outset:
   a) the use of the indefinite article before the stem of a verb, which is much more widely spread in English than in Dutch.
   In colloquial language, indeed, almost any verb-stem expressing an action, may be converted into a substantive and used with the indefinite article.

   bite. She never knew she had a bite, till Tom told her. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. V, 32.

   dislike. The consequence of his taking a dislike to us ... is ... that he loses some pleasant moments. DICK., Christm. Car. 5, III, 78. (See also page 615.)

   escape. You have had a narrow escape with life. Buchanan, That Winter Night, Ch. IV, 36.


   laugh. "How kind you all are to me! All," she added with a laugh, "except you, Mr. Joseph. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 27.
   A man must have a laugh sometimes. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. X, 137.

   say. As to the concerts for schools, the education committee has a say in the matter. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 484, 210c.
   The husband should have a say in the matter. Westm. Gaz., No. 6299, 3b.
THE ARTICLE. 609

shoot. The gentlemen return from a shoot just a little before dinner. Westm. Gaz.
The Indian scene of a tiger shoot is vividly shown in these pictures. Graph., No. 2269, 846.
Compare: (He) has been good enough to invite me to Bareacres for the pheasant shooting. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 23.
talk. There was a talk of his marrying Miss Hunkle. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 23.
wait. There was a wait. Kath. Cec. Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. X, 118.
warm. Sit ye down before the fire, my dear, and have a warm, Lord bless you. Dick., Christm. Car. 5, Ill. 57.

b) the use of the indefinite article before gerunds, which also is extended to practically any verb. A few instances must suffice.

hearing. This was a delightful hearing. Dick., Cop., Ch. XXIV, 178a. (= Dutch verrukkelijk om aante hooren.) That's a bad hearing. Ib., Ch. IV, 22a.
Sullivan could scarcely obtain a hearing. Mac., Clive, (529a).
The Society is certainly to be commended for bringing a festival novelty to a hearing as quickly as possible. Athen., No. 3135, 719c. 1)
Compare: That is good hearing for those of us who [etc]. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 105a. (This seems to be the ordinary construction: the use of the article as in the two first quotations given above is infrequent.)

knocking. A knocking at the door was heard. Dick., Christm. Car. 5, II, 52.
Compare: There was a knock at the door. Buchanan, That Winter Night, Ch. III, 27.
liking. Lady Bellaston had more than once seen Sophia there since her arrival in town, and had conceived a very great liking to her. Fielding, Tom Jones, XV, Ch. II, 98b.
I began to take a liking for her very soon. Mrs. Craik, Dom. Stor., I, Ch. IV, 241.
He had taken a liking to Mrs. Aikman's new nurse. Dor. Ger., The Etern. Wom., Ch. XVII.
(I) have a liking for him, for precise statement, etc. Fowler, Conc. Oxf. Dict. (Note the variety of the prepositions with which liking is construed.)
Compare: Liking for Great Britain was not too common in the United States in the years from 1865 to 1898. Times, No. 1818, 881b. (This looks like a highly unusual construction.)

misgiving. I had a strong misgiving that his nightly absence was for no good purpose. Dick., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. I, 7a.
Compare: There is great and general misgiving about this measure. Times, No. 1823, 982d.
Note. The plural is often used instead of the singular preceded by the article. (Ch. XXV, 24. a.)
sitting. A dismal sitting it was for all parties. Thack., Pend., II, Ch. XV, 154.

wetting. It seemed doubtful whether we should escape a wetting. Times, No. 1809, 701a.

1) Ten Brug., Taalst., X, 222.
H. Poutsma, A Grammar of Late Modern English. II. 39
40. Before other abstract nouns the indefinite article is especially frequent, when the noun it modifies is:

a) the non-prepositional object or the subject of a passive sentence. In this case this noun often enters into a fixed combination with (a) particular verb(s), frequently to feel, to have and to take.

b) part of a prepositional expression, denoting either an adverbial relation or a state, or representing a prepositional object. For instances see also under in, of and with in 67, and under without in 68.

c) the subject of an active sentence. Of especial frequency is the use of the indefinite article in sentences opening with there is (was).

d) the nominal part of the predicate or a predicative adnominal adjunct.

In the following illustrations these functions are distinguished by the letters a), b), c) and d) respectively, others being marked by e). In all of them a modifying adjective furthers the use of the article. Some instances have been included of the use of the indefinite article before nouns that have assumed a more or less distinctly concrete meaning. If a collocation is given without comment, it may in general be understood to hardly allow of the alternative practice, but the available evidence has often been far too scanty to justify any reliable conclusion.

account. a) When I come again, I will demand from you a strict account. *Scott, ABBOT, Ch. II, 24.*
He kept an exact account of his salary. *MAC., CLIVE, (533a).*
He felt as if he must now render up an account to Sir Michael of the fate of that woman. *MISS BRADDON, LADY AUDLEY'S SECRET, II, Ch.XIII, 239.*
Note. Thus also to give, yield or render an account and to ask an account. But to take account.
She was absorbed in the direct, immediate experience, without any energy left for taking account of it and reasoning about it. *G. ELIOT, MILL, VI, Ch. VI, 373.*

b) i. If he condones the act of the Lords in refusing supplies, he transfers the power from himself to an authority which he cannot call to an account. *WESTM. GAZ., NO. 1207, 1b.*
ii. The only check on his tyranny was the fear of being called to account by a distant and careless government. *MAC., HIST, II, Ch. V, 200.*
Note. The use of the article in the above collocation would appear to be rare. This applies also to to turn to account and to hold to account.
These are advantages which will turn to real account. *MRS. GASK., LIFE OF CH. BRONTE, 157.*
No working-man shall be held to account for any of the proceedings which are held guiltless in Carson. *WESTM. GAZ., NO. 6383, 7b.*

acquaintance. a) i. They are opposite neighbours, and made an acquaintance through Mrs. Fundy's macaw. *THACK., A LITTLE DINNER AT TIMMINS'S, CH. I.*
The latter would have liked to make a further acquaintance. *ID., PEND., I, CH. XXXII, 346.*
ii. He had made acquaintance with him at the mess by opening the conversation.  
_id., Ch. XXIX, 314.

I made acquaintance with the farmers.  _Lytton, Caxtons_, XII, Ch. I, 307.

It was his intention to make acquaintance with the neighbours.  _ib., IV, Ch. IV, 96_

_Note_ I. The article seems to be usually absent. Thus, most probably, also after to renew, but here it is rather the definite than the indefinite article that is dispensed with.

He renewed acquaintance with some of their old comrades there.  _Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XVII, 174._

II. On the analogy of to form an alliance, a friendship etc. the article may be expected before acquaintance after to form. This is not, however, the regular practice

He formed acquaintance with the son of a scene-painter.  _Lit. World._

III. In to strike up an acquaintance ( _Fowler, Concise Oxford Dict._, s.v. strike) the article cannot, apparently, be dispensed with.

IV. Instead of the above constructions we mostly find that with a genitive or its equivalent: Where did you make my friend's acquaintance, the acquaintance of my friend, his acquaintance, etc.

Very glad to make your acquaintance.  _Dick., Nich. Nickl., Ch. V, 24._

Chance offered him an opportunity of making the acquaintance of this class of society.  _Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXX, 317._

_Obs erve also: to make the acquaintance of = to form an acquaintance with._

_Murray, s.v. acquaintance._

**ambition.**  

_b) It is only to inspire you with a proper ambition._  _Lytton, Lady of Lyons_, I, 1.

**antipathy.**  

_a) Those were books to which he had taken an antipathy._  _Ch. Kingsley, Alton Locke_, Ch. VI, 67.

She had an antipathy to doing anything useful.  _Mrs. Wood, East Lynne_, I, 17.

_Note. Compare sympathy._

**appearance.**  

_a (He only procured) a trifle occasionally by borrowing it of some old companion, or by obtaining an appearance at one or other of the commonest of the minor theatres._  _Dick., Pickw., Ch. III, 24._

All men must put in a personal appearance at the Last Assize.  _Spurgeon, (Christ Herald, 1883, 24 Oct., 235/1)._  

And you've got to put in an appearance — for party reasons?  _Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XII, 136._

_Note. Thus also to make an appearance = to put in an appearance._  _Fowler, Concise Oxford Dict._, s.v. put.

**appetite.**  

_a) Nothing like dissecting, to give one an appetite._  _Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 267._

_Note. Thus, apparently, with great regularity. Similarly in to have an appetite._

Observe, however the absence of the article in the following quotation:

Men must have appetite before they will eat.  _Buckle, Civilis., XI, 629._

b) He began to eat with an appetite.  _Dick., Little Dorrit_, Ch. I, 4a.

**aptitude.**  

_a) He had a singular aptitude for dealing with the difficulties of a crisis._  _Lit. World._

_Note. The alternative practice may be quite as usual. Compare aptness, capacity, facility and faculty._

**aptness.**  

_a) He showed amazing aptness in mastering other branches of knowledge._  _Wash. Irv., Dolf. Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 111)._  

_Note. The alternative practice may be quite as usual. Compare aptitude, capacity, facility and faculty._

**attachment.**  

_a) She has formed an attachment to another._  _Sheridan, School for Scand._, IV, 3, (412).
audience

a) i. He had a right to demand an audience of his sovereign. Jun. L ett. XL I, 2161).

She hastened to seek an audience with her protector. LY T T O N .

Mr. Balfour had an audience of the king at Buckingham Palace on Wednesday. Times , No. 1819, 893d.

ii. The Bishop retired to the Parsonage, where ... he was to give audience to the delegates. G. E L I O T , S c e n e s , III, Ch. VI, 224.

Note. In the sense of 'a formal interview granted by a superior to an inferior' (MUR RAY), audience mostly stands with the article in the above combinations. In the more abstract sense of 'the action of hearing, attention to what is spoken' (MUR RAY), it always stands without.

Then follow me and give me audience. J u l. C æ s., III, 2, 2.

These teachers easily found attentive audience. M A C ., H i s t . I, 406.1)

b) i. They came for an audience of the Queen. G r a p h .

Zara's manner was that of a sovereign graciously receiving foreigners in a private audience! E L. G L Y N , T h e R e a s o n w h y , Ch. XII, 103.

ii Lord Rosebery was received in audience by the Emperor Francis Joseph at Schönbrunn on Saturday. T i m e s , No. 1821, 938a.

He (sc. Bismarck) certainly did ask to be received by her (sc. the Empress Freder­

Note. Except for the collocation to receive in audience, the article seems to be usually employed.

aversion. a) Make her have an aversion for the booby. C O N G R E V E , L o v e f o r L o v e , II, 2, (233).

Tom had an aversion to looking at him. G. E L I O T , M i l l , II, Ch. III, 145.

awe. a) He is taller by the breadth of my nail than any of his court, which alone is enough to strike an awe into beholders. S W I F T , G u l. T r a v . , I.

Note. The alternative practice may be as common.

c) A great awe seemed to have possessed his soul. C h. K I N G S L E Y , W e s t w. H o l., Ch. XVIII, 135a.

An awe crept over Nina. L Y T T O N , R i e n z i , IV, Ch. II, 164.

blaze. b) The whole country was in a blaze. M A C ., W a r. H a s t . , (609a).

From the overgrown village (sc. Turin)... proceeded the spark which set the whole of the Italian peninsula in a blaze. R I C H . B A G O T , M y I t a l i a n Y e a r , Ch. II, 20.

breath. a) i. The gentleman drew a long breath. D I C K ., C h u z . , Ch. XXXIX, 310a.

She stopped to fetch a deep breath. D O R. G E R . , E t. W o m . , Ch. III.

She drew another breath very audibly. Ib.

There he paused and drew a long breath. K A T H. C E C I L  T H U R S T O N , J o h n C h i l c o t e , M. P., Ch. XII, 132. "

ii. Even the inhabitants of New Amsterdam began to draw short breath. W A S H . I R V I N G , K n i c k e r b . , 157. 1)

Then spoke King Arthur drawing thicker breath. T E N ., M o r t e d ' A r t h u r , 148.

Note. The construction without the article is only used when repeated action is in question. Thus also when a possessive pronoun takes its place, as in: A simple child, I that lightly draws its breath. W O R D S W O R T H , W e a r e s e v e n .

buzz. b) In a little time the whole town was in a buzz with tales about the Haunted House. W A S H . Irv., D o l f H e y l . (S T O F ., H a n d l . , I, 114).

capacity. a) i. He manifested an unsuspected capacity for adapting himself to the 'genius loci'. R e v. o f R e v . , N o. 179, 228a.

He had found a new capacity within himself. K A T H. C E C I L  T H U R S T O N , J o h n C h i l c o t e , M. P., Ch. XXV, 285.

1) M U R R AY. 2) S A T T L E R , A n g l i a , III.
ii. He appears to have shown extraordinary capacity for acclimatising himself to the American atmosphere. Rev. of Rev., No. 189, 228a.

Note. The two constructions may be of equal frequency.

c) With each yielding on her part had come new capacity for yielding. Mrs. Ward, Sir George Tres., III, Ch. XXIII, 199a.

Note. The construction with the indefinite article may be equally common.

care. a) If of life you keep a care, | Shake off slumber and beware. Temp., II, 1, 301.

Have a care, Joe; that girl is setting her cap at you. Thack., Van. Fair I, Ch. II, 24.

Have a care of him! Id., Sam. Titm., Ch. IX, 107.

Note. To keep a care is now obsolete. The article is in regular use in combination with to have, and is as regularly absent in combination with to take, as in: Take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves. Prov.

I shall take care how I let you choose for me another time. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 27.

chance. a) If a man never utters his thoughts, I should think they might stand a chance of escaping controversy. Sher., Riv., IV, 3, (266).

Note. Thus practically with any verb forming a rational combination with chance.

c) i. I think there is a (good, fair, etc.) chance of success.

ii. There is good chance that we shall hear the hounds. Ten., Mar. of Gér., 182. (The absence of the article is due to the measure.)

certainty. b) I know for a certainty what he did to bring the arm of the law upon him. Besant, The World went very well then, II, 283. 1)

Mistakes of detail ... must of a certainty occur in a story which covers so vast a field. Alice S. Green, Introd. to Green, Short Hist., 16.

d) And that they (sc. the venereal diseases) will be eventually stamped out is a certainty. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 245.

change. a) The last few years have wrought a complete change in Oxford. Escott, England, Ch. VII, 93.

b) i. This is very good for a change.

ii. He ... sick of home went overseas for change. Ten., Walking to the Mail, 18.

A proportion at least of the agriculturists are eager for change. W estm. Gaz., No. 6383, 26.

Note. The suppression of the article is exceptional.

c) A complete change had come on my whole life. Dick., Cop., Ch. XXXVI, 259a.

When the need of a change arises, then does a change come. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 283.


You may give a baby a chill which will kill it, ... without giving it fresh air at all. Flor. Nightingale, Nursing, 91. 2)

c) As he passed through the familiar entrance, a chill fell upon him. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXIII, 260.

claim. a) He had a claim indefeasible in justice to the succession. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 184.

He has a claim upon my gratitude. Roorda, Dutch and Eng. Compared, §18.

Note. The use of the article after to have seems to be as regular as its absence is after to lay.

Francis I of France laid claim to Savoy. Harmsworth Enc., s.v. Savoy.

cold. a) i. The old man caught a cold at the County-Sessions. Addison, Spect., No. 517. 2)

1) Ten Brug., Taalst., X, 222. 2) Murray.
Lady Loveit, having got a cold, had complained of some little disorder. Eliza Heywood, Betsy Thoughtless, IV, 287.

Scrooge had a cold in his head. Dick., Christmas Carol, 1, 21.

Her servant had a bad cold. W. J. Locke, The Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. II, 17.

I have got a bad cold — a fresh cold. Sweet, N. E. Gr., § 2033.

ii. You will take cold in the evening. Dick., Pickwick, Ch. VIII, 64.

I'm afraid I've caught cold. Id., Oliver Twist, Ch. XII, 276.

A woman of your years will catch cold in such abominable weather. Thack., Vanity Fair, I, Ch. IV, 29.

Note. In combination with to have the article seems to be regularly used; with to catch, to get and to take usage is variable, except when there is an adnominal modifier, as in to catch, get or take a severe cold, when the article appears to be indispensable. See also Sweet, N. E. Gr., § 2047.

comparison. a) It may be doubted whether any equal portion of the life of Hannibal, Caesar or of Napoleon, will bear a comparison with that short period. Mac., Fred., (690a).

compassion. a) i. I have a compassion for your youth. Fielding, J. S. Andr., I, Ch. VIII, 17.

ii. Have compassion on the mighty, whom love hath abased. Lane, Arab. Nts., I, 104.

Note. The article is regularly absent in the collocation to have compassion up(on) and the obsolete to take compassion (up)on. Of to have (a) compassion for no further instances have been found.

contempt. a) He had a profound contempt for Summers-Howson. Barry Pain, Culminating Point.

courage. a) i. The words of the stout burgomaster inspired a new courage in the hearts of those who heard him. Motley, Rise, IV, Ch. II, 576b.

ii. Wherever Father John appeared, help entered in the efficacious form of pecuniary assistance,...cheering words that infused courage and psychic vitality. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 132a.

Oftentimes John had to travel thousands of miles to bring relief in misfortune or inspire courage to endure it. Ib.

Note. Apparently it is the adjective which causes the indefinite article to be used. Accordingly only to take (to pluck up, to lose) courage.

deadlock. b) All things are at a deadlock. Edna Lyall, Hardy Norseman., Ch. XIX, 168.

defeat. a) i. He at last suffered a total defeat. Elphinstone, Hist. Ind., II, 108.

In that House of Commons... the Court had sustained a defeat on a vital question. Mac., Hist., II, 26.

ii. Mr. Cope Cornford draws a picture of the results that would accrue, were the Navy to suffer defeat. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 467, 495c.

Note. Murray has to suffer (sustain) a defeat, evidently the ordinary construction. It should be observed that for to suffer or sustain (a) defeat the Dutch has de nederlaag lijden.

delay. c) A delay implies a doubt. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. I, 14.

delight. a) i. He seems to take a great delight in giving me pain. Oscar Wilde, Dorian Gray, Ch. I, 21.


1) Murray.
Note. The article is, apparently, mostly suppressed. Murray mentions only to take or have delight, although he gives two quotations, dated respectively 1300 and 1569, with to have a delight.

departure. a) "Me!" said Joseph, meditating an instant departure. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 27.


As if that could have made any difference", cried she, in superb scorn. — "Ah, but it did make a difference!" Agn. & Eg. Castle, Diam. cut Paste, III, Ch. VII, 239.

** We have never had a difference. Jerome, The Master of Mrs. Chivers, I, (44).

b) Here was the toss of the head, here the pout, the flash of the eye, but with a difference. Agn. & Eg. Castle, Diam. cut Paste, II, Ch. VI, 183.

This is politics—with a difference. Westm. Gaz., No. 5173, 9a. (= Dutch heel andere politiek.)

c) It has never occurred to him that there is a difference between assertion and demonstration. Mac., Southey, (99b).


difficulty. a) i. He seemed to have a difficulty in answering this question. Roorda, Dutch and English Compared, § 18.

A difficulty may sometimes be felt in understanding how [etc.]. Geikie, Phys. Geog., IV, 232.

ii. They may find difficulty in meeting the cost of the final stage of their military training. Times, No. 1825, 1025b.

There was great difficulty in deciding about the title. Westm. Gaz., No. 6358, 12b.

Note. The article seems to be ordinarily used.

b) In difficulty a silent tongue and a cool head are usually man's best weapons. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XV, 164.

He spoke with difficulty. Ib., Ch. XXXI, 335.

In dire difficulty he laboured on. Ib.

Note. The construction with the article may be as common. Compare emergency.

d) The children, I admit, are a difficulty. Murray, s.v. difficulty, 2, a.

disadvantage. b) Our men will be at a disadvantage. Times, No. 1825, 1031a.

disgust. a) It had given him a disgust to his business. Jane Austen, Pride and Prej., Ch V, 21.

Men have a disgust for what offends their sensibilities. Webster, s.v. aversion.

dislike. a) i. He conceived a dislike to his cousin. Lyttom, Night and Morn., 29.

Mr. Featherstone had an especial dislike to him. G. Eliot, Mid., IV, Ch. XXXIV, 238.

He had a strange dislike to the Pomeranian. Edna Lyall, Don., I, 78.

It had been banished, because he had taken a strong dislike to it. Anstey, Fal. Id., Ch. IX, 128.

ii. He felt dislike at applying to a stranger even for casual information. Scott, Waverley.

Note. The article is, apparently, rarely absent. (See also page 608.)

disposition. c) There is a disposition in China to accept the...terms. Westm. Gaz., No. 6329, 2b.

Note. Compare (dis)inclination.

doubt. a) The old Sexton expressed a doubt as to Shakespeare having been born in her house. Wash. Irving, Sketch-Bk., XXVI, 262.

She had had a great doubt and terror lest Arthur should not know her. Thack., Pent., II, Ch. XV, 154.

A delay implies a doubt. Ib., I, Ch. I, 14.
ecstasy. b) i. Meg was in an ecstasy. Dick., Chimes, I, 17.

Note. The article seems to be ordinarily used.

effect. a) Every sentence was uttered with an obvious sincerity and feeling, which made a profound effect. Times, No. 1823, 974b.

embarrassment. a) My request is so out of the usual that I feel an embarrassment. Eng. Rev., 1912, Aug., 3.

emergency. b) i. Perhaps as unique a design for “raising the wind” in an emergency as could be had. Tit-bits, 1895, 2 Nov., 74b.

On an emergency he would even undertake to measure land. Smiles, Huguenots Eng., II, 22.

Keep these (sc. sovereigns) for an emergency. El. Glyn, The Reason Why, Ch. III, 23.

ii. The English officers... were not ashamed to care for them to win their friendship, even on emergency to consult their judgment. Ch. Kingsley, Westward Hol., Ch. XX, 150a.

Note. The article seems to be almost regularly used in these combinations. For in or on an emergency we also find in case of emergency, in which emergency is said by Johnson and Murray to be used catachrestically.

Ham Peggotty... had been for some days past secreted in the house... as a special messenger in case of emergency. Dick., Cop., Ch. I, 56.

enmity. a) Frederic had succeeded in producing a bitter enmity between them. Mac. Fred., (681a).

esteem. a) I really had an esteem for Mr. R. G. G. S., Life of Sheridan, 24.

exaggeration. d) It would scarcely be an exaggeration to say that it was a choice between flight or premature breakdown. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 471, 617c.

example. a) i. Christians might take an example from him for his loyalty. Scott, Fair Maid, Ch. XXIX, 309.
ii. Take example by your lady. Farquhar, Const. Couple, I, 2, (58).

Take example by this man. Ten., Queen Mary, IV, 3, (630b).

Note. Apparently the article is mostly absent. Regular is the use of the article, however, in the phrases to give (leave, set) an example. Compare also pattern.

excitement. b) Scrooge cried in great excitement: "Why, it's old Fezziwig!". Dick., Christmas Car., II, 43.

Note. The article may be common enough, compare: ecstasy, heat, rapture, transport.

expense. b) i. At a heavy expense I procured the rods. Marryat, Olla Podrida.
ii. Not so long ago a scientific study of air, water, matter and ether would have been impossible save at great expense. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 471, 622b.

Note. The omission of the article seems to be the exception.

extent. b) That did break the monotony to a certain extent. Jerome, Idle Thoughts, VI, 73.

facility. a) Having from my youth a great facility in learning languages. Swift, Gull., IV, Ch. II, (192b).

Note. The alternative construction may be equally common: compare aptitude, aptness, capacity, faculty.

faculty. a) I can hardly find any trace of my father in myself, except an inborn faculty for drawing. Huxley, Autobiogr., 5b.

In his boyhood he had a wonderful faculty for making friends. Rev. of Rev., XCIII, 84a.

Compare: One talent, however, displayed itself. The faculty of drawing he inherited from his father. Huxley, Life and Let., 1, 6.
The article. 617

fall. a) Pride will have a fall. *Bohn's* Handb. of Prov. ( = Dutch *hoogmoed komt voor den val.*)

Note. Of this proverb there are many variants and variations; all of them with the article.

Pride must have a fall. G. Eliot, *Mid*, VIII, Ch. LXXIV, 553.

Pride was sure to have a fall. Ch. Kingsley, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XV, 122a.


fancy. a) If she were to take a fancy to anybody in the house, she would soon settle. Ch. Bronte, *Villette*, Ch. I, 9.


I don't happen to have a fancy for sitting down on my own little packet of thorns. Dor. Ger., *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XVII.

farewell. a) i. *I dared not even see thee to bid thee a last farewell.* Scott, *Abbot*, Ch. VIII, 78.

Harry ran up to bid these ladies a farewell. Thack., *Virg.*, Ch. XX, 203.

He bade a warm farewell to Torpenhow at the station. Rudy. Kipl., *The Light that failed*, Ch. III, 30.

I am going to bid a long farewell to England. Mrs. Alex., *A Life Int.*, I, Ch. VI, 74.

ii. The guests then bade farewell to the travellers. *Times*, No. 1820, 924a.

Note. The article is regularly used when there is a modifying adjective; otherwise it seems to be rare.

footing. a) They (sc. the Amazons) gained a firm footing in Greek song and story through Arctinus of Miletus. Nettleship, *Dict. Clas. Antiq.*, s. v. Amazons.

b) It is difficult to see how the money can be found for maintaining the 300,000 on a war footing. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6317, 1b.

friendship. a) This poor man for whom I know you professed a friendship. Goldsm., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI. 1) (Another edition has professed friendship.)

Miss Sedley...had a friendship for Miss Sharp. Thack., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. II, 15.

frenzy. b) i. Jack knows that the least demur puts me in a frenzy directly. Sher., *Riv.*, I, 2, (222).

ii. Some hot-headed Roman Catholic, driven to frenzy by the lies of Oates. Mac., *Hist.*, I, 374. 2)

Note. In neither of the two above combinations does the alternative construction seem to be possible.


All this put the little doctor in a terrible fume. Wash. Irv., *Dolf Heyl.* (Stof., *Handl.*, I, 114).

funk. b) With all my heroism, I was in a frightful funk. M. Collins, *Transmigr.*, II, xi, 183. 2)

We encounter the miserable Dr. Blandling in what is called... a blue funk. Sat. Rev., 1861, 23 Nov. 534. 2)

Note. Slang, but very common.


Note. The article is probably often dispensed with.

grief. Mrs. Tursey's information had suggested to me a fresh grief. Jerome, *Paul Kelver*, I, Ch. I, 13b.

guard. b) The prisoner was conveyed under a strong guard to Ringwood. Mac. 1)

---

guess. b) This was a manuscript containing, at a guess, some 5,000 words. Westm. Gaz., No. 6065, 9a.

halt. a) i. They called a halt. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIV, 113a. 

Here let us make a halt. Murray.

Is it not time to call a halt? Times, No. 1842, 311c.

ii. For me, now, to cry halt... would be ridiculous. Jerome, The Master of Mrs. Chilvers, I, (38).

Note. The suppression of the article imparts to halt the character of a quoted word.

b) The cord stretched in front of the escape is designed to bring to a halt young or excitable horses. II. Lond. News, No. 3687, 880.

Seeing them come to a halt above the island. Kane. Arct. Expl., II, XV, 154. The Montenegrins appear to have been brought to a halt at Scutari. Westm. Gaz., No. 6065, 1c.

harm. a) i. Not one of them... would have gone out of his way to do it a harm. Galsworthy, The Black Godmother (Eng. Rev., Feb. 1912, 445).

ii. One would think you had received harm from the poor boy. Scott, Abbot, Ch. III, 27.

He had done no man harm all his days. W. J. Locke, Glory of Clem., Wing, Ch. III, 36.

This theory... has done incalculable harm. Eng. Rev., No. 57, 128.

Note. The use of the article seems to be uncommon. Compare wrong.

hatred. b) His heart was burning with a hatred to the whole British race. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XXXIII, 184.

Note. Probably the article is often dispensed with.

d) Her most vital trait was a hatred of conventionality. Bookman, 1893, June 86/1.


holiday. a) i. It chanced at that great English festival, at which all London takes a holiday upon Epsom Downs, that a great number of the personages to whom we have been introduced in the course of this history, were assembled to see the Derby. Thack., Pend., II, Ch. XXI, 222.

They might have a holiday in the evening. G. Eliot, Mill, II, Ch. V, 160.

In November he took a holiday. Mrs. Alex., For his Sake, II, Ch. IV, 78.

ii. Lucy shall have holiday. Mrs. Wood, East Lynne, III, 275.

To feast = to keep holiday. Murray, s. v. feast, 1, b.

To make holiday. Id., s. v. holiday, 2, c.

b) i. He had come home on a holiday. Hall Caine, Christian, I, 276.

There is also a difference between the time that you go to sleep, when you are at work or when you are on holiday. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 525b.

Note. In its primary meaning holiday is, of course, a noun denoting a defined conception. But it is often applied in an undefined sense, approximately that of vacation or leisure. Also in this application it may stand with the indefinite article: see the second quotation. For further particulars compare also Ch. XXV, 20.

horror. a) Mr. Boniface had a horror of the modern craze for rushing into all sorts of philanthropic undertakings. Edna Lyall, Hardy Nors., Ch. XIX, 173.

Mrs. Shaw seems to think that an Early Christian would have felt a profound horror about drawing a sword. Chesterton (II. Lond. News, No. 3894, 464c).

huff. b) He left the room in a huff. Roorda, Dutch and Eng. Comp., § 18.

humour. b) When I'm picaed, I'm generally in a good humour. Thack., Pend., II, Ch. I, 9.

1) Murray.
hurry. b) He could not remain passive, when all the world was in a hurry. Wash. Irv., Sketch Bk., Spectre Brideg., 155.
The brandy was too good to leave in a hurry. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 267.

Note. The expression is pronounced obsolete by Murray; who quotes only one instance dated 1601.

importance. i attach a very serious importance to what you say. W. Collins, No Name, 226.

(dis)inclination. a) Do not you feel a great inclination to seize such an opportunity? Jane Austen, Pride and Prej., Ch. X, 55.
She was obliged to assume a disinclination for seeing it. Ib., Ch. XLIII, 238.

Note. For further instances see also Ch. XIX, 53, c, page 692.

indignation. b) i. "I will try", said Arthur, in a great indignation. Thack!, Pend., 1, Ch. XXVII, 203.
ii. Lily was about to reply in great indignation. Scott, Abbot, Ch. II, 25.

Note. Usage may be equally divided.

influence. a) i. These family gatherings exerted a considerable direct influence upon European politics. Times.
I was her medical adviser, and as such I had influence over her. Con. Doyle, Sheol. Holm.
To influence = to exert influence upon. Murray, s.v. influence, v, 1 and 2.
I have always had great influence over Wilderspin. Th. Watts Dunton, Aylwin, Ch. XVI, 458.

Note. Apparently usage is equally divided as to the use of the article in these phrases.

injustice. a) You are doing Magdalen an injustice. W. Collins, No Name, 226.

insight. a) i. He had gained an insight into all sorts of affairs at home and abroad.
My knowledge of Greek language and literature, art, religion and philosophy has given me an insight into the progress of humanity. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 469, 579a.
ii. It is evident that the more familiar a sound is, the easier it is to gain insight into its mechanism. Sweet, Sounds of Eng., §24.

Note. Murray has five instances of the article being used in these or similar phrases, none of the article being absent. Hence it seems safe to assume that the omission is infrequent.

interest. a) i. I have an interest in being the first to deliver this message. Goldsm. Vicar, Ch. VIII, (282).
You have felt an interest in her. Dick., Little Dorrit, Ch. VIII, 41a.
Miss Dartie took a great interest in all our proceedings. Id., Cop., Ch. XXIV, 178a.
Where the Canadian Pacific has an interest, it usually makes things hum. II. Lond. News, No. 3815, Sup. XI.
(This) has lent an interest to the subject of the value of racehorses. Ib., 3877, 222a.
ii. Maiden aunts are apt to take great interest in affairs of this nature. Wash. Irv., Sketch-Bk., Spectre Brideg., 155.
The delightful season of the year for the country-dweller who takes interest in observing the wild things of nature is again with us. Westm. Gaz., No. 5277, 4c.
A sermon which aroused very extraordinary interest. II. Lond. News, No. 3886, 555a.
Note. Apparently these phrases appear mostly with the article. Compare also: Lord Lyons, the public servant, is, after all, the person in whom the public takes concern. Athen., No. 4487, 445a.

In a few days, my darling, I must leave you, and go upon a journey. Buchanan, That Winter Night, Ch. I, 20.
Note. Thus also before other nouns of a similar meaning.
She had gone, as on a pilgrimage, to the house at Brixton. Eng. Rev., No. 59, 199.

knack. a) I really have a knack for doing those things. Mrs. Ward, Sir George Tres., Ch. III, 21.

Knowledge. See 8, c.

leave. a) i. George came and took a tender leave of her the next morning. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIII, 133.
ii. When she took leave of me the night before starting. Mrs. Carlyle, Lett., III, 236I
Note. The article is used only when there is a modifying adjective. It may, however, be observed that, when there is no such adjective, leave is not infrequently preceded by a possessive pronoun: to take one's leave.
With an easy and careless grace the Knight of St. John took his leave. Lytton, Rienzi, II, Ch. I, 8.

lesson. a) Yesterday I had a lesson in Gothic. He gave me a lesson in Gothic.

loose. a. i. She resolved to give a loose to her amorous inclinations. Fielding, Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. IV, 12.
He gave a loose to guilty pleasure. Smollett, R. d. R. and., Ch. XXII, 150.
They have given a sudden loose to passions they could no longer control. Dick., Barn. Rudge, Ch. II, 96.
The little boy ... gave a loose to his innocent tongue. Thack., Virg., Ch. XLIII, 445.
They give a loose to their feelings on proper occasions. Id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXI, 216.
Miss Nora giving a loose to her imagination. Id. Barry Lyndon, Ch. I, 26.
ii. Young ladies should not give loose to their affections. Trol., Framl. Pars., Ch. XI, 399.
You spoke of girls giving loose to their affections. Ib., 400.
Note. This phrase, which, curiously enough, is not illustrated in Murray, appears mostly with the article. Compare also: Young ladies should not give play to their affections. Trol., Framl. Pars., Ch. XI, 400.
I could not withhold giving some loose to my inclination. Ch. Bronte, Wuthering Heights, 11.

loss. b) i. * The priest was almost at a loss what to say. Buchanan, That Winter Night, Ch. II, 15.
** The advertisement was withdrawn at a dead loss. Dick., C. op., Ch. I, 2a.
To sell anything at a loss. (Compare profit.)
Note. The phrase without the article is now obsolete.

mastery. a) He had acquired a singular mastery over every kind of disease. Walt. Besant, The World went very well then, Ch. I, 4.

1) Murray.
measure.  b) i. The decision of causes was, in a great measure, left to the equity and common sense of the judges. Hume, Es. XIII, Of Eloquence, 102. Their order was now in a great measure suppressed. Scott, Abb t, Ch. III, 41.

Nature . . . had bestowed on him, in a large measure, the talents of a captain. Mac., Fred., (662b).

ii. Mr. Southey brings to the task two faculties which were never, we believe, vouchsafed in measure so copious to any human being, the faculty of believing without a reason, and the faculty of hating without a provocation. Ib., (98b.) (Observe also the use of the article before reason and before provocation.)

His work had been in large measure successful. Westm. Gaz., No. 611, 11b.

Her (sc. Holland's) fortunes . . . are in small measure dictated by her own initiative. Ib.

Note. In the Westm. Gaz. the article is, apparently, regularly absent. Murray (s. v. measure, 14, b), however, mentions only in a great or large measure. Compare also in a measure (= in a certain measure). (8, b. 1.)

mercy.  d) It is a mercy he did not bring us over a black daughter-in-law. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 30.

It is a mercy he didn't shake his arm off. Dick., Christm. Car. 5, V, 109.


Hast thou really a mind to the service? Farquhar, Recruiting Officer, IV, I, (304).

Francois, have you a mind to escape? Dick., Advent. of a Galley Slave.

I had a good mind to ask an old man, in wire spectacles, who was breaking stones upon the road, to lend me his hammer for a little while. Dick., Cop., Ch. XXXVI, 259a.

She had almost a mind to be civil to old Bows. Thack., Pend., II, Ch. XII, 128.

I have a mind to break Mr. Sady's (sc. bones). Id., Virg., Ch. XI, 116.

Siias Marner could cure folk's rheumatism if he had a mind. G. Eliot, Sil. Mar., Oh. 1, 3.

Note. The phrase is somewhat archaic without such an adjective as good or great. Observe also the common to have half a mind.

mischief.  a) i. Don't speak to me, or I shall do you a mischief. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Hol., Ch. XIV, 125a. (= Dutch of ik bega een ongeluk aan je.)

ii. Do not believe! But I shall do thee mischief in the wood. Mids., II, 1, 237.

Note. The phrase is not mentioned by Murray and seems to be rare.

c) You must be on your guard, my poor boys — you must learn your lessons, and not anger your tutor. A mischief will come, I know it will. Thack., Virg., Ch. V, 50.

mock.  a) i. I could never forgive her for making a mock of me. Crockett, Raiders, 21. 1.

Fools make a mock at sin. Prov.

Fools who made a mock at sin. Rev. of Rev., CLXXXIX, 251b.

ii. She made mock of Lucy's personal vanity. Mrs. Ward, Dav. Grieve, III, 225.

He frankly made mock of the whole affair (sc. the Peace Conference). Rev. of Rev. CCX, 577a.

Note. To make (a) mock at, according to Murray, is now obsolete. To make a mock of is given without the variant with no article by Murray, but seems to be less common than the latter.

b) Besides it were a mock | Apt to be rendered, for some one to say, | "Break up the senate till another time, | When Caesar's wife shall meet with better dreams." Jul. Cæs., II, 2, 96.

Robin Hood . . . changes clothes with the palmer (who at first thinks the proposal a mock). Child, Ballads, III, 178/1. 1.

Note. In this combination mockery is more usual. See below.

1) Murray.
mockery. d) There's a great lord who has been saying that Old-Age Pensions are so paltry as to be but a mockery. Westm. Gaz., No. 4943, 56.

mood. b) Dear Jack!... don't say you're in a bad mood. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXII, 236.

moonlight. c) There was a moonlight. Thack., Pend., i, Ch. III, 42.

need. a) He thought there were always ways and means of getting those high characters furnished, when people had a need for them. Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col., Ch. VIII, 118.

Note. The construction used in the above quotation appears to be an unusual one; Murray not so much as mentioning it. Of to have need of, which seems to be ordinarily used instead, there is, apparently, no variant with the article.

b) Sir William of Deloraine, good at need. Scott, Lay, i, xxii.

She (sc. the country) is in urgent need of officers. Buchanan, That Winter Night, Ch. I, 16.

A friend in need is a friend indeed. Prov.

noise. a) How could he have got into the house without making a noise? Wash. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 117).

Note. Often used figuratively, as in:

Such persons as have made a noise in the world. Addis.

c) There was a noise as if some person were moving inside. Dick., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. I, 3a.

oath. a) i. They felt secure since the Sheriff of Nottingham had taken an oath to help them at need. Rob. Hood (Gruno Ser., 150).

ii. I could have made oath it was you I saw on horseback this morning. Thack., Virg., Ch. XXXVI, 373.

The councillors having made oath to denounce any one of their number who should violate the pledge [etc.]. Motley, Rise.

Rose...made oath to her soul she would rescue him. G. Meredith, Evan Harrington, Ch. XLIII, 481.

Note. To all appearance oath regularly drops the article, when used in connection with to make, and retains it, when used in combination with to take. In to take an oath the article is often replaced by a possessive pronoun.

I could take my oath he said "son". Dick., Domb., Ch. IV, 29.

objection. a) i. (He) had an objection to dramatic entertainments. Thack., Pend., Ch. VI, 69.

Ladies as a rule have an insuperable objection to showing their necks. Rid. Hag., Mr. Mees. Will, Ch. XIV, 138.

ii. Mr. Mahaffy has taken objection to the breadth of meaning I have given to the word 'motive'. Dk. Argyll, Reign Law, 426, Note.1)

To this arrangement the publishers made objection. Introd. to 1001 Gems of Eng. Poetry.

Note. Observe the use of the article before objection when combined with to have, and its absence when combined with to take and to make.

occasion. a) i. He seldom lost an occasion of wounding his feelings. Dick., Cop., Ch. VII, 47b.

ii. A mistake which had given occasion to a burst of merriment. Johnson, Rambler, No. 141.1)

I once had occasion to go there. G. Eliot, Adam Bede, i, Ch. VIII, 74.

As we had occasion to note in our last issue [etc.]. 11. Lond. News, No. 3879, 292.

Note. As a rule the article seems to be used after to lose and to be dispensed with after to give. After to have it seems to be regularly absent.

c) There would be an occasion for humour, if it were not an opportunity for indignation. Beath. Haraudkn, Ships, i, Ch. IX, 35.

1) Murray.
opportunity. a) i. I shall take an early opportunity of mentioning it to the Board. Dick., Old Twist, Ch. II, 25.

You have an opportunity that can never come again. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXXIV, 368.

Lilian was not the woman to lose an opportunity, whether the space at her command was long or short. Ib., Ch. XXVIII, 306.

The problem of the play (sc. Much Ado about Nothing) is not to show that the two scoffers are in love with each other... but to find an opportunity which will force them to admit their love. Athen., No. 4477, 165c.

ii. We must give them opportunity to speak together. Scott, Abbots, Ch. X, 97.

Lawrence had not opportunity to show in actual result the greatness of spirit that was in him. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 16.

It was not until half an hour after the votes had been taken that Loder...found opportunity to look for Eve. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXV, 282.

I desire to express my thanks to my kinsman, Lord Coleridge, for opportunity kindly afforded me of collating the text of the fragments... with the original MSS. E. H. Coleridge, Pref. to the Poems of S. T. Col.

Note. In these combinations the article is not usually absent. For further instances and for a comparison with the construction with the definite article see 73.


When opportunity offers. G. Meredith, Ord. of Rich. Fev., Ch. XXXIV, 305.

If opportunity serves. Times.

option. a) The tastes and interests of Frederic would have led him, if he had been allowed an option, to side with the house of Bourbon. Mac., Fred., (687b).

order. b) i. * Her talents and accomplishments are of a high order. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 15.

He has by an Order in Council, been promoted to the rank of an Admiral of the Fleet. Times, 1898, 761d.

ii. The promotion of Admiral Richards, by special Order in Council, is a peculiarly significant recognition of his services to the Navy. Ib.

The Prime Minister told the House that provision would be made by Order in Council for delegating the exercise of certain of the executive functions of the Crown during his Majesty’s absence. Times, No. 1819, 900c.

Note. The article seems to be ordinarily absent before Order in Council.

pace. b) The old man proceeded at a measured pace. Wash. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 122).

The old man...walked on at a slow pace. Dick., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. I, 6b.

I walked at a sharp pace. Th. Watts Dunton, Aylwin, II, Ch. VI, 90.

Note. Compare run, step and trot.

panic. b) i. All the inhabitants turned out in a panic. Wash. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 102).

If the Government yielded in a panic on this question, it is highly probable [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 6359, 2a.

ii. Caesar’s soldiers were seized with panic. Froude, Caesar, XXII, 382.1)

The sound filled her with panic. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXXIII, 360.

For one or two days Calcutta was a prey to mere panic. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 177.

Note. The article seems to stand after in and to be dispensed with after other prepositions.

1) Murray.
c) If he ever showed a little impatience, it was only where panic would too openly have proclaimed itself by counsels of wholesale cruelty. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 178.

**Pardon. a) He received a pardon at once. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 317. (Pardon to be understood in the sense of remission of the legal consequences of crime, Dutch kwijtschelding van straf.)

Note. From what evidence there is in Murray, it may be concluded that the article is rarely absent.

**Part. a) i. * It is also unquestionable that the transactions in which he now began to take a part, have left a stain on his moral character. Mac., Clive, (515a).

Lord Kitchener took a leading part in giving effect to a very important political reform in Egypt. II. Lond. News, No. 3876, 187a.

He has played an active part in the saving of a hundred lives from shipwreck. Punch, 1896, 111.

Germany has decided ... that it will not take a part in the Panama Exhibition. Westm. Gaz., No. 6311, 26.

** It was well known that she had deeply regretted some violent acts in which her husband had borne a part. Mac., Hist., II, Ch. V, 206.

In these conferences Rumbold had borne a part from which [etc.]. Ib., II, Ch. V, 98.

He had borne a part in the movement. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 814.

ii. * On the morrow commenced that long quarrel... in which all the most eminent statesmen and orators of the age took active part on one or the Other side. Mac., War. Hast, (612a).

Many had given up a successful career to take part in what they were led to believe would be the great national uprising of the Irish people. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 316.

The Princess Louisa took part in three public ceremonies at Oxford on May 25. Times.

I know that the consciousness can leave the body, take part in events going on at a distance. Annie Besant, Autobiography, 26.

** The tragedy in which they bore part cost many an agony of tears. Ib., 27.

Note. Murray has to take part, always without the article (His definition of to partake, however, is to take a part in), and to bear a part, always with the article, and this most probably represents the ordinary practice. Only the article is rarely dispensed with in the first combination, when part is accompanied by an adjective: to take an active (leading, etc.) part. See, however, the quotation from Macaulay.

**Passion. b) At which words she flew into a violent passion. Field., Jos. Andr., I, Ch. VIII, 19.

I know you are in a passion. Sher., Riv., II, 1.

If he ever flagged in his industry, the doctor would fly into a passion. Wash.Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stor., Handl., I, 109).

**Pattern. The Commissioners of Police might take pattern by Berlin. Punch.

To take a leaf out of a person's book = to take pattern from him. Murray, s.v. book, 15.

Note. Compare to take (an) example.

**Pause. a) Here Master Wingate made a pause. Scott, Abbott, Ch. IV, 44.

b) "How could you do so, Rebecca?" at last she said, after a pause. Thack., Van. Fair, 1, Ch. II, 9.

c) Here there was a pause. Id., Ch. II, 22.

After he spoke, there was a prolonged pause. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXVI, 292.

There was a fresh pause. Ib., Ch. XXXI, 339.

**Perspiration. b) The waiter is in a cold perspiration and well-nigh desperate. James Payn, Glow-Worm Tales, II, A, 13.
pinch. b) Each of them could *at a pinch* stand in the shoes of the other. *Emerson, Eng. Traits, Ability*, 100b.

It will be found that, when it comes *to a pinch*, we shall always give in. *Rev. of Rev.*

pity. d) *It is a pity* you can't come.

I call it *a pity* that such talents should lie idle.

Note. Formerly, and archaically in Present English, without the article. *Franz, Sh. Gr.*, § 276, Anm.; *Murray, s.v. pity; Uhrström, Stud. on the Lang. of S. Richardson, 41.*

That were pity. *Merc. of Ven.*, II, 2, 209.

'Tis great pity he's so extravagant. *Sher., School for Scand.*, IV, 2, (407).

'Tis pity her temper is something particular. *Scott, Qu. Durw.*, Ch. XXIII, 293.

'Tis pity learned virgins ever wed | With persons of no sort of education. *Byron, Don Juan*, I, xxii.

'Tis pity though, in this sublime world, that | Pleasure's a sin, and sometimes sin's | a pleasure. *Id.*, I, cxxxiii.

That were pity. *Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Hol.*, Ch. II, 18a.

And pity that would be. *Id., Herew. Ch. II*, 24b.

pleasure. a) i. They seemed to take a pleasure in indulging that forenoon in a luxury of slovenliness. *Ch. Bronte, Villette*, Ch. XIV, 160.

i took a pleasure in extracting the young fellow's secrets from him. *Thack., Newc.*, II, Ch. III, 26.

He had a strange pleasure in venturing his person. *Mac., Hist.*, III, Ch. VII, 7.

Mrs. Fursey took a pleasure in the phrases. *Jerome, Paul Kelver*, Ch. I, 15a.

ii. (He) takes pleasure in rearing and collecting birds. *Webst., s.v. bird-fancier.*

He must pass the night in an abominable tight mail-coach, instead of taking pleasure. In some of the most agreeable and select society in England. *Thack., Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 15.

No Liberal certainly can take pleasure in the fact that an increase in the Navy has been found necessary for national security. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4931, 2a.

I had great pleasure in hearing Mr. Brough, in a magnificent speech, declare a dividend of six per cent. *Thack., Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 84.


He contrived to deliver himself in uncompromising terms which gave sincere pleasure to Radicals. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6353, 1b.

Note. *Murray* has to take pleasure and to take a pleasure, and gives two illustrative quotations, both with the article. But there can be little doubt that in this and similar combinations the article is mostly absent, even when there is a modifying adjective.

pride. a) i. I had a new pride in my rooms after his approval of them. *Dick., C. O.*, Ch. XXIV, 178b.

ii. She took great pride in her descent from them. *Thack., Van Fair*, I, Ch. II, 11.

Their dialect is uncouth, but they take pride in it. *Scott, England*, Ch. VI, 80.

Note. *Murray* mentions only to take a pride, but in his only illustrative quotation bearing on the subject, pride stands without the article.

profit. b) He was always buying things and selling them *at a profit*. *Besant, Bell of St. Paul's*, I, 71.

Note. Compare loss.

propensity. a) He had a propensity for saving. *Ch. Bronte, Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 28.

protest. a) The British Ambassador has lodged a protest with the Porte against the
passage of four torpedoboat destroyers through the Dardanelles to the Black Sea.

quarrel. a) It was clear that the Emperor was resolved to have a quarrel. McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XXIV, 372.

Note. Thus also regularly with the article: to pick a quarrel.

question. c) There was always a question about James's courage. THACK., The four Georges, II, 34.

rage. b) "You impudent villain!" cries the lady in a rage. FIELD., Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. VIII, 19.

rapture. b) i. Toby took the shortest possible sniff at the edge of the basket, and cried out in a rapture: "Why, it's hot." Dick., Chimes, I, 16.

Note. Usage may be equally divided. Compare ecstasy.

reason. a) i. They found a reason for dethroning him. McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 183.

ii. I had good reason to hope that I was being of use at Roost. F. E. Paget, Curate Cumberworth, I, No. 58, 191.

Whether he liked it (sc. the nickname) or not, we adopted it with rapture. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 191.

Who can look without rapture on the beautiful proportions of the horse? lb., 261.

Note. Usage may be equally divided.

c) There is reason to believe that [etc.]. MAC., War. Hast., (607a).

regard. a) I have a regard for Miss Richland. GODSM., Good-natured man, II.

i. I have conceived a great regard for Jinkins. DICK., Chuz., Ch. IX, 696.

ii. I had a regard for Mr. Eustace Meeson. RID. HAG., Mr. Meeson's Will, Ch. XXI, 223.

For the head-master, Dr. Drury, he conceived a strong regard. TOZER, Introd. to Byron's Childe Har.

b) In the death of Laertes we are warned against suffering our passions perfidiously to lead us to seek a secret revenge without a regard to either justice or our own honour. Westm. Gaz., No. 6353, 7a.

Note. This seems to be an exceptional use of the article: it is not recorded by MURRAY (s. v. regard 8, b). Compare respect.

c) A regard for truth forbids us to do more than claim the merit of their (sc. of these adventures) judicious arrangement and impartial arrangement. DICK., Pickw., Ch. IV, 30.

reluctance. a) He felt a reluctance to ask the support of the Newcastle family. McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. X, 129.

repugnance. a) i. She had an extraordinary repugnance to dining in company. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. V, 28a.

ii. Scott felt considerable repugnance to acting in any such matter with Whigs and Radicals. LOCKH., Life of Sir Walt Scott, Ch. VI, 572.

Note. The ordinary practice most probably is to use the article in these combinations.

rescue. a) The prisoners only meditated a rescue. McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 317.

resemblance. a) In some respects he (sc. Edmund Gosse) bears a curious resemblance to Andrew Lang. BOOKMAN, No. 261, 112a.

1) MURRAY, s. v. reason, 86.
resistance.  a) It was the bounden duty of the Opposition to offer a determined and continuous resistance to this proposal. *Times.*

Methuen reports that the party defeated on 5 April, made a good resistance for four hours. *ib.*

The Spaniards opposed a stubborn resistance. *ib.*

The rebels offered a stout resistance. *ib.* No. 1819, 899d.

(dis)respect.  a) i. I have a particular respect for three or four high-backed claw-footed chairs. *Wash. IRVING, Sketch-Bk., XXV, 243.*

He had a high respect for native sagacity. *Dick., C. o. p., Ch. IV, 28b.*

She thought Mr. Riley would have a respect for her now. *G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. III, 11.*

Human nature is so constituted that it can pay a respect to religious conviction. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6347, 1b.


He was incapable of... supposing that she meant intentional disrespect to him. *Scott, A b b o t, Ch. III, 37.*

Note. The use of the article appears to be practically regular. In the quotation from *SHAKESPEARE* its absence may be due to the demands of the metre. Compare regard.

revenge.  a) i. She felt quite sure that he had offended some of his examiners, who had taken a mean revenge on him. *Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXI, 216.*

ii. Taking revenge too deep for a transient wrong. *Ten., Maud, I, III.*

Note. The article is, apparently, only used when there is a modifying adjective.

reverence.  b) She spoke of Mr. Pendennis...with an awful reverence. *Thack., Pend. I, Ch. II, 24.*

risk.  a) He lost all he had in the world and... run a narrow risk of being hanged. *Scott (LOCKHARDT, Life of Sir W. Scott, I, I, 3.)*

Whatever accommodation he can have, which infers not a risk of discovery,... it is our duty to afford him. *Scott, M on., Ch. XVI, 194.*

Note. The indefinite article varies with the definite. No instances of either article being absent have been found.

Why am I to run the risk of scarlet fever being brought into the house. *F. E. PAGET, Pageant, 38.*

c) There was risk that the lawful owner might have parted company therewith (sc. that chain). *Scott, M on., Ch. XVIII, 205.*

There would be great risk of a lamentable change in the character of our public men. *Mac. Hist., III, I, 310.*

d) Suppose the likeness should leak out? It's a risk. *Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. VI, 69.*

run.  b) She came back at a run to meet him. *Westm. Gaz., No. 4983, 2c.*

Note. Compare pace, step, and trot.

scale.  b) There is nothing so troublesome as a hero on a small scale. *Wash. Irv., Dolf Heyl (Stof., Handl., I, 110).*

sensation.  a) His little expeditions to his lands were attended with a bustle and parade that created a sensation throughout the neighbourhood. *Wash. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl. I, 109).*

His death created a profound sensation. *McCarthy, Hist. of Our Own Times, III, xliv, 333.*


c) A slight sensation was perceptible in the body of the court. *Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXXIV, 307.*

shame.  d) i. * It were a shame to call her back again. *Two Gentlem., I, 2, 51.*

** Some shook their heads; and thought it a shame that the Doctor should put

1) *Murray.*
Dolf to pass the night alone in that dismal house. Wash. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 120).

**Shame** were it to accept the praise of other men's labours. Scott, Mon., Ch. XXXIV, 366.

It were *shame* to our profession, were we to suffer it. Id., Ivanhoe, Ch. XL, 416.

It were *shame* to think otherwise of a form so noble. Id., Abbot, Ch. III, 28.

**Men** thought it *shame* to dwell at such a time under the shadow of a house. Freeman, Norm. Conq. IV, xviii, 187.

Note. The construction without the article survives only as a literary archaism. Conversely there is never an article in other phrases, such as *to have shame* (poetic), *to take shame* (to, unto, or upon oneself), *to put to shame*. *I take shame* to say, that [etc.]. Scott, Kenilw., Ch. XV, 176.

You ought to *take shame!* Arnold Bennett, Hilda Lessways, I, Ch. II, 21.

**No** young woman of this year has come near her: those of the past seasons she has distanced, and utterly put to shame. Thack., Newc., II, Ch. III, 26.

**share.** *a)* It is certain that he was never charged with having borne a share in the worst abuses which then prevailed. Mac., War. Hist., (5996).

Note. Thus also *to have* and *to take a share.* The indefinite article is sometimes replaced by a possessive pronoun. Murray, s. v. share, 3.

**shift.** *a)* I. That's just the place where I could make a shift to do without it (sc. honour). Sher., Riv., IV, I, (256).

He could make a shift to express himself intelligibly enough to King Louis. Scott, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXXVII, 468.

ii. By my other labours I can make shift to eat and drink and have good clothes. Goldsmith (R. Ashe King, O1. Goldsm., Ch. XI, 123).

I could make shift to chalk a little bit. Dick., Domb., Ch. II, 16.

Note. The absence of the article seems to be the exception.

**show.** *a)* I made a show of arranging my papers. Jerome, Novel Notes.

**sight.** *a)* i. In his eagerness to catch a sight of the unknown, he flared his feeble candle so suddenly, that it went out. Wash. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 121).


ii. The trainbands had caught sight of his well-known face. Mac., Hist., I, 580.

She sent up a shriek as soon as she caught sight of it. John Oxenham, Great-hearted Gillian, Ch. II, 19.

Note. Murray (s. v. catch, 46) distinguishes between to catch a sight of (= to get a momentary or sudden view of), and to catch sight of (= to come abruptly in view of, to see all at once). There is not, apparently, a variant with the article of the phrases to lose sight and to have sight of. Murray, s. v. sight, II, 4, c. Compare also 63.

**silence.** *c)* i. There was a silence. Ch. Kingsley, Herew., Ch. XIV, 62a.

There was a silence. Kath. Cecil Thurston, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XI, 119; Ib., Ch. XV, 167; Ib., Ch. XVII, 178; etc.

There was a long silence. Ib., Ch. XXXIV, 365.

Again a painful silence filled the room. Ib., Ch. XXXIII, 353.

ii. During the first few moments of the drive there was silence. Ib., Ch. XIII, 144; Ib., Ch. XV, 163; etc.

There was silence for a few minutes. Wil. J. Locke, The Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. I, 9.

Note. After there is usage seems to be equally divided, when there is no modifying adjective. After a preposition there is no article: In grim silence (she) returned home. Arn. Bennett, Hilda Lessways, I, Ch. III, 1, 25.

1) Murray, s. v. shame, 9. 2) Murray, s. v. catch, 46.
sin.  d) I always had a great mind to tell lies; but they frightened me, and said that it was a sin. CONGREVE, _Love for Love_, II, 2, (237).

'Tis pity though, in this sublime world, that Pleasure's a sin, and sometimes sin's a pleasure. BYRON, _Don Juan_, I, cxxiii.

'Twould be a sin and a shame, if we let her go dirty now she's ill. MRS. GASK., _Mary Barton_, Ch. XIX, 202.

skill.  a) i. He had a wonderful skill in grazing the edge of treason. MAC., _Hist._, II, Ch. V, 95.

ii. This author...had good skill in the feeding and ordering of singing-birds. RAY, _Corr._, 122.

Note. Usage may be equally divided.

spirit.  a) These words infused a spirit into Joseph. FIELDING, _JOS. Andrews_, I, Ch. XV, 39.

spite.  a) He seemed to have a spite to Mrs. Gashleigh. THACK., _A little dinner at Timmins's_, Ch. VI, (339).

stand.  a) I suddenly made a stand, lest it (sc. the hill) should fall on my head. BUNYAN, _Pilg. Prog._, (153).

Sigtryp...made a stand against the Cornish. CH. KINGSLEY, _Herew._, Ch. V, 38b.

The Turks are unable to make a stand at this point. WEstm. Gaz., No. 6071, 1b.

b) Now was Christian somewhat at a stand. BUNYAN, _Pilg. Prog._, (152).

The business of the Exchange was at a stand. MAC., _Hist._, II, Ch. V, 335.

It is certain that there is a point at which sympathy with drivers who pass signals must come to a stand. WEstm. Gaz., No. 6377, 2c.

standstill.  b) Everything is at a standstill. EDNA LYALL, _Hardy Norsem._, Ch. X, 85.

The trade of the city is at a standstill. WEstm. Gaz., No. 6353, 1c.

(This) is to bring the House to a standstill. Ib., No. 6347, 7b.

The negotiations between the two Powers have been brought to a standstill. Ib., No. 4937, 1a.

stir.  a) i. The report created a great stir. _Times_.

Mr. Keir Hardie tried to make a stir on behalf of the natives of India. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 287.

ii. There are two annual events which produce great stir and sensation in Little Britain. WASH. IRV., _Sketch-Bk._, XXV, 249.

Note. In the last quotation the absence of the article is probably due to the coupling of the two nouns together.

success.  a) They rejoiced when the Americans won a success. _Times_.

suspicion.  a) She had conceived a suspicion at her last interview with her mistress. FIELD., _JOS. Andr._, I, Ch. VIII, 19.

sympathy.  I feel a mysterious sympathy with the tumult of nature. DICK., _Barn. Rudge_, Ch. II, 9b.

My knowledge of Greek language and literature, art, religion and philosophy, has given me...a sympathy with their (sc. humanity's) sorrows and aspirations. T. P.'s _Weekly_, No. 469, 578a. (See also the last quotation under stand and compare antipathy.)

talent.  a) He had a natural talent at pleasing the fair sex. WASH. IRV., _Dolf Heyl._ (STOF., _Handl._, I, 112).

She had a rare and surprising talent for getting the baby into difficulties. DICK., _Crick._, I, 12.

thankfulness. My first thought was a great thankfulness. KATH. CEC. THURSTON, _John Chilcote_, M. P., Ch. XXXI, 339.

Note. It may be assumed that the use of the article is exceptional.
these threads are of an even thickness. Roorda, Dutch and Eng. Comp., § 19.

thirst. b) i. Better discipline might have converted this desire of amusement into a thirst for knowledge. Scott, Wav., Ch. III, 31a.

ii. It may be distinctly traced... either to thirst for money or to thirst for blood. Mac., Hist., V, 1, 657. 1)

Note. Usage may be divided.


train. b) Everything was soon in a fair train. Jane Austen, Mansfield Park, Ch. VII, 67.

trial. a) i. I intend to make a trial of their hearts. Sher., School for Scand., II, 3, (386).

He has strongly recommended me to make a trial of your goods. Bus. Let. Writer, I.

ii. I had a letter from her telling me that I could take three orphan girls of hers to the coast during the holidays, and then make trial of a situation with her as a teacher. G. Eliot, Mill, VI, Ch. IX, 405.

The temper of the man moves him to conceal for the present the reason which he has, that he may make trial of Enid’s love and submission to his desires. G. C. Mac., Note to Ten.’s Mar. of Ger., 761.

Note. The construction with the indefinite article is probably the ordinary one. Compare also: Well, well, make the trial if you please. Sher., School for Scand., III, 1, (388).

trot. b) You may see her on a little squat pony... puffing round the Ring on a full trot. Sher., School for Scand., II, 2, (380).

He went away at a trot into the woods. Buchanan, That Winter Night, Ch. V, 49.

He put his horse to a brisk trot. Black’s Sir Walt Scott’s Read., Rob Roy, 22.

Note. Compare pace, run and step.

turn. a) Mr. Eugenius Maunder had a turn for oils. James Payn, Glow-Worm Tales, I, B, 40.

uproar. b) All the district was in an uproar. Buchanan, That Winter Night, Ch. III, 30.

use. a) i. Give me back nine pounds, Jane, I’ve a use for it. Ch. Bronte, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXI, 274.

To find a use for banana-skins. Fowler, Concise Oxf. Dict.

ii. He made good use of his wealth. Wash. Irr., Dolf Heyl. (Stop., Handl., I, 152).


He made use of a quibble. Pray make use of my telephone. Fowler, Concise Oxf. Dict.

value. a) It is not surprising then that such talents should win the affections of a girl who by education was taught to value an appearance in herself and, consequently, to set a value upon it in another. Goldsm., Vic., Ch. VII, (272).

Friends on whose opinions I set a high value. Tozer, Intr. to Childe Har., 49.

Some fathers set too great a value on books. H. J. Byron, Our Boys.
vengeance. a) i. An English army came to their assistance to take a terrible vengeance upon Cawnpore, McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 186.

ii. He threatened vengeance on any one who should deprecate his property. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Hand., I, 114).

"My attachment to your person, sir" said Mr. Tupman... "is great — very great — but upon that person I must take summary vengeance. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XV, 130.

(They were) drinking freely at the expense of the peasantry and vowing dire vengeance against the enemy. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. V, 45.

Note. The use of the article seems to be rather the exception than the rule.

venture. b) A quack prescribes at a venture. GOLDSMITH (RICH. ASH KING, Ol. Goldsm., Ch. IV, 51).

visit. b) Mr. A.... is assisting his wife to show a book of photographic portraits to a girl on a visit. PUNCH.

welcome. a) They gave me a most cordial welcome. POE., Gold-bug. (NAUTA, Stories, I, 79).

She gave a kind welcome to the stranger. Story of Rob Roy, 4.

Note. The article is regularly absent in the phrases to bid welcome and to make welcome, in which however, welcome is not felt as a pure noun.

All who cared to come were made welcome. M. S. FRANCIS, The Manor Farm, Ch. XII.

will. b) "Now, then!" roared Amyas, "Fire, and with a will!" CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XX, 151b.

If I had a chance to better myself, I would go with a good will. STEVENSON, Kidnapped, 10.

The Pension Officers have all worked with a will. Westm. Gaz.

wind. c) There had been a wind all day. DICK., Cоп., Ch. LV, 392a.

witness. a) i. The list of additions to the Department of Manuscripts in the British Museum during the five years 1906—10 bears a witness to the growing scarcity and rise in price of fine manuscripts by the very small number of them it contains. Athen., No. 4448, 91a.

ii. (The shadows beneath his eyes) bore witness to the sleepless night spent in pacing Chilcote's vast and lonely room. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXVI, 289.

Note. The construction with the article is the exception.

c) There is witness to a regular and periodical migration. Westm. Gaz., No. 6329, 4c.

d) That any child should be branded as illegitimate is, in itself, witness to the inadequacy of our moral code. ENG. REV., No. 58, 282.

wrong. i. Who does this, does a wrong. DICK., Chimes³, III, 72.

She was scrupulous in her devotions, good to the poor, never knowingly did anybody a wrong. THACK., Virg., Ch. IV, 34.

I find I have done you a wrong. Ib., Ch. XI, 116.

ii. You have done us wrong. DICK., Chimes³, III, 73.

Note I. The use of the article appears to be very common. It is useful to compare the above quotations with the following, in which not a single but a repeated phenomenon is referred to, and in which, consequently, there is no occasion for the use of the article.

She had suffered great wrong in some of the frequent forays. SCOTT, ABBOT, Ch. II, 25.

If I sustained wrong from those you loved and favoured, was I to disturb your place with idle tale-bearing and eternal complaints? Ib., Ch. V, 59.

ii. The article does not appear to be ever used, when the word is not used in the meaning of injustice, as in the above sentences.

I have done wrong in loving this poor orphan lad more than other of his class. SCOTT, ABBOT, Ch. IV, 49.
He meant to punish her when she did wrong. G. ELIOT, MIlI, I, Ch. V, 32.

zest. a) i. This adds a zest to [etc.]. FOWLER, Concise Oxf. Dict.
  He has an amazing zest for social pleasure. G r a p h ., No. 2278, 880a.
  ii. She tasted a condiment which gave it (sc. the heavy festal mass) zest.
  CH. BRONTE, Vi l l e t t e, Ch. XIV, 176.

Note. Usage may be equally divided.

41. The indefinite article is also usual:

a) before the names of certain disorders, especially:

  1) ache and compounds of ache. For instances of the indefinite article being absent or being replaced by the definite article see 35, b.

* He was not put into better humour either, by the reflection that he had taken it into his head, early in the evening, to think he had got an ache there, and so stopped at home. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXVI, 336.
  ** They awoke with a headache. J A N E A U S T E N, M a n s f i e l d Park, Ch. IX, 90. (The same writer repeatedly has the headache.)
  One day, Amelia had a headache. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 26.
  The mildest form of hysteria often ends in laughter and tears together, and is followed by a headache and a sleep. H a r m s w o r t h Enc., s. v. Hysteria.

  2) fever. Compare 35, b.

  But Simon's wife's mother lay sick of a fever. B i b l e, M a r k, I, 30.
  Master Ribstone coming home for the Christmas holidays from Eton, over-ate himself and had a fever. THACK., P e n d., I, Ch. II, 16.
  The lady... caught cold, took a fever, and died after a very brief illness. CH. BRONTE, V i l l e t t e, Ch. XXII, 237.
  To watch with a man in a fever. W E B S T., s. v. watch.
  Astrupp had caught a fever in Florence. K A T H. C E C I L T H U R S T O N, J o h n C h i l c o t e, M. P., XXII, 237.

  3) those illustrated in the following quotations:

  dropsy. There he found himself ill at ease, and no doubt, but in time would have died of a dropsy. E L I Z. M O N T A G U, L e t t e r s (W e s t m. G a z ., No. 5201, 5e).
  rheumatism. (He) has been up all night with a rheumatism. THACK., P e n d ., I, Ch. VII, 79.

Note. In this connection it may be observed that sore throat is sometimes felt as an abstract noun, as is shown by its discarding the article.

  These old-fashioned precautions will not prevent us from catching sore throat. I I. L o n d. N e w s, No. 3834, 543a.
  Every one recognizes (these) as the symptoms of sore throat. Ib. Compare: This fact should made every one careful never to neglect a sore throat. Ib.

b) before time and distance, when preceded by short or long, or adjectives of like import.

  i. * In a little time the whole town was in a buzz with tales about the Haunted House. W A S H. I R V., D o l f H e y l. (S T O F., H a n d l., I, 114).
The last wolf that has roamed our island had been slain in Scotland a short time before the close of the reign of Charles the Second. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. III, 307.

In Kensal Rise there have been two particularly atrocious murders committed within a short time. Times (= korten tijd na elkaar.)

** At a safe distance from the scene of the action. Willock, Voy., 305.

Neiss...is only at a short distance from the Austrian frontier. Thack., Barry Lyndon, Ch. VI, 95.

d) in some salutations and imprecations. Compare 24.

42. Practice is variable as to the use of the indefinite article before abstract nouns after the determinative such (Ch. XXXVII, 7 ff.) and the exclamatory what (Ch. XXXVIII, 10 ff.).

There is not, apparently, any principle by which the use or omission of the indefinite article in this position is conditioned, beyond, perhaps, that of rhythm or euphony. Before some nouns, such as change, pity and shame, the article is, however, rarely dispensed with. Compare also Mätzner, Eng. Gram., III, 195 and 281; Ellinger, Verm. Beitr., 39.
i. * The storm continued with such fury, that the seamen themselves acknowledged they had never known a worse. Defoe, Rob. Crusoe, 10.

To me it was not easy to sleep after a day of such excitement. Ch. Bronte, Villette, Ch. XIV, 190.

All of which ornaments set off this young fellow's figure to such advantage that [etc]. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. III, 41.

It is a shame to speak with such levity about the character of ladies. Id., Virg., Ch. XXXI, 317.

Such sudden and violent revenge would not have been thought strange in Scotland. Mac., Hist., II, Ch. V, 146.

I felt such delight at the prospect of the day before me, that I forgot all my scruples. Sweet, Old Chapel.

What! me spend a month's meal and meat and fire on such vanity as that! Ch. Reade, The Cloister and the Hearth, Ch. I, 7.

Mr. Roosevelt is not to see the Pope. That is such bad business for the Vatican that the decision to say "No" almost extorts admiration. Westm. Gaz., No. 5277, 2a.

To such extravagance does the political temper of the Protectionist lead! Ib., No. 5386, 1c.

There was nothing in his long and splendid range of parts, which brought him out to such advantage. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 474, 713c.

** Such a bustle ensued, that you might have thought a goose the rarest of all birds. Dick., Christm. Car., III, 67.

Lady Clavering was in such a good humour that Sir Francis even benefited by it. Thack., Pend., II, Ch. XXXVIII, 390.

Gracious God, who was he, weak and friendless creature, that such a love should be poured out upon him? Id., Henry Esmond, II, Ch. VI, 203.

There is no sin in such a love as mine now. Ib., 204.

The aforesaid Martin, whom Arthur had taken such a fancy for, was one of those unfortunates [etc]. Hughes, Tom Brown, II, Ch. III, 237.

ii. * What affection in her words, what compassion in her repressed tears! Dick., Little Dorrit, Ch. IX, 50b.

What native acuteness in the stealthy eye! What hardened resolve in the full nostril and firm lips! What sardonic contempt for all things in the intricate lines about the mouth! Lytton, Night and Morning, 321.

How the mother looks into the doctor's eyes! What thanks if there is light there; what grief and pain, if he casts them down and dares not say "hope"! Thack., Pend., II, Ch. XV, 155.

Any one can guess with what exultation we gôt off the dusty road. Sweet, Old Chapel.

At the mention of it (sc. the Old Chapel) we jumped up and said "What a place! and what weather!" Ib.

What taste! what perfection! Agn. & Eg. Castle, Diam. cut Paste, II, Ch. IV, 150.

** What a shame! ah, what a fault were this! Henry VI, C, V, 12.

What a pity the carriage should break down in such a spot! Lytton, Lady of Lyons, III, 1.

What a change between to-day and yesterday! Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VIII, 75.

What a life! Mrs. Craik, Dom. Stor., I, Ch. IV, 24.

What a happiness! Dick., Chuz., Ch. XXXIII, 216a.

What a happiness it would be to set the pattern about here! G. Eliot, Mïd., I, Ch. III, 20.

Note. Before the names of substances the indefinite article seems to be regularly absent after both such and what.
THE ARTICLE.

I never tasted such wine before.

What capital wine! Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIII, 131.

II. For the use of the indefinite article before a plural preceded by a numeral, or by what or such see Ch. XXVI, 17.

SUPPRESSION OF THE ARTICLE BEFORE NOUNS IN CERTAIN GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS IN WHICH THEIR MEANING IS MODIFIED.

43. In certain functions common nouns, assume to a certain extent the character of proper names, and, consequently reject the article more or less regularly.

This is the case:

a) when they are used in address. Compare Sweet, N. E. Gr., § 2056.


That's your own fault, mistress. Ib., I, 2, (164a).

I beg, captain, you'll be seated. Sheridan, Rivals, III, 3.

"Yes, Lady," said the boy. Scott, A b b o t, Ch. III, 27.

I do know the reason, Prince. Max Pemb., Doctor Xavier, VI, 29a.

You cannot regret as he regrets, Highness. Ib.

Here is your rose, pet, and I only hope it is the shade you wanted. Westm. Gaz., No. 6311, 3c.

It ought to take your headache away, darling, it is so lovely. Ib.

I have something to say to you, child. Punch, No. 3759, 88a.

Don't buy clothes for me, woman. Ib.

Note. Shakespeare sometimes had the definite article before a vocative. Compare Franz, Shak. Gram. § 261. Occasional instances may occur in later English.

The Gods! it smites me | Beneath the fall | I have. Ant. and Cleop., V, 2, 171.

The last of all the Romans, fare thee well! Jul. Cæs., V, 3, 99.

Sleep thou — the persecuted, the disinherited orphan — the son of an ill-fated mother — sleep thou! Scott, A b b o t, Ch. VIII, 83.

b) when they are used as appositions of the third kind. (Ch. IV, 12 ff.)

The precious stone beryl is unique among minerals. Daily Mail.

c) when they stand after appositional or specializing of. (Ch. IV, 4, Obs. IV.)

1) In this position some are also found with the indefinite article, the variable practice being due to the fact that the preposition of may also be understood as denoting a relation of possession. The following illustrations must be accepted for what they are worth. The absence of illustration of one or the other practice must not be understood to mean that it is non-existent.


capacity. No doubt, they (sc. the stories) were interesting to her in her capacity of a novelist. Rid. Haggard, Mr. Mees. Will, Ch. V, 50.

character. i. He never really appeared but in one character, that of a philosopher. H. Rogers, Ess., I, Ch. VIII, 335. 1)

ii. Mr. Wyndham, in the character of postulant for the Chancellorship of the Exchequer in the Tariff Reform Administration, promises us a tax of 2 s. per quarter on corn and flour. Westm. Gaz.

1) Murray.
commission. The King gave him the commission of a lieutenant colonel in the British Army. Mac., Clive, (511b).

craft. He did not despise the craft of boat-builder. W. Besant, Master Craftsman, I, 118.

degree. I. Do you think I would marry under the degree of a Gentlewoman? Heywood, Fortune by Land, I, II. 1)

ii. The degree of Doctor of Science was conferred on Lord Lister. Times.

dignity. i. He could well support the dignity of a governor. Clarendon, Hist. of the Great Reb., I,603.

ii. He (sc. Holcroft) rose... to the dignity of actor. Saintsb., Ninet. Cent., Ch. I, 38.

name. Thus he bore without abuse | The grand old name of gentleman. Ten., In Memoriam, CXI.

You have brought disgrace on the name of philosopher. Mac., Fred., (691a).

office. We have already seen how low an estimate Cranmer had formed of the office of a Bishop. Id., Hist., I, Ch. I, 74.

part. i. I must play the part of a father here. Dick., Chuz., Ch. LIII, 415a.

He acted something like the part of a deserter. Freeman, Norman Eng., III, Ch. XII, 121.

He was resolved to act the part of a man of honour. Miss Linley (G. G. S., Life of Sheridan, 27).

ii. He made it clear,... that we had not played the part of mischief-maker imputed to us by irresponsible critics. Times, No. 1820, 923a.

I shall have to play the part of seducer. Victoria Cross, Six Chapt. of a Man's Life, 133.

A small travelling circus in which he played the part of clown. Times.

position. The position of uncle to Tristram would not have tempted him alone. El. Glyn, The Reason Why, Ch. XXXII, 302.

He holds the office of Laureate. Bookman, No. 263, 2a.

profession. i. A residential College especially equipped for preparing the sons of gentlemen for the profession of an engineer. Times, No. 1819, 902b.

ii. Mr. Pendennis exercised the profession of apothecary and surgeon. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 15.

An insignificant little person who suffered from the profession of music-teacher. Barry Pain, Culminating Point.

M. Steinheil was one of those worthy and timid mediocrities who had adopted the profession of painter. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 493, 481b.

quality. Fanny never made her appearance in the quality of nurse at his chambers any more. Thack., Pend., II, Ch. XV, 156.

rank. i. He has been promoted to the rank of an Admiral of the Fleet. Times.

He obtained the rank of a lieutenant. II. Lond. News.

Commoner = One of the common people, a member of the commonalty (Now applied to all below the rank of a peer). Murray, s. v. commoner, 2.

ii. To prefer an officer to the rank of general. Webster.

A commissioned military officer below the rank of captain. 1b.

The sovereign was pleased to advance Colonel Sir Michael O'Dowd to the rank of Major General. Thack., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 362.

title. The title of king was not revived. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. I, 132.

The King had taken to himself the title of Defender of the Faith. Hal. Sutcl., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. II, 24.

1) Murray.
trade. i. He learned the trade of a dyer. Stof., Handl., III, § 7.
ii. The two ushers at Tom's school were only driving their poor trade of usher to get such living as they could. Hughes, Tom Brown, I, Ch. III, 59.

Returning to England, Cromwell continued to amass wealth by adding the trade of scrivener, something between that of a banker and attorney, to his other occupations. Green, Short Hist., Ch. VI, § VI, 332.

(Note the varied practice.)

Note I. The definite article is sometimes met with in the same position.

They cultivate all trades save that of the armourer. Lytton, Rienzi, II, Ch. I, 78.

II. The indefinite article is, of course, impossible in referring to a station, rank, post, etc. that can be held by only one person at a time.

At the end of this month Captain A. D. Ricardo will vacate, on time limit, the post of Captain of Chatham Dockyard, and go on half-pay. Truth, No. 1802, 76a.

2) Regular is the suppression of the definite article, when specializing of is followed by a plural noun, as in the House of Lords, the House of Commons, the Chamber of Deputies, the Book of Proverbs.

44. When a noun is used predicatively, i.e. as nominal part of the predicate or as predicative adnominal adjunct, it often loses some of its substantival character, approximating more or less to an adjective. The result is that it sometimes rejects the article, whether definite or indefinite, according as the circumstances of the case are applicable to only one person or thing, or to one out of a number. As the following discussions will show, there is a marked difference between English and Dutch practice only so far as the indefinite article is concerned. Compare also Ch. XXIII, 16; Ch. XXIV, 36; and see Franz, Sh. Gram. 2, § 277; Ellinger, Verm. Beitr., 39.

45. a) The definite article is frequently suppressed before a predicative noun denoting a specified family or social relation, or a specified civil, military or ecclesiastical dignity or office.

The child is father of the man. Wordsworth.
The boy is father of the man. Thack., Four Georges, IV, 93.
The wish is father to the thought. Prov.

I was nursery-governess in a family where Mr. Copperfield used to visit. Dick., Cop., Ch. II, 5a.

You are heir to great estates. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Hof, Ch. XIX, 143b.

Wilkins was now member for a mining constituency. Mrs. Ward, Mar cella, II, 237.

Boldwood was tenant of what was called Little Weatherbury Farm. Th. Hardy, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. XVIII, 136.

A speech delivered by my right hon. friend who is now Home Secretary. Times, No. 1819, 893c.

During all this time he was leader of the Irish Party. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 495, 546c.
That (sc. morphia) which had been slave, gradually became master. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, JOHN CHILCOTE, M. P., Ch. I, 9.

He is... chief of a counting-house. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6011, 4c.

Note. Thus also when a superlative or, the adjective having the value of a superlative, or an ordinal numeral is part of the name of the office.

Lord Derby again became Prime Minister. GREEN, SHORT HIST., EPILOGUE, 843. I was best man at the wedding. EL. GLYN, THE REASON why, Ch. XXI, 194.

It was reported that my right hon. friend, then First Lord of the Admiralty, had in a public speech, used language attacking German policy. TIMES, 1819, 893c.

He became Chief Secretary in 1887. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6377, 1b.

The predicative noun as predicative ad nominal adjunct, a) of the first kind: It was this little child who commonly acted as mistress of the ceremonies to introduce him to Mrs. Osborne. THACK., VAN. FAIR, I, Ch. XXXV, 392.

Mr. Whittington served Sheriff of London and was three times Lord Mayor. ANDREW LANG, BLUE FAIRY BOOK.

For seven years he wielded power as President of the United States. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5323, 1b.

b) of the second kind: Rebecca was now engaged as governess. THACK., VAN. FAIR, I, Ch. VII, 67.

The directors appointed Clive governor of Fort St. David. MAC., CLIVE, (511b) The nation everywhere acknowledged him master. MOTTLEY, RISE, V, Ch. IV, 718b.

The gates and bridges of the State should be under the control of whomsoever should be elected Chief Magistrate. LYTTON, RIENZI, II, Ch. VI, III.

For by thy state | And presence I might guess thee chief of those [etc.]. TEN., LANC. AND EL., 182.

He was appointed... Latin Secretary to Cromwell. CASSELL'S CONC. DICT, s. v. MILTON.

He was declared heir presumptive to the Danish throne. TIMES.

With the preceding quotations compare:

i. Purpose is but the slave to memory. HAM. III, 2, 200.

Matilda, though of the royal Saxon blood, was not the heir to the monarchy. SCOTT, IVANHOE, Ch. XLII, 448.

ii. I will have | My young son Henry crown'd the King of England. TEN., BECK., PROL., (696a).

The following quotations show variable practice:

My father had the sole charge (sc. of the lighter) — he was monarch of the deck; my mother of course was queen, and I was the heir apparent. MARRYAT, JAC. FAITHFL., Ch. I, 3a. (Compare: I have said that I was heir apparent. IB., 4a.)

He was the chief now and lord. THACK., PEN. I, Ch. II, 30.

We are glad to hear the Conservative spokesman lay this stress upon the need of making the labourer master of his own house, but whether it is necessary for that purpose to make him the owner is quite another question. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6353, 2a.

Mrs. Brooks, the lady who was the householder at the Herons, and owner of all the handsome furniture, was not a person of an unusually curious turn of mind. HARDY, TESS, Ch. LVI, 595.

As the head of the English Church, he (sc. the Sovereign) summons and dissolves Convocation. ANNA BUCKLAND, OUR NAT. INST., 7. (Compare: The King, as head of the nation, is the head of the National Church. IB., 69.)
b) Suppression of the article is the rule before such a noun, when it stands adnominally after a proper name, the relation or office being specified.

The suppression of the article changes the grammatical function of such a noun, converting it from an apposition into an undeveloped clause. Compare Ch. IV, 3, Obs. I; Ch. XXI, 3.

The noun denoting a family or social relation: i. He was the only son of Katharine Ralston, widow of admiral Ralston. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. 1, 7.

The elder was Mrs. Benjamin Slayback, wife of the well-known member of Congress. Ib., 8.

ii. Edward Russell, the brother of Lord Russell. GREEN. 1)

The noun expressing a dignity or office: i. Edward the Confessor, King of England. SCOTT, Tales. 1)

Mr. White, Minister of Finance, said at a banquet given in his honour [etc.]. Times, No. 1819, 904b.

The Ministers were accompanied by Prince Louis of Battenberg, First Sea Lord; Vice Admiral Sir John Jellicoe, Second Sea Lord. II. Lond. News, No. 3886, 543.

ii. Denewulf, the bishop of Winchester. GREEN. 1)

Malger, the Archbishop of Rouen Ib.

Dr. Kerzl, the Physician to the Emperor of Austria. Athen., No. 4437, 566A.

Note I. When the relation, or the dignity, office or trade is not specified, the article is not, as a rule, dispensed with.

i. Thoff (vulgar for though) Jack Gauge, the exciseman, has ta'en to his carrots, there's little Dick, the farrier, swears he'll never forsake his bob. SHER., Rlv., I, I, (215).

It was not . . . to Richardson, the author, that Goldsmith applied for work, but to Richardson, the printer. R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsm., Ch. VI, 70.

ii. I should like to see Molly housemaid stealing to the terrace-gardens in the grey dawning to cull a wistful posy. I should like to see Betty kitchenmaid cutting off a thick lock of her chestnut ringlets, which she proposed to exchange for a woolly token from young Gumbo's pate. TACK., Virg., Ch. XX, 199.

Robin postman took the proffered tea, put his dripping hat on the ground, and thanked Jenimia cook. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. V, 40.

To compare Symons poet with Watts-Dunton poet is like comparing chalk and cheese. Periodical. 2)

II. Also when the noun denotes to doer of a specified action, the article is not suppressed.

Admiral Monk, the restorer of the Stuarts is better known in Dutch history as Duke of Albemarle. 2)

46. The indefinite article is suppressed, mostly contrary to Dutch practice:

a) generally before predicative nouns denoting either a relation of kinship or a social relation.

---

The relational meaning of the noun is sometimes symbolized by the
preposition to, while the placing of the indefinite article before the
relational noun would normally entail the use of the pleonastic genitive
(Ch. XXIV, 33), with, of course, an altered meaning: He is son to my
neighbour corresponds to He is a son of my neighbour.

i. Miss Jenkyns was daughter of a deceased rector of Cranford. Mrs. GASK.,
Cranf., Ch. I, 21.
He was an old school-fellow of his, and son of a merchant in that town.
CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hoi, Ch. XVI, 131a.
He is cousin to the Loftus boys. Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col., Ch. II, 23.

ii. 'tis Clincher, who was apprentice to my uncle Smuggler. FARQUHAR, The
Constant Couple, I, I, (53).
It (sc.) the funeral had been that of a boy of Doll’s years, who had been
apprentice to a famous German doctor. WASH. IRV., Doll Heyl. (STOF.,
Handl., I, 105).

Note I. We find the same practice invariably before nouns constituting
undeveloped clauses. (Ch. XXI.)

Sir Dudley North, younger brother of the Lord Keeper. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. IV, 88.
Among the wounded was Colonel F. W. Rhodes, brother of Mr. Cecil Rhodes.
Times.

Thus also in descriptions of the ‘dramatis personæ’ of a play.

Paris, a young nobleman, kinsman to the Prince. Romeo and Juliet.
Romeo, son to Montague. lb.
Geoffrey, son of Rosamund and Henry. Ten., Becket.

II. When such a relational noun is accompanied by a classifying
modifier, it resumes its full character of a noun, and, consequently,
requires the indefinite article.

She was a good daughter to you.

b) sometimes before predicative nouns denoting a quality.

Man, “said the Ghost, if man you be in heart, not adamant. Dick., Christm.
Car., III, 70.
She gazed at me, as if she really did not know whether I were child or fiend.
CH. BRONTE, Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 27.
Let the boy go with us, lest he prove traitor. LTTON, RienzI, Ch. I, 13.
Is Emile Grenat still anglomane? G. MEREDITH, Lord Ormont, Ch. IV, 77.
You are woman through and through. MRS. ALEX., For his Sake, II,
Ch. II, 38.
“Fräulein,” said Coralie, “you’re as wise as you are darling”. AON. & EG.
CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, II, Ch. IX, 222.

Compare with the above the following quotations, which exhibit the
more usual practice:

“Why, my dear Copperfield,” said the Doctor; “you are a man!” Dick., Cop.,
Ch. XXXVI, 259b.
He determined to marry her, while he was still a hobbledehoy. TROL., Thack.,
Ch. IV, 110.

The man’s a fool. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, II, D, 58.
When it behoved him (sc. Edward VII) to be a king, he was a king; but always
he was a man with a man’s heart. LORD ROSEBERY, Speech.

Note I. When nouns in this function make up a series of two or
more, the article is often dropped for oratorical effect. (69.)
In this business he was both knave and fool. Mason, Eng. Gram. 34, 15, N. II. When such nouns are modified by an adverb of degree, which, indeed, converts them, to all intents and purposes, into pure adjectives, the suppression is regular. (Ch. XXIII, 16, c.)

I was fool enough to buy a stock that cost me five-and-twenty shillings. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 49.

She is more child than woman. G. Eliot, Scenes, II, Ch. VIII, 131. (She is more a child than a woman = She is rather a child than a woman.)

She was thoroughly master of French. Annie Besant, Autobiog., 22.

III. English practice almost regularly has the article before nouns denoting a quality which constitute undeveloped clauses (Ch. XXI), not only if the headword is a noun, but also if it is a pronoun. In the latter case Dutch regularly rejects it.

i. Paris, a young nobleman, kinsman to the Prince. Rom. & Jul. (Observe that the varied practice illustrated by this quotation depends on the different character of the nouns in question.)

ii. * It would ill become me, a sinful and secular man, to complain of a bed as hard as a board. Scott, Monastery, Ch. XVI, 184. God have mercy upon me, a sinner. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXXIII, 247b.

Have pity on me, Sir, an aged and a lonely man. Ch. Reade, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. XV, 172.

He was thinking... of the kind, wise words she had spoken to him, an ignorant fellow. Beatr. Harraden, Ships, I, Ch. XIII, 69.

** Gracious God, who was he, weak and friendless creature, that such a love should be poured out upon him? Thack., Henry Esmond, II, Ch. VI, 203.

In such a sentence as the following we have not, of course, to deal with an undeveloped clause, but with a vocative:

For what a prodigious quantity of future crime and wickedness are you, unhappy boy, laying the seed! Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 27.

c) mostly before master and mistress in the sense of proficient. (Ch. XXIII, 16, d.)

i. He was master of most modern languages. Scott, Wav., Ch. III, 30a.

A Jack of all trades is master of none. Prov.

She was mistress of Danish, German, English and French. Times.

ii. He's a master of languages. Farquhar, The Beaux' Stratagem III, 2, (394).

He is a good scholar, as well as a consummate soldier, and a master of many languages. Thack., Virg., Ch. XXIV, 246.

Note. I. Also when accompanied by an intensive adjective, master and mistress occasionally stand without the article.

i. He spent two-and-twenty years in Egypt and returned perfect master of all science. Lewes, Hist. Phil., 42.

A mode of warfare in which she was past mistress. Mrs. Ward, Marc., I, Ch. I, 11.

ii. His daughter was a perfect master of music. Fielding, Tom Jones, IV, Ch. V, 49a.

There was the weight a man's sayings carry, when he is a real master of one thing. Mar. Crawf., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VIII, 188.

I found him to be a thorough master of the Basque language and people. Alg. West, Some Remin. of Mr. Gladst. (Ninet. Cent., No. 395, 83).
II. Before *master* in the sense of a person who has the upper hand, the article is regularly absent. He had made himself *master* of Olympia. *Nettleship, Dict. of Clas. Antiq.*, 467b.

III. The use of the *definite* article in the following quotations seems to mark exclusiveness:

He is *the master* of his subject. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCIV, 56a.

*d*) occasionally before such words as *foe* (enemy) and *friend*, denoting a person’s disposition towards another person or a thing. The ordinary practice is, however, to use the article, even when *to* follows.


You are *foe* to the Orsini, yet you plead for him — it sounds generous; but hark you, — you are more a *friend* to your order than a *foe* to your rival. *Lyttton, Rienzi*, IV, Ch. II, 159. (Note the varied practice.)

"You thought me *Friend!*" he said — "You should have known me *Foe!*" *Mar. Corelli, Sorrows of Satan*, II, Ch. XL, 259.

ii. Not that I am *an enemy* to love. *Sheridan, Duenna*, I, 1, (310).

He was a *friend* to me. *Ten., The Death of the Old year*, III.

47. The indefinite article is mostly used, contrary to ordinary Dutch practice:

*a*) before predicative nouns denoting a state.

1. The predicative noun as nominal part of the predicate:

She will be *a mother* soon. *Thack., Van Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 390.

She is *a widow*. *Trol., Thack.*, Ch. V, 130.

I am *an orphan*. *Lyttton, Rienzi*, IV, Ch. I, 151.

The Emperor surrendered his sword, and was *a captive* in the hands of his enemies. *McCarthy, Short Hist.*, Ch. XXIV, 372.

When he became *a millionaire*, of course, that course of conduct became impossible. *James Payn, Glow-Worm Tales*, II, C, 39.

For several years she remains *a widow*. *Lit. World.

She was *a wife* herself. *Aon. & Eg. Castle, Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. XI, 229.

2. The predicative noun as predicative adnominal adjunct:

I will live *a bachelor*. *Much Ado*, I, 1, 248.

I have heard him say he would die *a bachelor for your sake*. *Goldsmith, Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, I, (467).

Sooner than thou shouldst abandon the noble cause to which I have devoted thee, would I see thee lie *a corpse* at my feet. *Scott, Abbot*, Ch. IX, 89.

He comes home now, where he lives *a godless old recluse*. *Thack., Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 310.

I shall live and die *an old bachelor*. *Ib.*, I, Ch. II, 23.


Note. The following quotations show variable practice:

**bankrupt.**

i. He was *adjudicated a bankrupt*. *Times.

To be *adjudicated a bankrupt*. *Cas. Conc. Cycl.*, s.v. insolvent.

ii. The debtor had been *adjudicated bankrupt*. *Times.

**party.**

i. We have never had any quarrel to which I have been *a party*.  *Dick., Christm. Car.*, I, 12.

ii. He was... *party* to some of the foulest judicial murders recorded in our history. *Mac., Hist.*, I, Ch. II, 270.
prisoner. i. * Her father is a prisoner. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 126a.
** Requesting him to keep Rob Roy a prisoner. Black's Sir W. Scott's Readers, Rob Roy, 22.
Geoffry is made a prisoner. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 125b.
The Boers have taken possession of the telegraph office, making the operator a prisoner. Times.

ii. * The daughter of a Turkish bashaw fell in love with me too, when I was prisoner among the Infidels. Farquhar, The Recruiting Officer, III, 2, (294).
Lord Arran was twice prisoner in the Tower. Thack., Henry Esq., III, Ch. IV, 346.
** Water spread itself wheresoever it listed — or would have done so, but for the frost that held it prisoner. Dick., Cristm. Car. 5, III, 74.
He was held prisoner. Story of Rob Roy, 29.
He had been made prisoner. James Payn, Glow-Worn Tales, II, B, 24.
They made him prisoner. Sweet, N. E. Gr., § 2060.

witness. i. To witness = to be a witness of. Annand., Conc. Dict.
ii. I have been witness to many mortifications he (sc. Goldsmith) has suffered in Johnson's company. R. Aske King, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. XIII, 157.
Each practice is illustrated in:
I might have been made a knight by many, after the French fashion, many a year agone. I might have been knight, when I slew the white bear. Ch. Kingsley, Hereward, Ch. XX, 89a.

b) before nouns denoting a trade, profession, dignity, office, position, station, etc. that may be held by more than one person at a time.

1. The predicative noun as nominal part of the predicate:
He has become a student at the university. Thack., Newc., I, Ch. XXVII, 301.
She is a teacher in a school in Derbyshire. Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col., Ch. VI, 86.
He was only a captain in the Austrian army. Lit. World.
He had continuously been a Minister of the Crown or Leader of the Opposition in the House of Commons. Times, No. 1819, 893d.

2. The predicative noun as predicative adnominal adjunct:
The King dubbed his son a knight. Webster, s.v. knight.
They appointed him a member of Council at Madras. Mac., War. Hast, (600b).
Dupleix had not been bred a soldier. Id., Clive, (509a).
He had been elected a member of several fashionable clubs. Mrs. Ward, Marc., I, 94.

He had been born and brought up a Quaker. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 475, 769a.

Note I. Instances of the alternative practice are by no means infrequent.

1. The predicative noun as nominal part of the predicate:
If I were Minister, I would not allow such latitude to any man in office. Trevelyan, Mac., 227.
He ... rendered an inestimable service to philology by laying the foundation of Greek studies in the University of Cambridge, where he was professor. Shaw, Hist. Eng. Lit., Ch. III, § 6.
Educated at Cambridge, he became fellow of Trinity of College in 1822. Webb, Intr. to Mac.'s Lays.
He (sc. Holcroft) rose from being stable-boy at Newmarket, ... to quasi-literary positions as schoolmaster and clerk, and then to the dignity of actor. Saintsb., Ninet. Cent., Ch. I, 38.

2. The predicative noun as predicative adnominal adjunct,
a) of the first kind: They sent him admiral into the narrow seas. Clarendon, Hist. of Great Reb., I, 379.
The King's Hussars in which his father lived to see him Major. LOCKHART, Scott, II, 57.
She was familiar with Miss Brabazon from having formerly lived servant in the college. Mrs. Wood, Orv. C. I., Ch. IV, 90.
β) of the second kind: They call him captain, but anybody is captain. HARDY, Return of the Native, I, 311.
We do him injustice — if we merely call him novelist. CUMING WALTERS, Phases of Dick., 19.
Mr. Satyendra Sinha, who is appointed legal member of Council, is a lawyer of high repute and great practice. Westm. Gaz., No. 4961, 2a.
II. The suppression of the article may be quite usual, when the noun is used in a pregnant meaning, i.e. approaches to a quality-expressing word. (46, b.)
To call him poet would be a gross misapplication of the term. GARNETT, Age of Dryden, 117.
In much of his later work Browning almost ceases to be artist. H. WALKER, Greater Victorian Poets, 155.
Observe the varying practice in: i. Antipholis now lost all patience and calling her a sorceress, he denied that he had ever promised her a chain. LAMB., Tales, Com. of Er., 221.
On this Antipholis became quite frantic, and again calling her sorceress and witch,... ran away from her. lb., 122.
ii. I sometimes wish that I were queen — a queen in my own right. JAMES BLYTH, The King and Isabel, 74.
III. The suppression seems to be regular before such nouns when they stand by way of undeveloped nominal clause after a proper name. (Ch. IV, 4, Obs. I; Ch. XXI, 3.)
It was at Newark that Byron, under the superintendence of Mr. Ridge, bookseller and publisher, first appeared as a poet. LYTTON, Life of Lord Byron, 15a.
IV. The fact that sovereign may be understood as an adjective explains the absence of the article in:
If I were sovereign, I would rule that no woman should inherit a fortune of more than five thousand pounds. HOLME LEE, Beautiful Miss Barrington, I, 43.1) (Compare: No one disputes the fact that the electorate is politically sovereign. Ninet. Cent., No. 395.)
Observe also the absence of the article before lay, which, unlike the Dutch leek, is an adjective.
I am lay to the profession of war on land. Times.
V. Sometimes it is the measure which causes the article to be thrown out.
And jealous Oberon would have the child | Knight of his train. Mids., II, 1, 25.

48: a) Usage is also divided before the nouns mentioned in 46—47, when in the function of predicative adnominal adjunct they are preceded by the conjunction as.
The article seems to be indispensable when as has a temporal or a causative connotation. (Ch. VI, 7, b.) Conversely the suppression is especially common, when as is followed by two or more nouns.

1. The indefinite article after as with a temporal or cau-

1) ELLINGER, E. S., XXXI, 153.
sative connotation: As a boy, as a youth, thou hast held fast thy faith amongst heretics. Scott, Abbot, Ch. VIII, 78.

Jos went to court as a loyal subject of his sovereign. Thack., Van Fair, II, Ch. XXV, 277.

As a bachelor...nobody cares how poor I am. Id., Pend., I, Ch. II, 23.

You remember, don't you love, how full of play he was as a baby? Mrs. Gask. Mary Barton, Ch. XVIII, 199.

As a boy he had been too idle, as a man he soon became too busy, for literary pursuits. Mac., Clive, (500a).

It is a difficult position for me, as an Indian patriot, to assume even in imagination. [etc.]. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVII, 4234.

Compare. To me you owe everything — your life when an infant — your support while a child. Scott, Abbot, Ch. IX, 89.

2. The indefinite article used after as without any temporal or causative connotation: Indeed they say the senators to-morrow Mean to establish Caesar as a king. Jul. Cæs., I, 3, 86.

At our next annual meeting, I attended in my capacity as a shareholder. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 84.

She did her part as a hostess with much kindness and grace. Times.

We think of him rather as a great journalist than as a politician. Westm. Gaz.

Sir P. M. Warwington was greater as a lawyer than as a politician. Ib.

3. The indefinite article absent after as: I remained an inmate of its (sc. the school’s) walls, after its regeneration, for eight years: six as pupil, and two as teacher. Ch. Bronte, Jane Eyre, Ch. X, 98.

If a man can command a table, a chair, pen, paper, and ink, he can commence his trade as literary man. Trol., Thack., Ch. I, 10.

She took a situation as teacher in a school near Halifax. Miss Flora Masson, The Brontes, Ch. VII, 40.

Emily was despatched home, and Anne came as pupil in her place. The gentle Anne made out her two years at Roehead, and Charlotte remained there as teacher, with a salary, till early in 1838. Ib., 39.

(They) employed young Hardy as amanuensis. W. L. Phelps, Es. on Modern Novel, II, 47.

He (sc. Mohammed V) ... spent the better part of his life as prisoner. Il. Lond. News, No. 3834, Sup. VII.

The briefest reference to Wagner as man was all that was necessary in an “essay on Wagnerian drama”. Athen., No. 4436, 530a.

The following quotations exhibit divided usage:

On the 29th of July 1835 Charlotte went as teacher to Miss W.’s, Emily accompanied her as a pupil. Mrs. Gask., Life of Ch. Brontë, 101.

Neither as Queen of Denmark, nor as a Princess of Hesse-Cassel, could she, indeed, be expected to entertain very cordial feelings towards Russia. Times.

(Possibly it is the definite article which is dropped before queen.)

When the time came to separate, one of the four went to Oxford as an assistant in the library, and became a University lecturer, and another went to London to be clerk in a bank, and rose to be manager. Hall Caine, Prodigal Son, I, Ch. II, 17.

Neilson had re-established himself in Iceland first as factor for a firm in Copenhagen, and afterwards as a merchant on his own responsibility. Ib.

As a philosopher ... he (sc. Shakespeare) was not great. ... Even as painter of character he is greatly overpraised. Westm. Gaz., No. 6353, 7a.

Sometimes the absence of the article may have been furthered by the accumulation of two or more nouns in the same grammatical function. (69.)

She had thought and prayed there as girl and woman. Mrs. Ward, Rob. Elsm., I, 172.
Perhaps there had been too much tendency in the speeches made during the week to honour Milton as reformer rather than poet. Westm. Gaz.

He (sc. Poincaré) has also won fame as orator and as writer. II. Lond. News, No. 3849, Sup. I.

Compare: Myrddia was famous as both a bard and a magician. W. L. Jones, King Arthur, 112.

b) After the preposition for, used as a variant of as (Ch. VI, 16), the indefinite article is all but regularly used:

i. How the plague shall I be able to pass for a Jew? Sher., The School for Scand., III, 1, (389).
   The dogs, too, not one of which he recognized for an old acquaintance, barked at him. Wash. Inv., Rip van Winkle.
   He went for a soldier. Dick., Bleak House, Ch. VII, 52.
   Arthur Pendennis chose to watch Miss Bell dance her first quadrille with Mr. Pynsent for a partner. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXVI, 272.
   He will be sold for a slave. Ch. Kingsley, Hypatia, Ch. XIII, 68b.

ii. Why does your Master pass only for ensign? Sher., Rivals, I, 1, (213).

Observe the absence of the article in the following quotation where to sham is understood in the meaning of to pass for:

Now, if he had shammed general. Sher., Rivals, I, 1, (213).

Note. The indefinite article appears to be practically indispensable before the name of a thing, whether preceded by as or its equivalent for.

i. An old red-brick mansion, used as a school, was in its place. Dick., Cop., Ch. XXXIV, 259a.
   I treasured it as a keepsake. Ib., Ch. V, 33b.
   I shall esteem it as a favour, my lord, if Colonel Esmond will give away the bride. Thack., Henry Esmond, III, Ch. IV, 355.
   This served him as a place of prayer. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Hol, Ch. XXV, 187a.
   I hold it as a rule that nine men out of ten are unfortunate in their first attachment. Miss Brad., Captain Thomas.
   It was Napoleon who laid it down as a maxim that soldiers had often accomplished most, when their case seemed almost desperate. Times, No. 1819, 897a.

ii. * A plank was laid over the brook to serve for a bridge. Robin Hood (Günth., Handb.).
   Willy has given his fiancée such a beautiful ring for a Christmas present. Mrs. Alex., For his Sake, II, Ch. III, 49.

   ** For reply Lady Maria Esmond gives three shrieks. Thack., Virg., Ch. XXXVIII, 398.

Observe the idiom in:

i. We know for a fact that those districts in which the Danes had settled, are precisely those in which English grammar became simplified most rapidly. Bradley, The Making of Eng., Ch. II, 32.

ii. For thirty years or so we have taken it as a matter of course that the great London dailies ... should chastise us as robbers and outcasts. Westm. Gaz., No. 6359, 7a.

iii. As a matter of fact, however, the scene itself was as powerful as it was pathetic. Rid. Hag., Mees. Will, Ch. III, 32.

   As a matter of fact, every form of irregular union exists to-day, but shamefully and hidden. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 282.

iv. As a rule, I felt much more inclined to weep than to laugh. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 12c.
As a rule he was seen only with those who belonged to the same political faith as himself. Truth, No. 472, 650b.

49. Usage mostly rejects the indefinite article after to turn, but the article does not appear so rarely as is often believed. It is indispensable, when the noun is modified by an adjective.

i. * You bid me turn a traitor. Dryden, All for Love, V, 1, (101).
   I'll turn a knave. Farquhar, The Constant Couple, I, 2, (57).
   Didn't you make him turn a sailor? Douglas Jerrold, Black Ey'd Susan, I, 2.
   The Signor Colonna has taken up my old calling, and turned a wit. Lytton, Rienzi, IV, Ch. II, 160.

   ** I turned a good fellow. G. Eliot, Sil. Marner, Ch. XI, 92.

ii. I hope you have no intent to turn husband. Much ad o, I, 1, 195.
   Here comes another of the tribe: a third cannot be matched, unless the devil himself turn jew. Merch. of Ven., III, I, 181.
   I little knew why, or that I should ever turn engineer. Ch. Kingsley, Herew., Ch. XXV, 106a.

50. Dutch and English practice are uniform as to the suppression of the indefinite article before a predicative noun that is followed by an adnominal clause with the relative that or an adverbial clause with the conjunction as, which contains the copula to be. (Ch. XXXIX, 4.)

i. These little infirmities would not have prevented him, honest faithful man that he was, from being a shining light in the Dissenting Circle of Bridgeport. G. Eliot, Scenes, I, Ch. II, 21.
   I have encouraged him too much — vain fool that I have been! Ch. Kingsley, Hypatia, Ch. IV, 18a.
   Strange man that he is! G. Meredith, Ord. of Rich. F ev., Ch. XLIV, 438.

ii. Mr Franklin who, printer's boy as he had been, was a wonderful shrewd person. Thack., Virg., Ch. IX, 83.
   Ah, grovel in the dust! Crouch—crouch! Wild beast as thou art! Lytton, Rienzi, I, Ch. II, 69.

51. Abstract nouns take the indefinite article after to make, or a verb of like import, when they are followed by an adnominal gerund- or infinitive-clause. Compare also Ch. XIX, 39; 49, Obs. V.


feint. He made a feint of putting on the one glove which he usually carried in his hand. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXXI, 276.

merit. He made a merit of having given the place to his cousin. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 85.

plan. He laid down a plan of restoring his falling fortune. Goldsm., Vic.

point. I. He usually made it a point to choose his walk in a different direction. Scott, Fair Maid, Ch. XXIX, 306.
   I made a point to act the fine gentleman completely. Thack., Barry Lyndon, Ch. III, 48.
ii. Many educated — and many more half-educated speakers, make a point of keeping the h everywhere. Sweet, Sounds of Eng., § 205.
The teacher should make a point of drawing the instructor's special attention to pupils whose breathing is defective. Rippmann, Sounds of Spoken Eng., § 4.

practice. Any country which makes a practice of balancing deficits by borrowing, must come to grief sooner or later. Graph.

pretext. Godfrey made it a pretext for taking up the word again. G. Eliot, Sil. Marn., Ch. IX, 59.

rule. I make it a rule never to sleep out of my own bed. J. Payn, Glow-Worm Tales, I, N, 244.

show. I made a show of arranging my papers on my desk. Jerome, Novel Notes.

52. When a predicative nominal occurs both as an adjective and a noun, there is a tendency of dealing with it in the former function in Dutch, and in the latter function in English. This mostly appears by such a word standing without the indefinite article in Dutch, with it in English. Thus: Hij is Protestant = He is a Protestant. But such evidence is mostly wanting after to turn: Hij werd Protestant = He turned Protestant. For further details see Ch. XXIII, 17, Obs. II; and compare 49.

53. A common noun preceding a proper name (or a noun understood as a proper name), which stands in apposition to it, is apt to give up its character as a head-word and become in its turn the adjunct-word to the proper name, with the result that it loses some of its substantival nature and rejects the definite article, or the possessive pronoun. This change takes place, in the main, in the same cases in Dutch as in English. In the details there are, however, some differences which are of some interest. (Ch. IV, 4.) See also Sweet, N. E. Gr. § 90; Mätzner, Eng. Gram., III, 156; Elinger, Ver. Beitr., 27.

a) The suppression is regular, both in English and Dutch, when the noun preceding the proper name denotes some family or social relationship. In this case it is more plausible to assume the omission of the possessive pronoun than the article.

Lilias had rightly read her mistress's temper, who, wise and good as she was, was yet a daughter of grandame Eve. Scott, Abbot, Ch. IV, 46. The bells of St. Paul's... reminded him that friend Sampson was going to preach his sermon. Thack., Virg., Ch. XXXVI, 381. Wherever Father John appeared, help entered in the efficacious form of pecuniary assistance. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 732b.

Note. When the relative is not the speaker or writer, nor the subject of the narrative, the article cannot be dispensed with.

Goldsmith had dealings both with the uncle Newbery and the nephew Newbery. Thus also when the proper name and the common noun are transposed. Neither could the Newbery nephew, to whom both The Traveller and The Vicar of Wakefield were sold, be truthfully called "the friend of all mankind". R. Ashe King, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. XV, 168.
The suppression is almost regular, in English as well as in Dutch, when the common noun preceding the proper name denotes a profession or dignity, whether civil, military or ecclesiastical. This practice is also observed before German proper names with von and French proper names with de. Compare SCHULZE, Beitr. zur Feststellung des modernen Englischen Sprachgebrauchs, 19.

i. * When sister Livy is married to Farmer Williams, we shall have the loan of his cider-press for nothing. GOLDSM., Vicar. Lawyer Clippurse found his patron involved in a deep study. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. II, 28b.

He was glad to ransom himself by making over most of the remaining half (sc. of his property) to Speaker Lenthal. MAC., War. Hast., (596a) Shepherd Matthew watched his master. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler Ch. VI, 90.

The last sacraments were administered to nurse Pecha. TIMES.

Professor Osbert Chadwick delivered an address. Ib. The retiring Lord Mayor, Alderman Sir H. D. Davis, entertained at luncheon the Aldermen. Ib.

President Mac Kingley directs that the Americans shall assume the government of Puertorico on October 18. Ib. Ex-President Porfirio Diaz...will doubtless have been deeply interested in recent events. II. Lond. News, No. 3858, 418c.

On Monday...the Midland Railway published their reasons for dismissing Guard Richardson. WESTM. Gaz., No. 6171, 2a.

** Major Dobbin had joined the...th regiment at Chatham. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 362.

Marshal Tiptoff had died. Ib., II, Ch. XXXII, 362. Admiral Sir John Arbuthnot Fisher, K. C. G., was formerly a Lord of the Admiralty and Controller of the Navy. GRAPH.

Captain the Hon. Charles Bigham. II. Lond. News, No. 1812, 718. Lieutenants Walton and Sword. TIMES.

Generals Buller and Warren. Morning Leader.

*** From this decision Archbishop Longley dissented. GRAPH.

Archbishop Clark reckons that fifty men will be needed. WESTM. Gaz., No. 4937, 3a.

In the next year he gave a casting vote in favour of Bishop Wilberforce’s motion. GRAPH.

The Headmasters’ Conference was opened last Thursday under the presidency of Prebendary Moss. TIMES.

II. * He will open the merchant Abuda’s chest. STEVENSON, Walking Tours (PEACOCK, Select Essays, 537).

The nurse Pecha was still alive on Wednesday afternoon. TIMES.

** The Huguenots had become a formidable party under the guidance of the Admiral Coligni. GREEN, SHORT HIST., Ch. VII, § 4, 382.

*** The syndic Pavillon was announced. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXII, 283. The correspondence with the solicitor Pyne...attests the urgency of these troubles. WESTM. Gaz., No. 5448, 9c.

**** The cardinal Balue is politic and liberal. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XIII, 189.
He had engaged in a furious and acrimonious contest . . . with the Abbot Eustatius. Id., Abbot, Ch. I, 11.

The abbot Eustatius is no more. Ib., Ch. X, 95.

Note. Thus also the article regularly falls out before Saint + proper name: Saint Nicholas.

54. When the common noun is a title, usage is divided.

a) Regular is the suppression when the title is one that is only used in connection with a proper name, and when only one person is referred to: Mr. Johnson, Mrs. Johnson, Miss Johnson, Sir Walter Scott, Childe Harold, Dan Chaucer.

Note I. When more persons than one are referred to, the ordinary practice seems to be that the article is used, when the persons bear the same name, and that it is suppressed, when the names differ. See also Ch. XXV, 17.

i. The Misses Osborne . . . wondered more than ever what George could see in poor little Amelia. Thack., Van Fair, I, Ch. XII, 117.

John Barton was not far wrong in his idea that the Messrs. Carson would not be over-grieved for the consequences of the fire in their mill. Mrs. Gask., Mary Barton, Ch. VI, 52. (In the same page Messrs. Carson.) The Messrs. Bell desire me to thank you for your suggestion respecting the advertisement. Id., Life of Ch. Brontë, 228.


The two gentlemen were Messrs. Frederic and James. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXII, 231.

Meanwhile Costigan had not the least idea but that his company was perfectly welcome to Messrs. Pendennis and Bows. Ib., II, Ch. XI, 123.

The Colonel of the —th regiment, in which Messrs Dobbin and Osborne had companies, was an old general. Id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXIV, 251.

With Misses P. and W. the tender passion is out of the question. Ib., I, Ch. XII, 119.

Young Masters Alfred and Edward clapping and hurraing by his side. Id., Newc., I, Ch. XVI, 183.

ii. Mr. is often placed before the names of certain civil authorities followed by a proper name, as in:

With this beautiful peroration, Mr. Serjeant Buzfuz sat down, and Mr. Justice Stareleigh woke up. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXXIV, 311. (Compare Sergeant Buzfuz . . . here paused for breath. Ib., 309.

Thus we also say Mr. Chairman (= Dutch Mijnheer de Voorzitter).

b) Usage is variable and divided before titles of sovereigns and noblemen, which may also be used by themselves, the general tendency being to use the definite article before the unfamiliar and foreign titles, and also, though less markedly, in dignified style.

The article is, accordingly, found: regularly, or practically regularly, before Caliph (Calif, Khalif(a), Dauphin, Doge, Emir, Grand Duke, Grand Duchess, Grand Prince, Infante, Infanta, Kedive, Landgrave, Landgravine, Palatine, Rhinegrave, Signor, Signora, Sultan, Sultana.

mostly before Archduke, Archduchess, Baroness, Czar (Tsar), Czarina (= Czaritza), Czarevitch (Czarewich), Elector, Electress, Heer;
often before Countess, Emperor, Empress, Marquis, Princess; sometimes before Lady, Lord; rarely before Count, Dame, Duke, Earl, King, Queen, Viscount.

Note I. Titles preceding French names beginning with de, mostly stand with the article; while it is mostly suppressed before titles preceding German names with von. Pure foreign titles such as Monsieur, Herr, Senor, Don (Dom), mostly have no article, any more than they have in the original languages, barring occasional exceptions.

II. The apparent anomaly of the common use of the article before princess while it is almost regularly suppressed before Prince, may be due to the fact that Princess is a comparatively modern title, which did not come into use until the 18th century, lady being used before that time. Thus in MAC, Hist., III, Ch. VIII, the daughters of James II are called the lady Anne and the lady Mary. This may also be the reason why many Englishmen (perhaps the majority) pronounce the word with the stress on the second syllable; except when there are no rhythmical or metrical reasons for doing otherwise.

III. Lord and Lady regularly have the article in directions of letters, where, as a rule, they are more formally preceded by distinctive epithets, such as Honourable, Right Honourable, etc. In other positions the article seems to be used before Lady especially, when the fact that the title is one by birth, not by marriage, is insisted on. Also when followed by the name of a dignity which a lady holds on the strength of her husband's office, the word regularly stands with the article: the Lady Mayoress. Lord also mostly has the article, when followed by an appellative denoting an office.

IV. The placing of a defining word before Prince as in Crown Prince, Hereditary Prince, seems to be of no influence as to the use of the article, when the two words form a kind of unit.

V. Titles which occasionally throw off the article in ordinary conversation or newspaper announcements, such as Czar, Emperor, Empress, Princess, regularly keep it in the language of history. Thus only the Emperor Charles V, the Empress Maria Theresa.

VI. Sometimes the use or absence of the article is conditioned by the measure. See the quotations under king.

VII. For details see also MÄTZN., Eng. Gram., Ill, 156; O. SCHULZE, Eng. Stud., XXII; XLIII, 138; TEN BRUGGENCATE, Taalstudie, VI; X; ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 28.

Archduke. I. Francis Ferdinand of Austria... was born at Graz, and is the son of the Archduke Charles Louis. Harmsw. Encycl., s. v. Francis Ferdinand. It (sc. the picture) was purchased in 1605 by the Archduke Albert. 11. Lond. News., No. 3777, 415.

II. Emperor Francis Joseph is now at the manoeuvres in Bohemia, accompanied by the Heir Presumptive Archduke Francis Ferdinand. Graph.

Baron. I. The Baron Hardinge of Penshurst belongs to a famous family of consuls. Id., No. 2269, 836.

II. It is just two years ago since Baron D'Aehrenthal told me [etc.]. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIX, 3b.

Baron Komura affirms the unalterable determination of his Government to preserve the principle of the open door. Westm. Gaz., No. 4919, 2a.

Baroness. I. Who was the baroness? The Baroness Bernstein, the young ladies' aunt. Thack., Virg., Ch. II, 12.
The Historical Romances of the Baroness Orczy are very suitable as Christmas gifts. *Westm. Gaz., No. 5185, 1a.*

ii. The Old Man in the Corner by Baroness Orczy. *Ib., No. 4961, Advert.*  
(Thus, apparently, regularly in giving the titles of literary or musical compositions.)

*Baroness Bertha von Suttner, née Countess Kinsky,* was born at Prague...on June 9, 1843. *Graph., No. 2271, 946a.*

**Begum.** (He) was at present in this country trying to negotiate with the Begum Clavering the sale of the Nawaub's celebrated nose-ring diamond. *Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXXVII, 392.*

**Calif.** The Khaliif Omar. *Wash. Irv. 1)*

**Consul.** Long live the Consul Rienzi! *Lytton, Rienzi, II, Ch. VIII, 118.*

**Count.** i. Find me a meet hour to draw Don Pedro and the Count Claudio alone. *Much ado, II, 2, 33.*

i. I could not avoid repeating the famous story of Count Abensberg. *Goldsm., Vicar,* Ch. I.

Of all these airships the most successful is that of Count Zeppelin. *Rev. of Rev,* CCXXIX, 30a.

**Countess.** i. Had I not left the Countess Hameline of Croye to the charge of those whom she herself selected as counsellors and advisers, the Countess Isabelle had been ere now the bride of William de la Marck. *Scott, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXIII, 303.*

*The Countess Hatzfeldt,*...had married a brutal husband. *T. P.'s Weekly,* No. 466, 450b.

Tell the Countess Shulski I wish to speak to her. *El. Glyn, The Reason why,* Ch. I, 8.

ii. Countess Shuliki clasped her hands. *Ib., Ch. II, 14.* (In this novel usage is about equally divided.)

**Czar.** i. Princess Dagmar was married to Tsar Alexander III. *II. Lond. News.*

He became a great favourite of the Tsar Nicholas. *Times.*

He received a warning as to the precariousness of his own position from the Tsar Alexander III. *Ib.*

ii. The death of Czar Alexander III has cast much gloom over Court circles. *Graph.*

Although Czar Nicholas had succeeded to his brother with sentiments somewhat more pacific, the question was further complicated by a French army in the Peloponnesus. *Academy.*  

Tsar Ferdinand of Bulgaria recently sent a conciliatory telegram to the King of Roumania. *II. Lond. News,* No. 3875, 142b.

**Dame.** Dame Magdalen Græme thus addressed her grandson. *Scott, Abbot,* Ch. XII, 105.

Happy are they who are not only subjected to the caprices of Dame Fortune, but [etc.]. *Id., Mon., Ch. XXXVI 391.*

Never was greater attention paid to Dame Fashion than at present. *II. Lond. News,* No. 3880, 336c.

(They) exemplify some touches of Dame Nature in her work of animal development. *Ib., No. 3814, 795c.*

**Doge.** The conspiracy of the Doge Marino Faliero is one of the most remarkable events in the annals of the most singular government, city, and people of modern history. *Byron, Marino Faliero, Preface.*

---

1) *Foels.-Koch, Wis. Gram., § 256.*  
2) *Ten Bruo., Ta'alst., X.*
Don. A monarchical régime under King Manoel or Dom Miguel would be preferred. Times, No. 1824, 1006d.

Don. Don José and his lady quarrell’d. Byron, Don Juan, I, xxiii.

Donna. i. Don José and the Donna Inez led | For some time an unhappy sort of life. Byron, Don Juan, I, xxvi.

ii. But that which Donna Inez most desired, | ...Was, that his breeding should be strictly moral. Ib., I, xxxix. (Throughout the poem the use of the article is dependent on the measure.)

Duchess. “This set belonged to George II”, said the General, “he gave it to the Duchess Lavinia on her marriage. Baring-Gould, II, 213."

Duke. i. The Duke Charles is now at Peronne. Scott, Quent. Durw., Ch. XVI, 221.

He assumed the lofty title of the Duke Werner. Lytton, Rienzi, I, Ch. II, 20.

ii. Duke Henry is four years older than his bride-elect. Graph.

Prince Christian was the sixth child of Duke Frederick William of Holstein-Sondersburg-Glücksburg. Times.

Earl. i. This was the approach of the Earl Douglas. Scott, Fair Maid, Ch. XXXIII, 353.

ii. Among those present were Earl Spencer. Times.

The sudden death of Earl Percy is a loss to more than a family or a party. Westm. Gaz., No. 5195, 2b.

Earl Grey has been the moving spirit of the scheme. II. Lond. News, No. 3875, 129a.

Emir. The emir Yakub with his followers gathered in a dense mass round their standard and proudly faced the leaden hall. II. Lond. News.

The emir Mahmoud. Graph.

Emperor. i. The Emperor Charles had an exalted opinion of his capacity for the field. Motley, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 899b.

The Emperor Francis Joseph received the King Alexander of Servia on Monday morning. Times.

ii. Emperor Francis Joseph is now at the manoeuvres. Graph.

The figure “Nine” has a peculiar connection with the career of Emperor William of Germany. Ib., 1894, 10 Febr., 143.

Empress. i. The Duke and Duchess of Edinburgh have been in Berlin with the Empress Frederick. Graph.

I refer to the murder of the Empress Elizabeth of Austria. Times.

ii. The Queen returned to Windsor from Osborne at the end of last week, accompanied by Empress Frederick. Graph.

Grand Duke. The Grand Duke Peter, her nephew, who now ascended the Russian throne, was [etc.]. Mac., F re d., (699a).


Grand Duchess. In the mourning coaches that followed sat the Empress, the Grand Duchess Alexandra Feodorowna. II. Lond. News.

The King of the Hellenes was married to the Grand Duchess Olga. Ib.

Heer. i. In (this) valuable kind of lore the Heer Antonie seemed deeply versed. Wash. Irving, Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 134).

When he had washed it down by two or three draughts from the Heer Antonie’s bottle. Ib., 133.

ii. In the midst of his joviality, however, Heer Antonie did not lose sight of discretion. Ib., 133.

1) Ellinger, Verm. Beitr., 28. 2) O. Schulze, E. S., XXII.
Infanta. The Infanta Eulalta has addressed to the Impartial... a letter, in which she declares her unaltered affection for Spain and the King and the Queen Mother. Times, No. 1824, 1006d.

King. I. Bare-footed came the beggar-maid | Before the King Cophetua. Ten., Beggar-maid.
The Emperor Francis Joseph received the King Alexander of Servia on Monday morning. Times.

Last month, full of years and full of honours, the old King Christian of Denmark passed away. Rev. of Rev., CXCIV, 120b.

ii. Between them King George and the Emperor Nicholas are rulers of nearly half the world. Graph., No. 2171, 949.


She was the third daughter of the Landgrave William of Hesse-Cassel. lb.

Lady. i. * Looking up he beheld his aunt, the Lady Rockerville and two of her daughters, of whom the one who spoke was Harry's betrothed, the Lady Ann. Thack., Pend., II, Ch. II, 28.
The Queen of Hungary was a worthy descendant of the Lady Mary of Burgundy. Motley, Rise, I, Ch. II, 78b.

When he was gone, the Lady Godiva bowed her head into her lap. Ch. Kingsley, Here., Ch. I, 11b.

The Lady Laura is my cousin, and if I choose to give her brevet rank, who shall hinder me. II. Lond. News.
That is the Lady Grace Eveleigh (a duke's daughter). And remember, she is not Lady Grace, but the Lady Grace. 'The' makes all the difference in the world. Corn. Mag.

** Her Royal Highness was welcomed on arrival at Liverpool by the Lady Mayoress (Lady Derby), and Lady Victoria Stanley presented the Princess with a handsome bouquet. Times, No. 1823, 977d.

ii. Lady Audley pursed up her rosy lips. Miss Braddon, Lady Audley's Secret, I, Ch. XVI, 186.


He is too fond of my poor — of the Lord Hereward. Ch. Kingsley, Here., Ch. I, 11b.

** Of the new nobles the most conspicuous were the Lord Treasurer Rochester, the Lord Keeper Guildford, the Lord Chief Justice Jeffreys, the Lord Godolphin and the Lord Churchill. Mac., Hist. 1)

ii. * Lord Crewe... said that a reduction of the British Army in India was contemplated. Times, No. 1819, 901a.

** Lord Keeper Guildford stole some hours from the business of their courts to write on hydrostatics. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. III, 401.

Note. The following quotation exhibits varied practice, for which there is no apparent reason.

He was assured that the Lord James was coming this road at the head of a round body of cavalry. And, accordingly, Lord James did so far reckon upon him, that he sent this man Warden... to my master's protection. Scott, Mon., Ch. XXXIII, 357.

Maharajah. His competitor was a Hindoo Brahmin., the Maharajah Nuncomar. Mac., War. Hist., 603a.

Marquis. i. The Marquis Ito had been sent to Portsmouth [etc.]. Rev. of Rev., CXC, 375a.

1) FOELS.—Koch, Wis. Gram., § 256.
The Convention was signed in the palace of the Marquis Marialva. Morris, Note to Byron's Childe Har., I, xxv, 2.

A few days ago, Count Etienne Tisza...met the Marquis George Pallavicini and fought his third duel this year. II. Lond. News, No. 3880, 337a.

The constitution under which Japan is now governed, is the work of the Marquis Ito. Harmsworth Encycl., s. v. Ito.

ii. Japan offered Russia her alliance through Marquis Ito. Rev. of Rev., CXC, 375a.

Pope. i. When the Pope Alexander Borgia issued his Bull, dividing the whole undiscovered non-Christian world between Spain and Portugal, he awarded India to the latter power. A. Lyall, The Rise of the British Dominion in India, 8.

ii. Foremost among them, in zeal and devotion was Gian Pietro Caraffa, afterwards Pope Paul the Fourth. Mac., Popes, (549b).

About this time there came to the Wittenberg district the Dominican monk Tetzel, selling pardons and releases from Purgatory, in accordance with the indulgence issued by Pope Leo X. Harmsworth Encycl., s. v. Luther.

Prince. i. * The punch went round; and as many of his attendants as would be dangerous sent dead drunk on shore; the rest we secured; and so you have the Prince Oroonoko. Thom. South., Oroonoko, I, 2, (165a).

The Academic Committee of the Royal Society of Literature has received from the Princesse Edmond de Polignac the offer of a sum of money for the foundation of a prize for literature to be awarded by the Academic Committee in memory of her husband, the Prince Edmond de Polignac. Times, No. 1814, 803c.

** The imperial couple lost their only son, the Crown Prince Rudolph, in a very sad manner a few years ago. II. Lond. News.

The last two days spent alone by Mary Vetsera and the Crown Prince Rudolph. Graph., No. 2267, 740a.

ii. * Prince Christian was the sixth child of Duke Frederick William. Times.

** On the death of Hereditary Prince Alfred, the Duke of Connaught at once occupied precisely the same position. Graph.

Princess. i. Those are the sons of the Princess Pocahontas. Thack., Virg., Ch. VII, 70.

The Princess Alexandra was provided with an English nurse. Graph.

The Princess Alexandra is by two distinct lines of descent the great-great-great granddaughter of George II. Times.

Prince Waldemar is married to the Princess Marie d'Orleans. II. Lond. News.

ii. Princess Dagmar was married to the Tsar Alexander III. Id.

Princess Marie is most affable and engaging. Graph.

Note. The following quotation exhibits varied practice, for which there is no apparent reason:

The Queen and the Princess Beatrice were present on Saturday at the Confirmation of the Hereditary Grand Duke of Hesse at Darmstadt. Her Majesty also attended the christening of the infant child of Princess Louis of Battenberg, and was one of the sponsors. Times, Weekly Ed., 1885, May 1, 1, 1)

Queen. i. This ground belongs to him no more than it does to me, but to the Queen Elizabeth. Ch. Kingsley, West w. Ho! Ch. XXI, 162a.

Hither to the Queen Alexandra has been regarded more or less as an ornamental asset of the Empire. Rev. of Rev., CXCI, 583.

ii. Queen Alexandra...dove to Marlborough House. Times. No. 1819, 900c.

Sénor. The Infanta Eulalla has telegraphed to Sénor Canalejas, the Spanish premier, as follows. Times, No. 1823, 976d.

1) O. Schulze, S. E., XXII, 257.
CHAPTER XXXI, 54—55.

Sheik. What would the Turkish Ambassador think if the Sheik-ul-Islam was portrayed by Mr. Dan Leno in a patter-song at the London Pavilion? Times.

Signor. i. The Signor Colonna has taken up my old calling, and turned a wit. LYTTON, Rienzi, IV, Ch. II, 160.

ii. Signor Alberto Randegger had a career of extraordinary interest. Times, No. 1825, 1032c.

Signora. Having written his letter to Mrs. Bold, he proceeded to call upon the Signora Neroni. TROL., Barch. Town., Ch. XXVII, 225.

He went to his villa in the Dordogne, where the Signora Stella Ballerina awaited him. Westm. Gaz., No. 5382, 2c.

Squire. She created so much confusion in the congregation, that if Squire Allworthy had not silenced it, it would have interrupted the service. FIELDING, Tom Jones, IV, Ch. X, 556.

Sultan. i. 300,000 Mahomeds reverence in him, the Sultan Abdul Hamid, their Khalif. Times.

ii. By this scimitar, — | That slew the Sophy, and a Persian prince | That won three fields of Sultan Solymann, — [etc.]. Menc. II, 1, 26.

Mohammed V... became Sultan of Turkey after the deposition of his elder brother, Sultan Abdul Hamid II. 11. Lond. News, No. 3834, Sup. VIII.

Negotiations were carried on by Dr. Herzl with Sultan Abdul Hamid. Westm. Gaz., No. 6329, 8c.

Viscount. Among those present were Viscount Chelsea. Times.

Viscount Morley explained to the House of Lords the large scheme of representative government which we are about to concede to India. Westm. Gaz.

Titles before proper names containing the French de: i. It must be owned that the 'Vieux Souvenirs' of the Prince de Joinville contain a large admixture of small beer. Graph. 1)

Madame the Staël had fallen out with the Viscount de Choiseul. Titbits. 1)

Last week it was announced that the Comte de Paris was lying seriously ill at Stowe House. Graph.

ii. Baron de Courcel is well acquainted with English affairs and statesmen. Graph. 1)

Count de Francigny was an old friend of my brother's. BARONESS BLOOMFIELD, Reminiscences. 1)

Titles before proper names containing the German von: i. The Baron Von Köeldwethout, of Grogzwig in Germany, was as likely a young baron as you would wish to see. Dick., Nich. Nickl., 34a.

ii. Two more volumes contain the essays, speeches and memoirs of Count von Moltke. 1)

55. When adjectives not belonging to the title, precede the combinations mentioned in the preceding §§, the definite article is used under the same conditions as before proper names standing by themselves. (28.)

i. Take from me the same horse that was given him by the good Bishop Jewel. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. III, (247).

If my servants have too little wages, or any husband too much wife: let them repair to the noble Serjeant Kite. FARQUHAR, The Recruiting Officer, I, I, (251).

Four of the London hospitals have come in for a considerable windfall under the will of the late Professor Hughes.

1) SCHULZE, Eng. Stud., XII.
ii. "Now you have no more money to play with, you can come and play with us!" cries fond Lady Fanny. Thack., Virg., Ch. LVI, 578.

56. When the common noun does not belong to any of the groups mentioned above in 53—54, the definite article is regularly used, both in Dutch and in English.

child. Miss Clairmont had known Byron in London, and their acquaintance now ripened into an intimacy the fruit of which was the child Allegra. Symonds, Shelley, Ch. IV, 88.

hero. Honour and gratitude which they were conferring on the hero Roberts. Times.

man. Now the man Moses was very meek, above all the men which were upon the face of the earth. Bible, Numbers, XII, 3.

woman. As to the woman Gudgeon, who laid claim to be her mother, he thought she was suffering from a delusion. Th. Watts Dunton, Aylwin, XVI, 458.

Note. With widow however, practice is variable.

i. Surely that's better than the careless manner in which the widow Ochre caulks her wrinkles. Sher., School for Scandal, II, 2, (379).

Now in this matter the widow Bold was scandalously ill-treated by her relatives. Trol., Barch. Tow., Ch. XIV, 112.

The Widow Blackacre, beyond comparison Wycherley's best comic character, is the Countess in Racine's 'Plaideurs'. Mac., Com. Drama., (578b).

He (sc. Uncle Toby) is celebrated for his love passages with the widow Wadman. Webst., s. v. Uncle Toby.


Two little boys had stolen some apples from Farmer Benson's orchard, and some eggs had been missed off Widow Hayward's stall. Mrs. Gask., Cranf., Ch. XI, 207.

57. The generalizing or specializing definite article is dispensed with before certain plural nouns of a more or less vague meaning, when they assume the character of indefinite pronouns. (9, b, 2; 13; 14; 31, b.) This applies especially to:

a) the colloquial chaps, fellows and persons, and to the literary men;

b) affairs, matters and things.

Also the collective noun people, which in every respect is dealt with as a plural, is an instance of the same practice. In colloquial language people is often replaced by folk(s). See Ch. XXVI, 10.

The above nouns occur chiefly as subjects, less frequently as objects, and most of them very rarely, or not at all, in other grammatical functions. Affairs, however, is mostly found after a preposition.

a) chaps. Chaps don't dine at the West-End for nothing. Thack., Sam. Tim., Ch. IV, 46.

fellows. Fellows will understand that I don't care to have you come out on a troop-ship. Sarah Grand, The Heavenly Twins, I, 145.

folks. Folks don't use to meet for amusement with fire-arms. Sher., Riv., V, I.

men. * Your face, my thane, is as a book where men | May read strange matters. Macb., 1, 5, 63.

Men at some time are masters of their fates. Julius Cæs., I, 2, 139.

H. Poutsma, A Grammar of Late Modern English. II.
"'Tis not for me to state how these doubts arise," said Douglas — "but men say the eagle was killed with an arrow fledged from his own wing". Scott, Fair Maid, Ch. XXXIII, 353.

Men said that he was proud. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Hoi!, Ch. I, 6a.

Men have asked themselves, much more insistently than heretofore, why, if the self-governing principle has had this magical effect in South Africa, and, in a previous generation, in Canada, we should not try what it may do for Great Britain and Ireland. Westm. Gaz., No. 5454, 16.

** Honours and wealth change men's natures. Scott, Quent. Durw., Ch. XII, 172.

All this did not alter the settled conviction on men's minds. Trol., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXVII, 358.

people. * I don't know whether there are ghosts or not, but people say they've seen them. Mar. Crawf., Kath. Laud., 1, Ch. X, 186.

People always recognize the ghost instantly, if it's that of a person they've known. Ib., Ch. X, 187.

People can be divorced for incompatibility of temper. Ib., Ch. XII, 223.

** Have you been mentioning that to people? W. Pett Ridge, New Scheme (Westm. Gaz., No. 4983, 3c).

persons. (unusual.) Do no let persons on this account suppose that Mrs. Robarts was a tuft-hunter, or a toad-hunter. Trol., Framl. Pars., Ch. X, 101.

Persons are requested not to sit upon the pier. Inscription on Greenwich Pier.

b) affairs. Such was the state of affairs, as the carriage crossed Westminster-bridge. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 54.

But a great and sudden turn in affairs was at hand. Mac., Clive, (527b).

The inhabitants of the village, while discussing the position of affairs, had suddenly been startled by the appearance of six mounted Uhlans. Buchanan, That Winter Night, Ch. V, 45.

matters. * Should matters become yet more distracted here,... we will provide for your safe-conduct to Germany. Scott, Quent. Durw., Ch. XVIII, 243.

Matters are not so bad as that. Reade, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. I, 18.

** It is difficult to believe that Mr. Asquith and his colleagues can feel that the result of the elections will justify them in pushing matters to extremes. Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 16c.

things. * After a while things went so far that the Fenian leaders in the United States issued an address. McCarthy, Short Hist., Ch. XXX, 314.

Things jarred between them frequently. Mrs. Ward, Marc., III, 102.

Things are coming to a pretty pass. H. J. Byron, Our Boys.

I have seen a pretty while how things are going on here. Reade, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. I, 18.

** We looked at things through a telescope. Dick., Cop., Ch. II, 12b.

We have no desire to exaggerate the dangers inseparable from such a state of things. Times.

Mr. Roosevelt is making things hum in American politics. Westm. Gaz., No. 5406, Ib. (= Dutch: brengt leven in de brouwerij.)

She hadn't the energy to go about and do things. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 199.

Note. The same usage is often extended to other nouns, especially the following among, perhaps, many others (12—14):

a) ministers. From questions recently put to Ministers in Parliament. Times.

Mr. Redmond feels for instance that an honest pledge on the part of Ministers to dedicate this Parliament to the House of Lords question is not sufficient for him. Westm. Gaz., No. 5231, 1c. (Thus, probably, the invariable practice in this paper.)

members. Members were really astonished at this display of feeling from a statesman who has the reputation of being extremely reticent. Ib.
parties. *Parties* in the House are balanced pretty much as they were in the la. Chamber. Graph.

** Either the Irish question must be settled by a deal between parties, or the Government must take vigorous measures. Westm. Gaz., No. 6383, 1c.

politicians. Congress will not meet till December, and politicians are still making holiday. Graph.

voters. Voters went early to the polls, and hurried away to make holiday in the fine weather. Graph.

Note. Of particular interest is the frequent noble lords, as in:

They had mingled their tears with those of noble lords opposite in regard to the brevity of the time given to that House for discussion. Lord Crewe, Speech.

The amount of discussion which that measure had received both in and out of Parliament, enabled noble lords opposite to decide to throw the Bill out. Ib. Fortunately, although noble lords sometimes say very nearly winged words to each other, human emotions and passions seem to be much more under restraint in the Upper than in the Lower House. Westm. Gaz., No. 5107, 4a.

b) appearances. Appearances are at least against you. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Hol, Ch. XIX, 146b.

My only chance of success depends on my keeping up appearances. Mrs. Alexander, A Life Interest, I, Ch. IV, 72.

circumstances. You will have me back again, should circumstances permit Hardy, Far from the madding Crowd, Ch. LI, 416.

The work is being pushed forward as quickly as circumstances permit. Times. His career owes nothing whatever to influence or to circumstances, apart from his brilliant ability. Westm. Gaz., No. 6365, 2b.

How could circumstances be so cruel to her? El. Glyn, The Reason why, Ch. XXXV, 322.

Compare: The Greek and Turkish negotiations are supposed to be going on as smoothly as the circumstances permit. Westm. Gaz., No. 6365, 1c.

This will lead public opinion to consider the one and only form of relief which the circumstances permit. Ib., 2a.

events. Silent, therefore, and passive, Adrian waited the progress of events. Lytton, Rienzi, II, Ch. Ill, 88.

times. Times grew worse and worse with Rip. van Winkle, as years of matrimony rolled on. Wash. Irw., Sketch-Bk., V, 36.

Times have indeed changed, since the days when the decrees of the Medes and Persians altered not nor were changed. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 512a.

II. Sometimes the suppression may have been furthered by the nouns standing in juxtaposition in the same grammatical function. The afternoon studies proceeded as on other afternoons, but neither masters nor boys felt at ease. Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col., Ch. III, 42.

Neither things nor scholars had shaken down into their routine. Ib., I, 15.

III. Even the presence of a specializing adjunct does not always cause the article to be used before these nouns. (12.)

a) persons. Cape politics had been so disagreeable a subject that persons in authority at the Colonial Office dismissed them from their minds. Froude, Oceana, Ch. III, 48.


b) circumstances. With the aid of a few cartloads of sand, and a little imagination they make the best of circumstances in their back garden. Punch.

Compare. If their action were criticized, it would, he felt sure, be remembered that the circumstances had presented considerable difficulties. Times, No. 1820, 919b.
Thereafter Mr. Long and he forsook the lobbies of the House, feeling that it was no place for them in the circumstances. Ib.

58. Certain nouns are apt to assume the character of indefinite numerals, and, consequently, to reject the indefinite article. This applies especially to:

abundance. According to Murray 'less correctly' used in reference to number.

There are *abundance* who want a morsel of bread for themselves and their families. Fielding, Amelia.¹

Providence had enriched him with *abundance* of poor relations. Wash. Irw., Sketch-Bk., The Spectre Bridegroom, 154.

galore. Now commonly found after the noun modified. Compare *store*, below. According to Murray (s. v. *galore*) also: in *galore*. Galore of alcohol to ratify the trade. Ruxton, Life in Far West, 1, 21.¹

Anthological volumes *galore* fill the present writer's shelves. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 492, 139c.

legion, in allusion to Bible, Mark, V, 9: *My name is legion: for we are many.*

Of the Taylors the name is *legion*. Times.

Of this form of stanza (sc. the quatrain) the name is *legion*. Tom Hood, Eng. Versific, 33.

To those who believe in Father John — and their name is *legion* — the age of miracles is not yet over. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 133a.

The number of student-clubs is *legion*. Günth, A New Eng. Read., 92.

Note I. This *legion* is even used as a conjoint indefinite numeral.

When pouring o'er his *legion* slaves on Greece, | The eastern despot bridged the Hellespont. Southey, Joan of Arc, X, 443.¹

The poor curate's wife with the *legion* family clothed from the odds and ends of her rich sister's cast-offs. C. James, Rom. Rigmarole, 148.¹

It The following application of *legion* appears to be infrequent:

In Austria, where the lecturer is *as legion*, nine times out of ten, be the subject what it may, he will drag in a reference to, or a digression on, England. Westm. Gaz., No. 6153, 4b.

multitude. In this application, apparently, rare. The suppression of the article may be due to rhythmical reasons.

In *multitude* of counsellors there is safety. Bible, Proverbs, XXIV, 6.

number. Instances are rare, and seem to be entirely wanting in Late Modern English. Franz, Shak. Gram, § 277; Abbot, Shak. Gram,³ § 84. Compare the Dutch *tal*, as in *tal van voorbeelden*.

Belike you slew *great number* of his people. Twelfth Night, III, 3, 29.

Nor is this present Age void of *number* of Authors, who have written more on Architecture. Gerbier, Counsel.¹

part. I *made part* of the journey from Carlow to Naas with a well-armed gentleman from Kilkenny. Thack, Barry Lyndon, Ch. III, 50.

*Part* of the service was intoned, *part* read, *part* sung. Mrs. Wood, Orville College, Ch. I, 15.

He had brought home a moderate fortune, *part* of which he expended in extricating his father from pecuniary difficulties and redeeming the family estate. Mac., Clive, (510b).

¹) Murray.
Note I. *Part*, as used in these quotations, is practically equivalent to *some*. (Ch. XL, 179, b, Note II.) Thus in the two following quotations the two words are used in precisely the same connections:
I wish to spend *some* of the year in London. Mrs. Ward, *Marcella*, III, 244.
It would only be for *part* of the year. Ib.

II. *Part* may even stand in the place of the conjoint *some*:
Meanwhile Pam had gone *part* way down the side of the cloister. Baroness von Hutten, *What became of Pam*, Ch. IX, 64.

III. Sometimes *some part* is used in practically the same meaning as either *part* or *some*.

The Chase of Chaldicotes is to vanish from the earth's surface. *Some part* of it, however, is the private property of Mr. Sowerby. Trol., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 19.

IV. The suppression of the article seems to be regular in the adverbial expression *in part* = partly. Observe *in whole* as the opposite of *in part*.
If the charge is proved either *in whole* or *in part*, we imagine the French public will show itself less sentimental in these matters than ourselves. Westm. Gaz., No. 6377, 2c.

V. Also the collocations *great part*, *large part*, and, according to Murray, *most part*, sometimes have the character of indefinite numerals, and, consequently, may dispense with the indefinite article. The omission seems to be regular in the adverbial phrases *in great (large) part*.

We were at Oxford *great part* of last week. Whewell, *Life* (1881), 512.1)

**The country (sc. Russia) is still semi-Asiatic in *great part*. Athen., No. 4482, 271b.**
They are in *large part* a stage army. Westm. Gaz., No. 6005, 1b.
The year has been a bad one, but that is *in large part* due to the fact that in many trades increases in wages were long overdue. Ib., 6377, No. 2c.


The floods which have laid *a large part* of Paris under water, have driven thousands of persons from their homes. Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 2a.
These are the conditions in which *a large part* of the rural population live. Ib., No. 6359, 1b.

**He had played with secular politics *for a large part* of his life. Ib., No. 6413, 2a.**

Compare: *During a great portion* of the day, Mark found himself riding by the side of Mrs. Proudie. Trol., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. IV, 35.

V. When *part* is understood to indicate a distinctly detached portion, the indefinite article is used; but, as a comparison of the two following groups of quotations shows, the distinction between *a part* and *part* is often arbitrary.

i. Lambert was obliged to tell *a part* of what he knew about Harry Warrington. Thack., *Virg.*, Ch. XXVIII, 291.

William by a feint of flight drew *a part* of the English force from their post of vantage. Green, *Short Hist.*, Ch. II, § 4, 80.
Fragment as it (sc. Berwick) was, it was always viewed legally as representing the realm of which it had once formed *a part*. Ib., Ch. IV, § 6, 216.


Dr. Morris has already made the discrimination of the Middle English dialects *a part* of historical grammar teaching. Sweet, *N. E. Gr.*, Pref. 10.

Explaining the etymology of grammatical terms... is really no more *a part* of grammar than the etymology of such a word as 'oxygen' is *a part* of chemistry. Ib., 7.

It is not *a part* of primary and necessary morality that it is always wrong to hit a man. II. Lond. News, No. 3875, 128c.

1) Murray.
It is a part of woman’s innermost nature to give of herself to man. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 28, 269.

ii. Often, as part of his commercial training, a Liverpool youth will pass some years in a foreign land. *Escott, England*, Ch. VI, 85.

I find it easier to imagine all that ugly past than you do, because I myself have been part of it. *W. Morris, News from Nowhere*, Ch. XXVIII, 211.

They (sc. these ten volumes) form part of St. Martin’s Illustrated Library. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXX, 190a.

The Empire of which his country now forms part. *Times*.

They had played one of those tricks on the Opposition that have become part of their regular Parliamentary weapons. *Id.*, No. 1823, 982d.


VI. Sometimes we find the definite article absent before greater part.

She knew by heart | All Calderon and greater part of Lope. *Byron, Don Juan*, I, xi.

After living greater part of my life in a poor working-class district, I am now residing in a genteel suburb. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5613, 4a.

**plenty.** The suppression is now almost regular, the use of the indefinite article being chiefly met with in American writers. *Murray*.

i. He has plenty of money.

ii. Mr. Gunter, of Berkeley Square, supplied the ices, supper and footmen, — though of the latter Brough kept a plenty. *Thack, Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 50.

If her ladyship had six (sc. children), I've a plenty for them all. *Ib.*, Ch. XIII, 172.

*A plenty* of smoke was delivered from the council of three. *Id.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXVI, 290.

Remember to let it have a plenty of gravel in the bottom of its cage. *Longfellow, Kavanagh*, 71. 1)

**Note I.** *Plenty* is in no way to be distinguished from an indefinite numeral, when it throws off the preposition of. The practice seems to be quite usual in certain dialects. Thus in Modern Scotch: There were plenty folk ready to help. I know of plenty places to go to. *Murray*.

He'd plenty other childer. *Mrs. Gask., Mary Barton*, Ch. IX, 97.

Out into the darkness, out of night, | My flaring heart gave plenty light. *Masefield, The Everlasting Mercy*, 76.

II. This also applies to plenty when used predicatively. In this case it is even found occasionally in the comparative and superlative.

i. If reasons were as plenty as blackberries. *Henry IV, A, II, 2, 265*.

And what may lawns, cypresses, and ribands fetch, where gold is so plenty? *Scott, Kenilw.*, Ch. I, 16.

They (sc. factory girls) can earn so much, when work is plenty. *Mrs. Gask.*, *Mary Barton*, Ch. I, 7.

ii. Wherever kicks and cuffs are plentiest. *Le Fanu, T. O’Brien*, 84. 1)

Poets would be plentier. *Lowell, Study Wind.*, 22. 1)

III. Of plenty used as an adverb of degree, no further instance than the following has been found:

I'm seventeen, plenty old enough. *Baroness von Hutten, Pam.*, III, Ch. V, 134.

**ruck.** The suppression appears to be rare. No instances are given in *Murray*.

Th' carriages went bowling along toward her house, some w' dressed-up gentlemen like circus folk in 'em, and ruck o' ladies in others. *Mrs. Gask., Mary Barton*, Ch. IX, 94.

1) Murray.
store. Instances of suppression of the article are frequent enough in SHAKESPEARE, even when an adjective or such precedes. Late instances seem to be rare. FRANZ, Shak. Gram., § 277.

I do nothing doubt you have store of thieves. CYMB., I, 4, 107.

Oct. You may do your will, | But he's, (sc. Lepidus) a tried and valiant soldier.
— ANT. So is my horse, Octavius; and for that, | I do appoint him store of provender. JUL. Cæs., IV, 1, 30.

See also TAMING OF THE SHREW, III, 2, 188; TWO GENTLEMEN, I, 1, 108; COM. OF ER., III, 1, 34.

Prithhee, Wizard, 'can't you recommend a friend to a pretty mistress by the by, till I can find my own? You have store, I'm sure. FARQUHAR, THE CONSTANT COUPLE, I, 1, (51).

There were plenty of thistles, which indicates dry land; and store of fern, which is said to indicate deep land. SCOTT, PILGR. TO COMPOSTELLA, VII, 267.1)

Ah, dear, he took me from a goodly house, | With store of rich apparel, sumptuous fare. TEN., MAR. OF GER., 709.

Note. SCOTT also has store after the noun modified, as in:
And broadswords, bows and arrows store. LADY, I, XXVII.
The race of yore, | Who danced our infancy upon their knee, | And told our marvelling boyhood legends store [etc.]. Ib., III, i.

Observe also the absence of the indefinite article in the following quotations:

Of language he had more than ordinary share. DIXON, LIFE OF WIL. PENN, I, 33.2)

The air was gay with bright-green parroquets flitting about, — very mischievous they are, I am told, taking large tithe of the fruit. LADY BARKER, STATION LIFE IN NEW ZEALAND, 51.2).

59. Half almost regularly loses the (in)definite article, not only when it assumes the character of an adverb of quantity or degree, as in half the sum, half the men (CH. V, 16, Obs. VII), but also when it partakes of the nature of an absolute indefinite numeral, as in half of the sum, half of the men. (Compare much of the sum, many of the men.)

The preposition of, which is mostly dropped when a noun follows, is never suppressed before a personal pronoun, and rarely before a substantival demonstrative pronoun. Thus regularly half of us (you or them), not *half us (you or them); half of this (these, that or those), rarely half this (these, that or those). Before a substantival clause (CH. XV) of is regularly omitted, when the relative what is thrown off, while it is rarely dispensed with, when the relative is retained.

In the collocation at half price, half has the same meaning as in half the sum, notwithstanding the absence of the definite article before price, and may, therefore, be regarded as an adverb of degree or quantity. Half is a substantival indefinite numeral in such expressions as too knowing (clever, wild, etc.) by half = Dutch veel te bij de hand (knap, wild, enz.).

Half is also found preceded by the definite or indefinite article and followed by of, in which case it may be further modified by an adjective, as in the (a) half of the estate which fell to his share, the

1) MURRAY S.V. MORE, A, I, g. 2) ELLINGER, VERM. BEITR., 38.
latter half of the last century. In this construction, which, so far as the definitive article is concerned, is quite common, it denotes a detached portion of whatever is referred to; and is, of course, a pure noun. This holds true also when one as the alternative of other precedes, and of follows, as in One half of the men were seriously ill, the other could not be prevailed upon to do any extra work. It is but rarely and, apparently, only to meet the requirements of the metre that we find half preceded by the definite article (or some other modifier), while of is suppressed. Compare also Ch. V, 15—16, and see ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 17; Mätzn., Eng. Gram.², III, 180.

1) half not preceded by either article and not followed by of, 
   a) before a noun or the substitute of a noun: The silver rims won't sell for above half the money. Goldsmith, Vicar. The first blow is half the battle. Id., She Stoops to Conquer, I, (181). I believe she owns half the stocks. Sher., Rev., I, 1. I traversed half the town in search of it. Ib., I, 2. How could he spare half ten thousand pounds? Jane Austen, Pride and Prejud., Ch. XXIX, 298. Then all the Cratchit family drew round the hearth in what Bob Cratchit called a circle, meaning half a one. Dick., Christmas Carol, 3, III, 69. I never gave more than six guineas for a shawl in all my life. And Cornelia never more than half six. Mrs. Wood, East Lynne, I, 39. And yet she held him on delaying[...]. Trying his truth and his long-sufferance[, Till half-another, year had slipped away. Ten., Enoch Arden, 468. A reprint of the 'Encyclopædia Britannica' at half price. II. Lond. News.

β) before a substantive clause without what: Christmas was upon them before half she wanted to do was accomplished. Mrs. Alexander, For his Sake, II, Ch. II, 34. Half they hear at public meetings is false. Westm. Gaz., No. 5083, 16c.

γ) before a substantive clause with what: The estimates published in the papers place the value of the property destroyed at £140.000.000, or little more than half what the South African war cost Great Britain. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIX, 96.

2) half not preceded by either article, but followed by of, 
   a) before a noun: Regan advised him to go home again with Goneril and live with her peaceably, dismissing half of his attendants. Lamb, Tales, Lear, 157. The black cook spent half of the day at the street pump. Wash. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stop., Handl., I, 114). With that fortress half of Silesia... had been transferred to the Austrians. Mac., Fred., (698b). For half of their fleet to the right and half to the left were seen. Ten., Revenge, V. Note the varied usage in: If she should ever wed, she was sure the lord to whom she gave her hand, would want half her love, half of her care and duty. Lamb, Tales, 148.

β) before a personal pronoun: "I drink your health with cheerfulness, Mrs. Mann," and he swallowed half of it. Dick, Ol. Twist, Ch. II, 25. Half of you will be dead this time next year. Rudy. Kipl., The Light that failed, Ch. XI, 155.

γ) before a substantive clause with what: I became sick before I had eaten half of what I had bought. De Quincey, Conf., Ch. II, 32. There was never believing half of what that Bob said. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 18.
3) half preceded by the definite article, but not followed by of: And the half my men are sick. Ten., Revenge, I, vi. And then will I...| Endow you with broad land and territory | Even to the half my realm beyond the seas. Id., Lanc. and El., 953.

4) half preceded by other modifiers than either article, but not followed by of: She did not understand one-half the compliments which he paid. Thack., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXVIII, 303. It is impossible to muster one-half the nominal strength of the Unionists of all shades. Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 341b.

5) half preceded by either the definite or the indefinite article, and followed by of,
   a) before a noun. She had not forgot the half of the kingdom which he had endowed her with. Lamb., Tales, Lear, 157. (He) left her the half of his fortune. Thack., Virg., Ch. XCII, 979.
   b) before a personal pronoun: i. I don't know how much money he has had from your governor, but this I can say, the half of it would make F. B a happy man. Thack., New c., I, Ch. XXV, 284.
   ii. I have asked about men in my company, and found that a half of them under the flags were driven thither on account of a woman. Thack., Henry Esmond, III, Ch. V, 36.
   c) before a demonstrative pronoun: If the half of this be true, I will turn Christian. Ch. Kingsley, Hereward, Ch. XIV, 60a.
   d) before a substantive clause with what: You have got the half of what I have. Thack., Virg., Ch. LV, 568.

6) half preceded by another modifier than either article and followed by of: One half of the men were seriously ill. Murray.

7) half in the adverbial phrase by half: The other's economy in selling it (sc. the house) to him was more reprehensible by half. Sher., School for Scand., III, 2, (394).
   He is too moral by half, Ib., IV, 3, (418).
   Bob was always too knowing by half. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 12.

Note. On the analogy of half-an-hour, quarter-of-an-hour sometimes loses the indefinite article:
Quarter-of-an-hour later the bell rang. Jerome, Paul Kelver, I, Ch. III, 26a.
Inject it (sc. the serum) three times a day, quarter-of-an-hour before meals. Bern. Shaw, The Doctor's Dilemma, I, 24.

60. Also double rejects the definite article, when its grammatical function is changed to that of an adverb of degree or a substantival indefinite pronoun. The preposition of is thrown out before nouns, but mostly retained before substantive pronouns. (Ch. V, 16, Obs. VIII). See also Matzn., Eng. Gram. 2, III, 180.
   i. The silver rims will sell for double the money. Goldsmith, V i c a r.
   Instead of having double the strength of our opponent, it is doubtful if we shall have even the equivalent strength. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 1b.
   The majority which Mr. Asquith can claim is 275 and no more, and we shall not ask him to act, as if it were double that number. Ib., No. 5237, 1b.
   His (sc. a railway porter's) fees from the public...are equivalent to doctor's fees in the second-class passengers, and double doctor's fees in the case of first. Bern. Shaw, The Doctor's Dilemma, Pref., 26.
   ii. * She enclosed double of what I had asked. De Quincey, Confessions Ch. II 13.
** In every instance I found the price would be almost double what I should have paid for the same thing in England. *Rita, America—Seen through English eyes*, Ch. II, 53.

The railway was badly built and cost double what was estimated. *Athen.*, No. 4447, 62b.

iii. You paid me extremely liberally for the lie in question; but I unfortunately have been offered double to speak truth. *Sher.*, *School for Scand.*, V, 3, (435).

61. Many other nouns discard the article owing to a change of meaning. The discussion of the numerous cases that might be mentioned here, falls outside the scope of this book, belonging rather to the department of lexicography. A few instances must suffice. Compare 15, *a*; 36, *a*; 62; and also Ch. XXV, 27.

*ballet.* It was suggested in this place last night that ballet had been rather too much in evidence at Drury Lane. *I. Lond. News*, No. 3875, 134a. *(Compare: This has revived the taste for the ballet in England. *Ib.*, No. 3875, 135a).*

*compliment.* Mr. Bonar Law also pays high compliment to the sincerity and courage of the Nationalists. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6371, 3c.

*head.* i. (He did not care) to what extent property was destroyed, or the pursuits of life suspended, so that he did but make head against the enemy. *Mac., Fred.*, (698a).

ii. The unexpected success of the original war with Turkey appears to have caused a deplorable loss of head among (the statesmen). *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6288, 1c.

The man had heart as well as head. *I. Lond. News*, No. 3884, 462c.

*leaf.* Three or four sycamore trees, which were in full leaf, ... served to relieve the dark appearance of the mansion. *Scott, Abbots*, Ch. IX, 92.

*outline.* All these things are made clear to us in broad outline. *Hudson, Stud. of Lit.*, Ch. III, 248.

*rank.* Dr. Alfred Russel Wallace ... takes rank as one of the greatest figures of the nineteenth century. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6377, 2a.

*tongue.* When papa opened the door, Chubby was giving tongue energetically. *G. Eliot, Scenes*, 1, Ch. II, 25.

*Note.* Thus also to throw tongue. *Fowler, Concise Oxf. Dict.*

*tribute.* It is impossible to withhold respectful tribute to his extraordinary skill in turning events to his own advantage. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4977, 1b. *(Compare: We are unwilling to conclude this notice of Professor Skeat's last piece of work without paying a tribute to the great services rendered by him to the study of English. *Sedgefield (Mod. Lang. Rev.*, VIII, III, 295).*

*way.* The king's resistance gave way. *Green.*

*Note.* Thus also to make way (for others), to make way (= to make progress).

*word.* * He had himself carried word of the catastrophe to the firm's lawyers the previous day. *John Oxenham, A Simple Beguiler.*

** He had left word with little Jack that he was going a long walk. *Mrs. Craik, John Hall*, Ch. XV, 143.

*** Maria and Sylvia sent down word by the maid that they were tired that morning. *James Payn, That Friend of Sylvia's.*

**** He went on Tuesday, as I wrote you word. *Jane Austen, Pride and Prejudice*, Ch. XLVII, 279.
THE ARTICLE SUPPRESSED FOR THE SAKE OF BREVITY.

62. Both the definite and the indefinite article are often omitted where, strictly speaking, they are required by the sense.

The suppression is mostly due to motives of economy, which urge speakers and writers to sacrifice all words of minor significance, but may also arise from the necessities of rhythm or metre or oratorical polish. (9, d; 15.) In many cases it may be a survival of the practice in the earlier stages of the language. (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2061.) Sometimes it is open to question whether it is the definite or indefinite article which is understood. In not a few cases also there is no reason to prevent us from assuming the omission of a weak possessive pronoun. The reader is, therefore, cautioned to consult also Ch. XXXIII, where the supposed omission of the latter is discussed. In many cases the suppression causes the noun to appear in a modified meaning, or, contrariwise, the modified meaning causes the suppression of the article. See the preceding §.

SUPPRESSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

63. The suppression of the definite article is chiefly met with, when the noun stands without any individualizing adjunct, and is:

a) the non-prepositional object, or the subject of a passive sentence.

b) part of a prepositional word-group.

In either position the noun often forms a kind of unit with a preceding verb, e.g.: to balance accounts, to take into account. (9, d.) Of the innumerable cases which offer themselves for discussion, we can present only a few, which seem of particular interest. Some of the instances of suppression mentioned in 15 might also find a place in this §. Compare also MÄTZN., Eng. Gram. 2, III, 213; ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 35; for instances in SHAKESPEARE especially FRANZ, Shakes. Gram. 2, § 267.

account(s). a) to keep accounts. Fowler, Concise Oxf. Dict. to balance or square accounts. Ib.

b) * A very considerable proportion are shipped for account of the manufacturers. T. Tooke, Currency, 102.

** The Free Traders are so benighted that they do not take into account the amount of internal trade. Westm. Gaz., No. 6365, 2b.

Those individuals may almost be left out of account. Ib.

Note. MACAULAY has to take into the account and to leave out of the account, the phrases given by MURRAY, s. v. account, 14.

We must take into the account the liberty of discussion. Mac, Southey, (118b). (Thus passim in this essay.)

Nor did any landowner take them (sc. the veins of copper) into the account in estimating the value of his property. Id., Hist., I, Ch. III, 311. These transactions...must not be left out of the account. Ib., III, Ch. VIII, 132.

alarm. a) i. The timid soul, taking alarm at once, acceded to his desire to stay at home. Thack., Pend., 1, Ch. III, 32.

Voltaire’s sensitive vanity began to take alarm. Mac., Fred., (679b).
ii. The more bigoted of the clergy were quick to take alarm. *Green, Short Hist., Ch. VI, § IV, 309.*


**Note I.** Murray only has to take the alarm, and this seems to be the ordinary expression. After to give and to raise the article seems to be rarely, if ever, dispensed with.

He flung the sentinel over the ramparts, just as he was going to give the alarm. *Dick., Adventures of a Galley-Slave.*

Ryder instantly gave the alarm. *Con. Doyle, Sherl. Holm., Blue Carb.*

You rifled the jewel case, raised the alarm. *Ib.*

II. Very rarely the indefinite article is used after these verbs.

She... ran to Coggan's, the nearest house, and raised an alarm. *Hardy, Far from the Madding Crowd,* Ch. XXXIII, 245.

**anchor. a)** *They're heaving anchor!* *Mrs. Gask., Mary Barton,* Ch. XXVIII, 278.


**He immediately weighed anchor for Deal. Westm. Gaz., No. 5036, 4b.**

Last Saturday the steamship Medina, having on board their Majesties... weighed anchor at Portsmouth. *Times,* No. 1820, 922d.

**Note.** Thus also regularly to cast anchor and to drop anchor, but to slip the anchor (= to let the anchor go by letting the cable slip), the ship drags her anchor. *Murray.*

**b)** *A little shallop lay | At anchor in the flood.* *Ten., In M. m., CIII, 20.*

A ship rides at anchor, when it is secured at its moorings. *Harmsw. Enc.* s.v. anchor.

**To anchor = to cast anchor, to come to anchor. Murray.**

**Note.** Also to come to an anchor, as in:

Here we were obliged to come to an anchor. *Defoe, Rob. Crusoe,* 8.

A great steamer came to an anchor off the town. *Three Pretty Maids.*

**arms. a)** Bavaria took up arms. *Mac., Fred.,* (668b).

**Note.** Murray, s.v. arm 4, 5 and 6 has: to carry arms (= to wage war), to take up arms, to bear arms (= to serve as a soldier) to lay down arms; to order arms, to port arms, to present arms, to shoulder arms, to slope arms, to trail arms; and s.v. change, 9: to change arms.

**b)** *All the country and Europe were in arms.* *Thack., Van. Fair,* I, Ch. XXVIII, 297.

**To arms! to arms! the fierce Virago cries. Pope, Rape, V, 37.*

Were he himself the son of a belted Earl, he could not be better trained to arms. *Scott, Abbot,* II, 23.

The whole force stood to arms half an hour before daybreak. *Times.* (= Dutch stond in het geweer).


**Note.** Thus also to rise in arms, to be up in arms, under arms, to appeal to arms, a passage of (or at) arms, an assault of (or at) arms; man of arms, later man-at-arms, (one practised in war, a warrior), man-in-arms (armed man); but: Stand to your arms! (i. e. in order of battle, with arms presented).

**bank. b)** Such men as Mills and Hodson... offer help to a drowning man only when he has struggled to bank. *R. Ashe King, Ol. Goldsmith,* Ch. VIII, 90.

**battle. a)** Edward resolved to give battle. *Green.*

**Note.** Murray, s.v. battle, 11, has to have, keep, make, smite, strike, battle (all obs.); to bid (obs.), offer, refuse, accept, take (arch.), battle; to join battle; also, to do battle, (= to fight); to give battle (= to attack, engage).

**b)** Far liefer had I gird his harness on him, | And ride with him to battle and stand by. *Ten., Mar. of Ger., 94.*

The Liberals will go forth to battle with a foregone assurance of victory. Rev. of Rev.

block. b) i. But the woman answered that so fine a head should never come to block. Maxim. Pemb., I crown thee King, Ch. IV, 45.

ii. It was by bills of attainder... that the great nobles were brought to the block. Green, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § 1, 341.

The King's uncle, the Earl of Kent, was actually brought to the block. Ib., Ch. IV, § 4, 215.

Note. The omission appears to be rare.

blush. b) At first blush it may seem not only necessary, but even indecent, to discuss such a proposition as the elevation of cruelty to the rank of a human right. Bern. Shaw, The Doctor's Dilemma, Pref.

Note. Murray has at, on, etc. (the) first blush (= at the first glance). In none of his quotations is the article absent.

board. b) He volunteered to keep watch and ward on board till noon. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVII, 133b.

Note. Thus also within board, without board, over board (rarely over the board); but by the board. The phrase above board (often hyphened) in the sense of open(ly) also regularly without the article.

book. a) Johnson will repeat to me to-morrow morning before breakfast, without book,.. the first chapter of the Epistle of Saint Paul to the Ephesians. Dick., Domb., Ch XII, 107.

Note. Murray, s. v. book, 14 and 15, has by (the) book (= in set phrase) to bring to book (= to bring to account).

boot. b) He is as proud and vindictive as a hundred Douglases and a hundred devils to boot. Scott, Bride of Lam., Ch. XXI, 221.

Note. To the boot, and into the boot, according to Murray (s. v. boot, 1,b), are Scotticisms.

(You are) on the point of marrying your only daughter to a beggarly Jacobite bankrupt, the inveterate enemy of your family to the boot. Scott, Bride of Lam., Ch. XXI, 220.

bottom. a) I do not believe we have touched bottom; I believe the reduction will go on. Pall Mall Gaz., 1886, 22 April, 11/2.

He (sc. Goldsmith) must indeed have touched bottom at Peckham, if Paternoster Row was an improvement upon it. Rich. Ashe King, O. L. Goldsm., Ch. VI, 74.

b) At bottom the character was severe and stern. Truth, No. 472, 650b.

The world is good at bottom. Times, No. 1832, 111d.

Note. With at bottom (= in reality, as distinguished from superficial appearances) compare to be at the bottom of (= to be the real author or source of), as in: The Jesuits were at the bottom of the scheme. Mac., Hist., I, 387. 1)

For at bottom Murray gives at the bottom only as a variant, but instances of the latter appear to be rare.

bulk. b) Such knowledge can be obtained only by personal inquiry, directed not to men in bulk, but to the individuals who make up the mass. Times, No. 1822, 963b.

Note. Thus also to sell in bulk (= in large quantities, as it is in the hold). Flügel has by the bulk (= im Ganzen, im Durchschnitt, durchgängig, in Bausch und Bogen). Compare also in the lump, in the mass.

channel. b) The flood was making strongly up channel. Blackmore. The Maid of Sker, I, 16. 2)

character. b) * But, Moses! would not you have him run out a little against the annuity bill? That would be in character, I should think? Sher., School for Scand., III, 1, (390).

She can do justice to it (sc. the Ode to an Expiring Frog), sir. She will repeat it in character, sir, to-morrow morning. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XV, 129.

** It is always self-Ignorance that leads a man to act out of character. G. Mason, Self-Knowledge, I, IV, 41.1)

circuit. b) Pen's neighbours, the lawyers, were gone upon circuit. Thack., Pend., II, Ch. IX, 97

country. b) He wrote to the chaps at school about his top-boots, and his feats across country. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. III, 33.

He set out for a long aimless ride across country. Mrs. Alex., For his Sake, II, Ch. I, 15.
court. b) She was fined £250 ... for contempt of court. II. Lond. News, No. 3815, 830a.
daggers. b) Was Marston still at daggers drawn with his rich uncle? R. B. Brough, Marston Lynch, XXIV, 257.1)

Note. The phrase at daggers drawn seems to have been evolved from (at) daggers (or daggers') drawing, an expression which appears to have gone out of use. Murray. A quarrel in a tavern where all were at daggers drawing. Swift, Drapier’s Let., VII.1)

At daggers’ points is an infrequent variant of at daggers drawn.

Five minutes hence we may be at daggers’ points. Dick., Little Dorrit, Ch. XXX, 397a.
date. b) There is preserved at the back of a Lincoln corporation minute-book, under date of the sixth of Queen Elizabeth, a list of stage properties. Athen., No. 4477, 166b.
day. b) Halbert was only awakened by the dawn of day. Scott, Mon., Ch. XX, 232.
The first sacrifice was offered at the very peep of day. J. Parker, A post Life, 1, 118.1)

The classes of passengers will vastly vary according to the time of day. Günth., Leerboek, 74. (Compare: By the clock we tell the time of the day. Ib., 32.)

Though I waited at every hour of day and far into the night, no light footstep came to meet me. Blackmore, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVI, 216.

Note. The article is practically regularly dispensed with in expressions denoting a point of time.
ear. a) He... even went the length of offering to pitch his broad-brimmed hat and many-buttoned soutane into the bag... if only she would give ear to him. John Oxenham, Great-heart Gillian, Ch. III, 23.

Some men of sober judgment lent unwilling ear to these reports. Dixon, Life of Wil. Penn, II, 78.2)

b) * He must learn to recognize each sound by ear. Sweet, Prin. of Phon., §1.

To sing or play by ear: i.e. without the aid of written music. Murray.

** He had played it from ear. El. Glyn, The Reason why, Ch. X, 85.

Compare: To write down sounds from hearing. Sweet, Prin. Phon., §59.

earth. b) i. * They must infallibly have all gone rolling over and over together, until they reached the confines of earth. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XIV, 119.

But to return to the things and thoughts of earth. Lytton, Rienzi, II, Ch. III, 88.
The rulers of earth were fain to swim with the stream. Ch. Kingsley, Hyp., Pref.

** Nothing on earth can give me a moment's uneasiness. Sher., Riv. II, i, (227).

Dare any soul on earth breathe a word against the most angelical of women? Thack., Van. Fair, Ch. XVIII, 188.

Now, why on earth should you be glad? Punch.


*** When the storm-time comes, the lower growths grimp close to earth and go unscathed, and the graceful palm may be laid low. John Oxenham, Great-heart Gillian, Ch. IV, 34.

ii. * Certainly beyond the river, which was the end of all the earth, lived the Bad Men. RUDY, KIPL., WEE WILLIE WINKIE.

** I love my cousin here better than aught else upon the earth. RID. HAG., THE BRETHREN, Ch. II, 20.

I was not wanted in heaven or upon the earth. JEROME, PAUL KELVER, Ch. I, 14a.

Note. The suppression of the article would appear to be the rule after (up)on, regular in the emotional on earth in negative and interrogative sentences. (Ch. XLI, 10, Obs. III and IV.) Also after to the dropping may be practically regular. When, however, no relation of place is expressed, as after of, the omission is less usual. Compare 17. Observe that there is no analogous suppression of the article before globe and world, which are often used in practically the same meaning.

edge. b) He continually keeps his reader on edge. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6029, 9c.

Note. Thus also to set on edge.

elbow(s). b) * Pay that hardly keeps him in at elbows. G. ELIOT, MID., IV, Ch. XXXVIII, 281.

** Bessie had seen him out at elbows before. Id., BESSIE COSTREL, 63.

end. b) Each trunk is made to stand on end. GRAPH., No. 2271, 964.

ends. a) Many stories are told of the stern economy which the young couple had to practise to make ends meet. T. P.'S WEEKLY, No. 474, 713c.

Note. The ordinary expression is to make both ends meet.

expectation. a) The second ballots in France on Sunday exactly fulfilled expectation. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6329, 2b.

Note. The construction without the article (or possessive pronoun) is not mentioned in MURRAY. It is hardly necessary to say that the possessive pronoun is frequently met with.

b) Against (beyond, contrary to) expectation the man turned up at the right moment.

fashion. b) i. * In true English fashion they won their markets at the point of the sword. CH. KINGSLEY, WESTW. HOI, Ch. XVIII, 135a.

** To be in or out of fashion. To bring, come or grow into fashion. To go out of fashion. MURRAY, S. V. FASHION, 11.

The St. Mildred race used to be so much more in fashion. MISS YONGE, HEIR OF REDC., I, Ch. I, 8.

Note. To all appearance fashion stands with or without the article in the sense of manner, and to dispense with it in the sense of vogue (= Dutch zwan g). When denoting a mode or style of dress, furniture, speech, etc., as in the phrases to lead or set the fashion, it is the fashion, the article seems to be used regularly. Compare MURRAY, S. V. FASHION, 11 and 10.

favour. b) He was out of favour at Court. ATHEN., No. 4477, 165c.

Note. Thus also to be in favour.

flank. b) They were to attempt their original plan of landing to the westward of the town and taking it in flank. CH. KINGSLEY, WESTW. HOI, Ch. XIX, 142b.

flight. To take flight. MURRAY, S. V. FLIGHT, 2.

Note. Rarely with the article: My juvenal takes the flight, and leaves me here. SCOTT, MON., CH. XXVII, 288.

Both phrases, that with and without the article, are uncommon, the ordinary expression being to take to flight.
b) Thisbe, arriving first, perceived a lioness, which had just torn to pieces an ox, and, therefore, took to flight. Deighton, Note to Mids., I, 2, 12.

Note. Thus also: to betake oneself to flight, to put to flight, to turn to flight (= to cause to flee).

grace. a) At last the dishes were set on, and grace was said. Dick., Christm. Car. 5, III, 67.

guard. a) * I kept guard at intervals over Hector’s room. Mrs. Craik, A Hero, 93.
** The two young Cratchits, mounting guard upon their posts, crammed spoons into their mouths, lest they should shriek for goose. Dick., Christm. Car. 5, III, 67.

Let an intelligent policeman be told off to mount guard. Punch, 1872, 21 Sept. 116/1.
*** Her dependants one after another relieved guard. Thack., Henry Esmond, I, Ch. IV, 32.

b) The Kaiser ... has ... drawn public attention to the misgivings and apprehensions which prevail in military circles in Germany as to dangers against which they need to be on guard. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 97b.

Note. The ordinary practice is to place the possessive pronoun before guard: to be, stand or lie (up)on one’s guard; to put or set a person on his guard. The possessive pronoun is regular in off one’s guard.

hand. b) * He had promised to be at hand in case anything was needed. Edna Lyall, A Knight Errant, Ch. XXXVIII, 375.
The hour was at hand to which Campion had been looking forward so impatiently. Anstey, A Fallen Idol, Ch. VI, 86.
The man with whom the Colonial Office deals at first hand. Spectator.
** He was brought up by hand. Dick., Ol. Twist, Ch. II, 22.
*** By this time he had himself pretty well in hand. Edna Lyall, A Knight Errant, Ch. XXIX, 272.

This will be done with much greater ease, if the matter is taken in hand at an early stage. Times.

Orders will only be executed to the amount of cash in hand. Whiteley.
**** What have you on hand just now? Con. Doyle, Sherl. Holm., I, 106.
***** He was executed out of hand. Huxley, Lect. and Es., 113b, N.
The Turkish troops have got completely out of hand. Rev. of Rev.
****** The first that comes to hand. Goldsmith, Good-nat. man, III.
The latest news to hand is [etc.]. Daily Tel.

horse. b) I must be on horse before cock-crow. Scott, Mon., Ch. XXXIV, 369.
hounds. b) He had lived, all his life, a country gentleman, ... riding to hounds and shooting all things that were to be shot in their season. W. J. Locke, The Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. III, 44.


Note. Compare to keep the house = to stay in the house, as in sickness.

key. b) The excitement of the departure puts him in key for that of the arrival. Stephenson, Walking Tours.

length. b) * While stretched at length upon the floor, | Again I fought each combat o’er. Scott, Marm., III, Intr. viii.
** She now took the occasion of a momentary amelioration in Arthur’s disease to write to him at length. Lyttton, Night and Morn., 479.
*** At length she spoke, "O Enoch! you are wise". Ten., En. Arod., 210.
Note. For at length in the first application modern practice mostly has at one's full length. For at length in the third application Early Modern English also had at the length: At the length truth will out. Merc. of Ven., II, 2, 72.


Sir Robert Peel’s apostrophe to the Conservatives was reproduced in spirit if not in letter by Mr. Balfour in his speech at the Primrose League demonstration at Hatfield. Graph.

** Pres. Wilson’s pledge... will be kept in the letter — but only in the letter. Spectator (Westm. Gaz., No. 6383, 16c).

Note. In letter in this application is pronounced archaic by Murray, s.v. letter, 5; but seems common enough in conjunction with in spirit. The phrase in the letter is not mentioned by Murray.

Note also: to the letter, as in: This threat was executed to the letter. Lytton, Rienzi, II, Ch. VIII, 104.

measure. b) * My Lady was once vexed beyond measure. Black, Adv. Phaeton, XXXI, 414. 1)

** In Scotland grain used to be sold by measure alone. Stephens, Bk. Farm, II, 394. 1)

*** The suit is more likely to be bought ready-made than ‘made to measure’. Mayhew, Lond. Lab., I, 4762. 1)

mode. b) At any rate, card-playing is out of mode. Thack., Virg., Ch. XXIV, 253.

Note. Thus also in mode. According to Murray (s.v. mode, 10), the definite article may be used in these phrases, which are now obsolete.

night. b) Wo buys flowers at this time of night? Galsworthy, The Pigeon, I, (10).

Note. What has been said of day also applies m. in. to night.

occasion. a) He took occasion to inquire about the portrait that hung against the wall. Wash. Irv., Dolf HcyI (Stof., Handl., I, 144).

He had taken occasion to express his opinion of Lady Bracknell in the most unequivocal terms. Norris, My Friend Jim, Ch. XVIII, 109.

Who knew the seasons when to take | Occasion by the hand. Ten., To the Queen. Compare: She now took the occasion of a momentary amelioration in Arthur’s disease to write to him at length. Lytton, Night and Morn., 479.

On returning to the inn, Dr. Riccabocca took the occasion to learn from the innkeeper... such particulars as he could collect. Id., My Novel, I, Ch. IX. 33. I seized the occasion of a promenade. Thack., Henry Esr., III, Ch. XIII, 445. Compare: 40 and 73, and see also Ch. XIX, 49, Obs. VI.

opposition. b) When that gentleman was in opposition. Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. X, 97.

Lord Loughborough... was now in opposition. Mac., War. Hast., (651a).

They are in opposition and not in office. Westm. Gaz.

order. b) Mr. Blotton (of Aldgate) rose to order. Dick., Pickw., Ch. I, 3.

The Prime Minister of Great Britain called Europe to order; and Europe recognized the voice of authority. Sat. Rev.

Note. Thus also: The speaker (or motion, etc.) is not in order or out of order. Murray.

part. a. To take part | Against Olympius. Chapman, Iliad. I. 570.

There wanted not those who were willing to acquire the favour of the lady of Avenel by... taking part with the youth whom she protected. Scott, A b b o t, Ch. III, 39.

Steele took part with the Opposition. Mac., A d d i s o n, (772a).

1) Murray.

H. Poutsma, A Grammar of Late Modern English. II.
Note. Murray also has *to take the part of*, practically in the same meaning as *to take part with*. Thus also with a possessive pronoun: he took *my* (*your; his, etc.*) *part*.

**pickle.** b) The Commons House of Parliament has many a rod in *pickle* for the Peers. Rev. of Rev., CXC VIII, 5666.

Note. Thus, apparently, regularly in this saying. Compare, however: It was only after the last good word of glad tidings had been said, that the rod was taken out of the pickle. Mrs. LYNN LINTON, Rebel of Family, II, vii.¹)

**pike.** a) She saw the boy attempt, with a long stick, to mimic the motions of the warden, as he alternately shoulders, or *ported*, or sloped pike. Scott, Abbot, Ch. III, 27.

**possession.** a) In the later empire they (sc. the Goths) *obtained possession* of part of Dacia. Deighton, Note to ‘As you like it, III, 3, 9.’

Note. Thus also in *to get (take) possession*.

**post.** b) A letter from Lady Florence to her sister had arrived by *first post* two days before the event. Agn. & Eg. Castle, Diam. cut Paste, III, Ch. I, 232.

Note. This seems to be an exceptional case, although the article is regularly absent, when no ordinal numeral precedes.

**practice.** b) The Cape Colony, as we ought to know, but in *practice* we always forget, was originally a Dutch colony. Froude, Oceana, Ch. III, 42.

Note. Thus also regularly in *to put in (or into) practice*, *to reduce to practice*; *to be in (out of) practice*.

**press.** b) *The book is not at press.* Acad.²)


** At the moment of going to press the Austrian Government is talking about issuing an ultimatum. Rev. of Rev., CCXXV, 507b.

Note. At *press* seems to be an unusual collocation, in *the press* being mostly used instead. The definite article regularly stands in other combinations analogous to the above, such as *to bring (put, commit, send, submit) to the press*; *to carry (see) through the press*; *to come (to pass, undergo) the press*; *to correct the press (= the printing, or the errors in composing the type)*. Murray, s. v. *press*, 13, e.

**proof.** a) Long before this date... Chaucer... *had given proof* of how far his genius preceded his age by several examples of composition in prose. George Craik, Man. of Eng. Lit., 184.

**question.** b) *Every crow is a swan to this writer, when Liszt is in question Lit. World.* ³)

** It was not till comparatively a late period that the general accuracy of his narrative was brought into question. Scott, Pref. to ‘The Bridal of Triermain’.

I shall not repeat them, lest the veracity of Antonie van der Heyden and his comrades be called into question. Wash. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 134). Note. Thus also *to come into question* (Murray, s. v. *question* 1, d). *To bring into question* seems to be uncommon. Instead of *to call into question* we mostly find *to call in question*. Murray, s. v. *call*, 18.

The article is never dropped in *out of the question*, as in: Inviting him was *out of the question*. Thack., A Little Dinner at Timmins’s, Ch. I, (306). Observe also: He could not lawfully be put to the question. Mac., Bacon, (371a). (= tortured.)

**rein.** a) *Rashleigh had long ago drawn rein.* Mrs. Alex., For his Sake, II, Ch. I, 17.

Dick *drew rein* an instant. W. Morris, News from Nowhere.

¹) Murray. ²) Ten Brug., Taalst., XI. ³) Ten Brug., Taalst., X.
** 'And yet', thus gave she rein to jeer and gibe. R. BRIDGES, Eros and Psyche, No. XXI. 1)

Note. MURRAY has to give (the) rein(s) to. Apparently the ordinary construction is to give the reins to. The article and the plural form of rein seem to be regularly used in other phrases analogous to the above.

* Bulstrode holds the reins and drives him. G. ELIOT, Mid., V, Ch. XLVI, 334.

** No man ever more completely laid the reins on the neck of his inclinations. OPEE, Lect. on Art, IV, 332. 1)

*** He could afford to let the reins loose at times. MRS. CRAIK, A Hero, 24.

**** Sir Henry Campbell Bannerman took up the reins of office. Times, No. 1819, 894a.

***** To give it that degree of prominence is to throw the reins to one's whim. M. ARNOLD, Es. Crit., II, 82. 1)

Observe also: They gave a fairly loose rein to their criticisms of the policy of the cabinet. Times.

rescue. b) He had undoubtedly been concerned in the attempt at rescue. McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 317.

Note. Compare the phrase: to the rescue! as in: The Genoese are come—ho! to the rescue! BYRON, Mar. F. A., IV, ii, (376b). See also 40.

rest. b) * There the wicked cease from troubling; there the weary are at rest. Bible, Job, III, 17.

Our suspicions can now be set at rest. MRS. WOOD, East Lynne, II, 71.

Set your mind at rest. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. VIII.

** Alarbus goes to rest and we survive | To tremble under Titus' threatening looks. Tit. A d r., I, I, 133.

Four years ago the mortal remains of Francis Thompson were laid to rest. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 472, 652a.

Note. At rest has no variants with a modifier before rest; but for to go to rest and to be laid to rest we frequently find: to go to one's (long) rest and to be laid to one's (long) rest: Long ere they were within sight of land, Lucy Passmore was gone to her rest. Ch. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXVII, 209b. The old warrior was laid to his long rest in the presence of only three people. Times.

He went to his long rest at Kensal Green Cemetery. Rev. of Rev.

risk. a) I scarcely know what thoughts I had; but they ran risk of being hardly more rational and healthy than that child's mind must have been. CH. BRONTE, Villette, Ch. II, 10.

I thought she ran risk of incurring such a careless, impatient repulse. Ib., Ch. III, 31.

Note. The suppression of the article seems unusual and is not recorded by MURRAY, who gives to run the risk and to run a risk.

saddle. b) * Kit Norton slipped from saddle. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. I, 8.

** He gathered the reins into his hand, and got to saddle. Ib., Ch. VI, 76.

Get up to saddle. Ib., Ch. VI, 76.

Note. MURRAY does not mention these combinations, and the dropping of the article or possessive pronoun may be rather the exception than the rule. Observe also the figurative phrases in the saddle, to get into the saddle, to cast out of saddle. MURRAY, s.v. saddle, 2.

He who hath achieved nobility by his own deeds, must ever be in the saddle. SCOTT, A b b o t, Ch. III, 30.

sail. a) There was a vessel ready to make sail. WASH. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., i, 123).

Note. Thus also to cross (hoist, lower, set, shorten, strike etc.) sail. MURRAY, s.v. sail, 2.
sea. b) He is quite at sea, he does not know what else to do. G. Eliot, M. I., IV, Ch. XI, 299.

War at sea is analogous to war on land. Westm. Gaz., No. 6288, 11b. Although fairly well acquainted with “Hamlet”, I found myself constantly at sea. Ib., No. 6353, 7a.

** Clouds were far off, sailing away beyond sea. Ch. Bronte, Villette, Ch. XIV, 157.

*** He made his way by sea to Naples. Dick., Cop, Ch. L, 355b.

Commanders who by sea or land upheld the honour of the country. Times.

**** On sea... there are always a countless number of possible communications. Westm. Gaz., No. 6288, 11b. (Compare: Hastings was little more than four months on the sea. Mac., War. Hast., 639).

***** The land-breeze had blown fresh out to sea. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Ho! Ch. XVII, 1336.

A liner like the New York puts to sea with about 9000 serviettes. Titbits.

Note. Murray has beyond (the) sea or seas; on or upon the sea; over (the) sea; to put (put off, put out, stand out) to sea. Compare: over the sea, as in: He could look out over the sea. (John Oxenham, Great-heart Gillian, Ch. XII, 81), with: By the help of canvas wings...[he] proposes to fly oversea from Dover to Calais (H. Brooke, Fool of Quat IV, 2'), and with: Now living oversea in a quiet farmstead (Daily Chron.).

The article does not seem to be thrown out after out of: The outside light striking on her eyes, made them like green stars looking up out of the sea. John Oxenham, Great-heart Gillian, Ch. XI, 76.

sentence. a) * You have passed sentence upon and marked with disgrace your officer Lucius Pella. Hunter, Note to 'Jul. Cæs., IV, 3, 2'.

** She (sc. Lady Anne Berkeley) opened the Commission, sat on the bench, impannelled the jury, and, when the verdict was given, pronounced sentence. 11. Lond. News, 1895, 786a.

Note. Thus, according to Flügel (s. v. sentence) also to give or pass sentence (upon). Compare also: St. Ogg’s passes Judgment. G. Eliot, M. III., VIII. Ch. II.

shop. a) to shut up shop. Fowler, Concise Oxf. Dict.

Note. In the sense of to cease to do business we also find to shut up the shop: He shut up the shop altogether. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 16.

And what will you do with yourself when you’ve shut up the shop? W. J. Locke, The Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. III, 44.

shore. b) * Built upon a dismal reef of sunken rocks, some league or so from shore,...there stood a solitary lighthouse. Dick., Christm. Car. 3, III, 75.

** Let us be thankful that we are once more on shore.

*** Heaven help him!” quoth Lars Porsena, | “And bring him safe to shore. Mac., Lays, Hor. LXIII.

Then the watching boat trailed home to shore. Westm. Gaz., No. 6023, 3b.

sight. b) * Payable at (or after) sight.

He liked to create the impression that he could read any classical author at sight. Barry Pain, The Culminating Point.

No one would have believed at first sight that he was nine years older. Mar. Crawf., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. I, 8. (Note the difference with at sight.)

The National Convention has agreed upon a scheme which at first sight seems bold and original. Rev. of Rev., CCXVIII, 513a.

1) Murray.
•• We walk by faith, not by sight. Bible, Cor., B, V, 7.

To know a man by sight.

*** A ditch or a stretch of newly macadamised road comes in sight. Jerome, Idle Thoughts, VI, 73.

**** They ought to be shot on sight. W. J. Locke, The Glory of Clem Wing, Ch. III, 48.

***** Out of sight out of mind. Prov.

****** Though lost to sight, to memory dear. Prov.

Till the bird was lost to sight in the clouds. Titbits.

******* Long ere they were within sight of land, Lucy Passmore was gone to her rest. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Hol!, Ch. XXVII, 209b.

Note I. At the sight and at the first sight do not lose the article, when they have distinctly the value of an adverbial clause of time, as in:

She pointed to the old goat whose legs were hobbled, and so evidently cursed her, that both girls laughed out at the sight. John Oxenham, Great-heart Gillian, Ch. II, 15. (= when they saw this.)

His timidity struck me at the first sight. Goldsmith, She Stoops, III, (197).

(= when I first saw him.)

Observe, however, the absence of the article in the prepositional expression at sight of, as in: Sir Roderick... | Reddened at sight of Malcolm Graeme. Scott, Lady, II, xxvii.

II. At first sight is equivalent to the idioms illustrated in:

i. Nor, strange as it may appear at a first glance, is their contentment hard to understand. Good Words. (Stof., Leesb., I, 74).

ii. It appears at the first blush that [etc.]. Lytton, Caxtons, XII, Ch. VII, 328.

iii. The present antagonists appeared at the first glance more evenly matched than the last. Ib., III, Ch. 113, 17.

silence. a) i. "Could you lick three men?" I said, breaking silence. Wil. De Morgan, Joseph Vance, Ch. I, 2.

** The playwright (requires) us to suppose that a man would keep silence... about facts which could only distress temporarily a dead person's family. II. Lond. News, No. 3879, 274c.

ii. Gabriel broke the silence. Hardy, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. VIII, 67.

It was the Queen who broke the silence. Hal. Sutcl., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. VIII, 125.

Note. Murray has to keep and to break silence, not mentioning the alternative practice, which may, however, be common enough. Compare also: Still must thy sweeter sounds their silence keep? Scott. Lady, I, 1.

spirit. b) i. In spirit, I believe we must have met. Ch. Bronte, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXVII, 551.

Bayham says he is disturbed in spirit. Thack., Newc., I, Ch. XXV, 281.

He felt that the party were united in spirit. Times, No. 1820, 919a.

ii. I am standing in the spirit at your elbow. Dick., Christm. Car.

Dick had turned northward across the park, but he was walking in the spirit on the mud-flats with Maisie. Rudy. Kipl., The Light that Failed, Ch. V, 61.

Note. Both in spirit and in the spirit are used as opposites of in the flesh and in (the) letter, the latter being, apparently the more frequent, except when used in conjunction with either of the last-mentioned phrases. See also under letter.

sport. a) He was not willing to spoil sport. Thack., Van Fair, I, Ch. VI, 54

spur. a) i. * Few were able to make way through that iron wall; but of those few was Dunois, who, giving spur to his horse... fairly broke his way into the middle of the phalanx. Scott, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXXVII, 461.

** Setting spurs to his horse. Black's Sir Walter Scott's Read., The Abbot, 48.
*** Foker striking spurs into his pony, cantered away down Rotten Row. Thack., Pend., II, Ch. II, 28.

*** Carver Doone... thrust spurs into his flagging horse. Blackmore, Lorna Doone, Ch. LXXIV, 307.

ii. He put the spurs to his horse. Hall Caine, Deemster, Ch. VI, 52.

Note. The construction with the article seems to be unusual.

stable. b) He put the horse in stable again. Hal. Sutcl., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. V, 74.

Note. The suppression is probably rather the exception than the rule.

stake. b) So much is at stake for us in keeping the command of the sea. Westm. Gaz., No. 4925, 1c.

Note. The suppression of the article is practically regular. In the following quotation it is inserted for the sake of the metre:

Rightly to be great | Is not to stir without great argument, | But greatly to find quarrel in a straw, | When honour's at the stake. Ham. I, IV, 4, 56.

street. b) Working the steam down street as well as he. Hughes, Tom Brown, 26.

Note. The absence of the definite article in this combination appears to be very rare.

tale. b) The clipped crowns... were to be received by tale in payment of taxes. Mac., Hist., XXII, IV, 695, 2)

tiptoe. b) All Europe was on tiptoe with expectation to see how Philip would avenge himself. Motley, Rise.

He followed his cousin on tiptoe. Hughes, Tom Brown at Oxf., Ch. XXXII. 2)

Note. Flügel (s.v. tiptoe) has to be on tiptoe in expectation, to be a tiptoe with expectation, and to be on the tiptoe of expectation. The House is now waiting on the tiptoe of expectation for the Budget. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 4c.

Compare also: Do not keep expectation on the tiptoe. Flor. Nightingale, Nursing, 38. 2)

Mrs. Berry left the room tiptoe. G. Meredith. Ord. of Rich. Fev., Ch. XXX, 246.

top. b) His head was small, and flat at top. Wash. Irv., Sketch-Bk., Leg. of Sleepy Hollow, 344.

Note. No further instances of the article being thrown out have been found.

trial. b) I have him on trial. Mrs. Alex., For his sake, I, Ch. XV, 243.

** He was determined to put their mettle to trial. Smol., Rod. Rand., Ch. II, 14.

Note. Thus also, according to Flügel: the hour of trial, by way of trial. Compare also: His fortitude was not put to the proof. Steph. Gwenn, Thom. Moore, Ch. I, 12.

It is... becoming more common at our public schools for a newly appointed assistant to come at first upon probation. Times.

view. b) The pack had vanished from view. Graph.

** Directly you have in view. Dick., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. I, 5.

When any national object is in view. Times.

The Government has also in view a system of Labour Exchanges. Westm. Gaz., No. 5107, 2a.

** They passed the Headland and were lost to view. Ib., No. 6023, 3a.

Note. Flügel (s.v. view) also has at first view, to take from view, in full view of the assembly, to keep in view. Fowler mentions on view—open to inspection.

water. b) It has kept my head above water. Mrs. Gask., Life of Ch. Brontë, 306.

** Sir Roger and the Spectator go by water to Vauxhall Gardens. Spectator No. 383 (Compare: I had promised to go with him on the water to Spring-garden. Ib.)

He felt vaguely that if he sprang into the air, he would swim about in it like a fish in water. T. P.'s Christmas Numbers for 1911, 4c. (Note the different practice observed in into the air and in water).

He took the horses to water. Wash. Rev., Sketch-Bk., XXII, 346.

Window. b) I should throw myself out of window: Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXIII, 237.

Note. The omission seems to be due to an excessive desire of brevity, and is not usual, except in the phrase to turn the house out of window (= Dutch het huis op stelten zetten). Compare: I threw out of the window everything he possessed. James Payn, Glow-Worm Tales, II, D, 55.

She looked out from the window. Dick., Christmas Car., 49, IV, 96.

Work. He promptly sets his solicitor to work. Westm. Gaz.

Note. Thus also at work. In the following quotation the use of the article is due to the distinctly specialized meaning of work: James set himself energetically and methodically to the work. Mac., Hist., III, Ch. VIII, 138.

Year. b) There's a good deal of fog always along the Thames at this time of year. W. Black, The New Prince Fort, Ch. XIV.

The grass is wonderfully green for this time of year. Günth., Leerb., 66.

Note. The suppression of the article seems to be confined to the collocation this or that (the) time of year.

64. Some groups of adverbial adjuncts in which the definite article has fallen out, deserve special mention:

a) Such as are made up of a preposition + the positive of an adjective totally or partially converted into a noun; e.g.: after dark; at dark, at full, at large, at present, at random; for good; in common, in full, in future, in general, in little, in particular, in short, in special; of late, of old; on high etc. For illustration see Ch. XXIX, 11; 12, c; 22, Obs. VII and VIII.

b) Such as are made up of the preposition at + superlative of an adjective partially converted into a noun; e.g.: at best, at earliest, at farthest (or furthest), at fewest, at first, at last, at latest, at least, at longest, at most, at widest, at worst, etc. Most of these are also found with the article, the two constructions sometimes expressing different shades of meaning. Jespersen (Mod. Eng. Gram., 6,36) ascribes the loss of the article in these combinations to phonetic decay: at representing Middle English atte = Old English at þe. For a discussion see Ch. XXX, 38.

c) Such as are made up of a preposition + superlative + noun. The suppression seems to be rather the exception than the rule. Compare 20, c and see Mätzner, Eng. Gram., III, 205; and especially Ellinger, Ver. Einl., 37 and Dubislaw, Beit., § 9.

Their friendship dated from earliest youth. Motley, Rise, I, Ch. II, 77b.

Here was nerve that was truly wonderful, restoring calm and confidence in an assembly where men's nerves were at highest tension. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 4a. (Compare: It is a noticeable fact that, after a full-dress debate, when everybody's nerves have been stretched to the highest pitch, the benches next day are scantily attended. Ib., 4b.)

The realisation of this ambition has received the careful attention of inventors and students from earliest times. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIX, 30a.
From earliest times the Waganda have been a clothed people. Graph., No. 2271, 962b.

65. Sometimes it is the connection of a noun with another noun that appears to be responsible for the suppression of the definite article. Thus it is more or less regularly absent:

a) in many adverbial expressions containing two nouns both preceded by a preposition, from before the first and to, sometimes till, before the second:

1) such as denote a period:
   i. From morn to noon, from noon to dewy eve. Bain, H. E. Gr.
   He was tippling and tipsy from morning till night. Thack., Pend., II, Ch. XXXVIII, 404.
   Thirty masses consumed the hours from night till morn. Lytton, Rienzi, II, Ch. VI, 109.
   His mouth was filled with texts from morning to night. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVI, 131b.
   ii. His eye had been on the work from commencement to close. Ch. Brontë, Villette, Ch. XIX, 247.
   iii. He stayed from first to last. Times. (Sometimes with the article:
         His work from the first to the last lay chiefly among the Submerged
         Tenth. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 232a.)

2) such as denote a space or distance:
   i. I'll undertake to read you the whole from beginning to end. Sher., Critic, I, I, (450).
   He made a bet of a bowl of punch that he could repeat the whole of the Daily Advertiser from beginning to end. II. Lond. News. (Sometimes with the article: I did not see a fault in any part of the play, from the beginning to the end. Sher., Critic, I, I, (450).
   ii. The Northwest territories have an extent from east to west of just 1100 miles. Times.
   iii. My first aim will be to clean down Moor House from chamber to cellar. Ch. Brontë, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXIV, 479.
   iv. The Academy is Royal from flagstaff to floor. II. Lond. News, No. 1812, 712.
   v. Frank trembled from head to foot. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIX, 145b.
   He trembled from head to foot. T. P.'s Weekly, Christm. Num. b., for 1911, 4b.
   vi. After perusing the paper he could repeat every word of it from start to finish. II. Lond. News.
   vii. At market he went from pen to stall. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 20.
   viii. From pillar to post (originally from post to pillar) Murray, s.v. pillar, 11.

Thus also: To live from hand to mouth: Since then you have lived from hand to mouth. El. Glyn, The Reason Why, Ch. II, 12.

Note. The above expressions bear a close resemblance to those in which the two nouns standing after from and to (till) are identical, such as:

a) from week's end to week's end. (Ch. XXIX, 24, d).

b) He was sent from school to school. Mac., Clive, (498b).
The tale is *from end to end* an ingenious invention. R. Ashe King, O1. Goldsmith, Ch. V, 53.

In these, however, there is rather an ellipsis of *one... another (or the other)* than of the definite article. (Ch. XL, 155-6.)

*b) in many adverbial expressions of attendant circumstances, consisting of two nouns, only the second of which is preceded by a preposition. Most of them have the value of a nominative absolute. (Ch. V, 10, b, 2.)*

i. Doolan's paper was lying on the table *cheek-by-jowl* with Hoolan's paper. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXX. 325.


ii. Mr. Gladstone was working *hand in glove* with a Russian lady against the Government of his own country. Rev. of Rev., CCXXXI, 278a.

iii. I heard that Jack was *head over heels* in love with me. Titbits, 1895, 9 Nov., 92c.

iv. There sat a reporter *pencil in hand* to take down his words. Murray, s. v. hand, 29.


*Note. Also in these expressions, when the two nouns are identical, as in *arm in arm*, *shoulder to shoulder*, etc., it is more plausible to assume the ellipsis of *one... another* or *(the other).* See Ch. XL, 155-6.*

II. An adverb sometimes takes the place of preposition + noun.

The Boers won *hands down*. Rev. of Rev., CCVI1, 232b.

The straddling bowman lost his left foothold and went over *head downwards*. Chester, The Free Man (T. P.'s Christm. Num. for 1911, 4c.)

c) in many adverbial expressions containing two nouns the first preceded by various prepositions, the second by *of* as the substitute of a genitive. In many of these the individual meaning of the words is dimmed, so that they approach in value to prepositions. Such arc on account of, in advance of, in aid of, in behalf of, on behalf of, in case of, in company of, in consequence of, in consideration of, in contravention of, under cover of, in default of, in defence of, in defiance of, in despite of, by dint of, in favour of, by force of, for (from) lack of, in lieu of, by means of, (up)on pain of, in point of, in praise of, in pursuance of, in quest of, at the rate of, by reason of, in regard of, in respect of, in right of, in search of, in spite of, in time of, by (or in) virtue of, for want of, by way of, etc.

In some, hardly differing from the above, the individual meaning of the component parts is more sensibly preserved, so that they more or less regularly retain the article before the first noun. This is the case with: *on (the) charge of, at the cost of, in (the) course of, at (or by) the desire of, for the ends of, in (the) event of, with the exception of, in (the) face of, on the face of, by (the) favour of, in (the) front of, at the hand(s) of, by (the) help of, in the middle of, in the midst of, in the name of, (up)on (the) occasion of, at (or by) the order(s) of, (up)on the part of, in (the) place of, to the point of, in (the) presence of, (up)on (or under) (the) pretence of, in (the) room of, for (the) sake of, on the score of, with a, show of, by the side of, at (the) sight of, in (the) stead of, on the strength of, on the subject of, in the teeth of, on (the) top of, at the
top of, at the urgency of, on the view of, by (the) vote of, in the way of, etc.

The discussion of the word-groups belonging to one and the other of the above lists, belongs rather to the chapter dealing with prepositions than to the present. For numerous illustrations see also ELLINGER, Ver. Beitr., 31.

d) in many adverbial expressions containing two (or more) nouns connected by and, which denote things often thought of together or as a whole, or which express two aspects of one and the same thing, or which are put together for the sake of assimilation or assonance or both.

1) Such as do not contain any preposition. These mostly express a relation of attendant circumstances, generally of an intensive import. In many of the combinations illustrated below, we may also assume a possessive pronoun to be understood.

bag and baggage. Here's Klaas Klimmer come in, bag and baggage, from the farm. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 113). (Compare, however: Come, shepherd, let us make an honourable retreat; though not with bag and baggage, yet with scrip and scrippage. As you like it. III, 2, 170.)

body and bones. See Ch. V, 10, b, 1.

body and soul. (Ch. V, 10, b): Body, soul and mind, he belonged to Bismarck. T. P.'s Weekly, 2b.

field and road. See Ch. V, 10, b, 1.

hammer and tongs. She was always at it, hammer and tongs, just as hard as ever. BARRY PAIN, Miss Slater. Before the middle of October we shall be at it, hammer and tongs. Westm. Gaz., No. 6305, 7a.

hand and foot. See Ch. V, 10, b, 1.

head and shoulder. See Ch. V, 10, b, 1.

heart and soul. (Ch. V, 10, b, 1): Carlo Emmanuelle III...threw himself, heart and soul, into the national movement towards liberty. RICH. BAGOT, My Italian Year, Ch. II, 23.

hip and thigh. The Saxons would have been smitten, hip and thigh. WALT. BESANT, London, I, 30.

horse and foot. See Ch. V, 10, b, 1.

lock, stock and barrel. He repudiated Protection and Food taxes, lock, stock and barrel. Rev. of Rev., No. CXCVI, 341b.

neck and crop. See Ch. V, 10, b, 1.

root and branch. See Ch. V, 10, b, 1.

tooth and nail. As they had fasted since the middle of the day, they did no great violence to their own inclinations in falling on it (sc. the supper), tooth and nail. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XLIII, 333b.

I go at it, tooth and nail. Id., Cop., Ch. XLI.

The whole profession in Middlemarch have set themselves, tooth and nail, against the Hospital. G. ELIOT, V, Mid., Ch. XLIV, 325.

Note. I. Sometimes we find two or more of these intensive combinations accumulated together.

To the good cause I devote thee, flesh and fell, sinew and limb, body and soul. SCOTT. Abbots, Ch. X, 94.
Note. There is no intensive import when the the nouns are connected by or, as in:
Only this I know, | That whatsoever evil happen to me, | I seem to suffer nothing. heart or limb. Ten., Mar. of Ger., 472.

III. When the two nouns are identical, as in neck and neck, we may assume the ellipsis to be that of one... the other (Ch. XL, 155-6.)

2) such as have a preposition before the first noun, that before the second being mostly suppressed as being identical with the preceding.

body and soul. The reaction has been trying to body and soul. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 478, 3b. (Also soul and body, see below.)

brow and crown. He coloured over brow and crown. G. Eliot, Adam Bede, Ch. I, 3.

Church and State. "Only Scotchmen need apply" seems to be written up over most of the highest offices alike in Church and State. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIII, 517a.

finger and thumb. (This) can be done mechanically by separating the lips with finger and thumb. Sweet, The Sounds of Eng., § 31.

fire and sword. They had not long since ravaged Romagna with fire and sword. Lytton, Rienzi, I, Ch. II, 20. (= Dutch te vuur en te zwaard.)

flood and field. The holiday season is in full swing and has so far been marked by more than its usual crop of accidents by flood and field. Times.

head and ears. He's over head and ears in debt. Thack., Van Fair, I, Ch. XI, 106.


lock and key. Having put under lock and key the greater number of his own staff, he (sc. Huerta) is as near an absolute dictator as a man can be. Westm. Gaz., No. 6377, 2a.

sea and land. Within twenty-four hours they might be at war on sea and land all round the world with the German Empire. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 505b.

soul and body. The friar was famous for his skill administering to both soul and body. Wash. Irw., Sketch-Bk., Spectre Bridge., 157. (Also body and soul, see above.)

Note I. Repetition of the preposition between is, of course, out of the question.

actor and manager. There was always a certain sympathy between actor and manager, which there can never be between actor and syndicate. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 474, 715a.

body and spirit. The interaction between body and spirit is understood, or at least apprehended (for comprehended it cannot be), as never it was before. Francis Thompson, Health and Holiness, 27.

devil and deep sea. Here we are between devil and deep sea. Westm. Gaz., No. 6288, 7b. (The suppression of the article is rare, no instances being given by Murray.)

officers and men. Hence...that strong fellow feeling between officers and men. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Hol, Ch. XX, 151a.

stem and stern. I would serve the best man so that ever stepped between stem and stern. Smol., R o d. R a n d., Ch. VI, 33. (Compare: In an instant
a storm of bar and chain-shot...swept the proud Don from stem to stern. Ch. KINGSLEY, Westw. H o! , Ch. XX, 151 b.)

II. Also or sometimes figures in such combinations.

tale or history. Ay me! for aught that I could ever read | Could ever hear by tale or history, | The course of true love never did run smooth. M i d s., I, 1, 133.

III. Or varies with and in the expression by hook or crook, the pre-position being mostly repeated before the second noun.

Do come, by hook or by crook. G. ELIOT, Life, I, 112.1) In old days men managed, by hook or crook, to publish Scandals of the Court or Horrible Revelations of High Life. II. L o n d. N e w s, No. 3684, A. 741. By hook and by crook he managed to raise the necessary funds. JOHN OXEN­

66. a) The definite article is mostly dropped before headings in books, essays and other writings.

i. Preface, Prologue, Proem, Introduction, Advertisement, Epilogue, Biography, Sketch, State of England in 1885 (MACAULAY), History of England before the Restoration (id.), Fall of the Melbourne Ministry (M'CARTHY), Fall of the Great Administration (id.), Rise of Municipal Power (M O T L E Y), Insurrection at Ghent (id.), Declaration of War by England (id.), Assault upon the City (id.), Extravagance of the Aristocracy (id.), Death of the Grand Commander (id.), Enemy active (T I M E S), Prince's Escape (id.).

ii. The Life of Lord Byron (L Y T T O N), The Afghan War (M'CARTHY), The Indian Mutiny (id.), The Conspiracy Bill (id.), The Civil War in America (id.), The Congress of Berlin (id.).

Note. Almost regularly: The end.

b) Similarly the article is usually suppressed in the language of stage-directions.

Exit into garden. Goes towards desk and puts in bundle. Looking at watch.

SUPPRESSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

67. The indefinite article in the sense of a weak some is apt to be dropped after certain prepositions. For practical purposes the distinction between concrete and abstract nouns is here disregarded. Before the latter there is often, strictly speaking, no need for the indefinite article, so that the term suppression is sometimes out of place.

The indefinite article is dispensed with after:

by, practically regularly when followed by the name of a means of transmission, conveyance or mode of locomotion, etc., as in:
to send (dispatch, forward, etc.), to receive obtain, get etc.), to travel (go, come, etc.) by coach (steamer, omnibus, etc.); to learn (tell, etc.) by letter.

She came from the station by 'bus. T. P.'s Weekly, Christm. Numb. for 1911, 52a.

Having written his letter and despatched it by express [etc.]. El. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. XXIV, 218.
Note. In these collocations we may also sometimes assume the suppression of the definite article, whether specializing or generalizing, or even of a possessive or demonstrative pronoun.

in, especially before such nouns as fashion, style, etc., otherwise only by way of exception.

Mr. Southey brings to the task two faculties which were never, we believe, vouchsafed in measure so copious to any human being. (Mac., Southey, 986.) In quite remarkable fashion Willie’s wish came to be realized. Eng. Rev., No. 59, 443.

The Kaiser... has in very characteristic fashion drawn public attention to the misgivings and apprehensions which prevail in military circles in Germany. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 97a.

Under the shock of the waves the external form of marine plants is modified in characteristic fashion. Westm. Gaz., No. 6371, 17a.

Show me a man who has never done that which he ought not to have done, and you will show me... an angel masquerading in moral vesture. W. J. Locke.

The Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. Ill, 40.

He is in frock coat. She is in smart afternoon reception-gown. Mrs. Barry Pain, The Reason Why, (37).

They had got through the rejoicings in fine style. El. Glyn, The Reason why, Ch. XXXVIII, 356.

They never allowed their own minds to be seen in undress. R. Ashe King, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. XXV, 186. (Thus almost regularly. But Dickens, Little Dorrit, Ch. IX, 47b has: She was in an undress. Compare also: an officer in undress uniform. Dick., Pickw., Ch. II, 16.)

Note. Observe especially the following collocations with the article, the Dutch equivalents of which mostly stand without it:

So he came in for the following speech, delivered in a loud bold voice. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Ho!, Ch 1, 2a.

She told him in a low but resolute voice that Doctor James Brown had offered her marriage. Mrs. Gask., Cranford.

Compare: If the Doctor... had said in awful voice, “Boy, take down your pant.” Thack., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 9.

of, a) often when preceded by kind (sort), manner or type:

i. * He was anxious to know what kind of room it was. Dick., Cristm. Car. IV, 95.

You’re not the kind of man I wanted at all. Bertha Moore, Which is it?
One has only to realise what kind of man Goldsmith was. R. Ashe King, Ol. Goldsmith, Introd., 18.

** Sometimes I resigned myself to endeavouring to recall what sort of boy I used to be, before I bit Mr. Murdstone. Dick., C op., Ch. V. 36.

He has been speculating as to what sort of place Rugby is. Hughes, Tom Brown.

He is a sort of fellow that’s certain to make friends. Mrs. Alexander, A Life Int., I, Ch. III, 61.

Gustavus Adolphus is a very good sort of dog. Jerome, Idle Thoughts, VIII, 119.

Note the common idiom that sort of thing (= Dutch zoö leths).

*** What manner of man? As you like it, III, 2, 215.

The great calamity which had fallen on Argyle had this advantage, that it enabled him to show... what manner of man he was. Mac., Hist., Ill, Ch. V, 130.

That will suffice to indicate the manner of man he was. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 133a.
Yet another type of man . . . refrain from seeking any outlet for mere physical desires from what I only know how to describe as "a finer sexual fastidiousness." Eng. Rev., No. 58, 272.

Had he been an ordinary type of official, he might well have delayed the progress of telegraphy and telephony in this country. Westm. Gaz., No. 6377, 2c.

* What kind of a place is this Bath? Sheridan, Riv., I, 2.


What kind of a nature could his wife have, to be so absolutely mute, and unresponsive? Ib., Ch. XX, 181.

* And the wound was healed in a sort of a way. Mrs. Craik, The Laurel Bush, II, 49.

What sort of a man is he? Oh, a very good sort of fellow. Sweet, Elem. Buch, § 26. (Note the varied practice.)

They did not know what sort of a little fellow had come among them. Miss Burn., Little Lord, Ch. IV, 61.

What a very odd sort of a man! Jerome, Paul Kelver, Ch. II, 22b.

Note I. It is interesting to compare a kind of gentleman and a gentleman of a kind (8, b). "The former expresses approach to the type, admitting failure to reach it, while the latter emphasizes the non-typical position of the individual. Hence, a kind of may be used as a saving qualification, as in a kind of knave". Murray, s.v. kind, 14, c.

II. Here mention may also be made of the curious phrase of sorts, as illustrated in:

He was shot at Monte Carlo in a fray of sorts. El. Glyn, The Reason why, Ch. XXIV, 243.

About this phrase a correspondent writes in the Westm. Gaz., No. 6353, 4a: "Then came the plague of the expression of sorts, from "which we are not yet free. He became an errand-boy of sorts. I lately "read He had a religion of sorts, He was a Tory of sorts, and so on "for ever and everywhere. Now what conceivable advantage has of "sorts over a sort of? If I say a sort of Tory, that is intelligible, "for the class contains varieties; but a Tory of sorts should mean "only one who should combine various varieties of opinion which "are always found separate." A week later another correspondent writes: "Again an errand-boy of sorts is different from a sort of errand-boy. A King's messenger is a sort of errand-boy. The obliging youth to whom you give sixpence for taking a note to a friend, and who tears the note up and spends the money, is an errand-boy of sorts."

b) frequently when used in a description of the physical, mental, moral or social circumstances of a person, animal or thing.

i. These refugees were in general men of fiery temper and weak judgment. Mac., Hist., II, Ch. V, 94.

Wild animals of large size were then far more numerous than at present. Ib., I, Ch. III, 307.

He was of good birth. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 18.

At first he had seemed to her like a being from another world and of superior make. John Oxenham. Great-heart Gillian, Ch. VIII, 60.

In works of art he was represented as a young and handsome man of strong sinewy frame. Nettleship, Dict. Clas. Antiq., s.v. Ares.

Kirée was a man of great stature. Rev. of Rev., CCXXXI, 277a.
He was a man of unnatural stature. *Times*, No. 1818, 881b.
The whole service was conducted by one of them, a man of rather Caucasian features, but of dark brown tint. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4967, 13a.
He was of good family. *WIL. J. LOCKE, The Glory of Clem. Wing*, Ch. I, II.
He was a man of wide culture. *ib.*, Ch. II, 34.
The room was of medium size. *KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote M. P.*, Ch. XXI, 224.
ii. The boy was naturally of an undaunted temper. *SCOTT, Abbot*, Ch. II, 19.
His present demeanour was of a graver and more determined character. *ib.*, Ch. V, 56.
The clerk... tried to warm himself at the candle; in which effort, not being a man of a strong imagination, he failed. *DICK., Christm. Car.*, I, 9.
His hair was of a healthy brown colour. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 32.
Harry Webb was a boy of a timid and gentle disposition. *SWEET, Old Chapel*. with, a) sometimes when part of an adverbial adjunct of instrumentality or attendant circumstances:

i. Though Miss Jessie plucked at my gown, and even looked up with begging eye, I durst not refuse to go where Miss Jenkyns asked. *MRS. GASK, Cranf.*, 26.
A country house, with ample garden, was the proprietor's passion! *DIXON, Life of Wil. Penn*, II, 137.

ii. Roland Graeme entered the apartment with a loftier mien and somewhat a higher colour than his wont. *SCOTT, Abbot*, Ch. V, 56.
They paced through several winding passages and waste apartments with a very slow step. *ib.*, Ch. X, 96.

Rip had but one question more to ask, but he put it with a faltering voice. *WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., Rip van Winkle*.
She set to work every morning at her daily business with a dogged persistence. *MRS. CRAIK, The Laurel Bush*, 82.
With a passionate fidelity she remembered all Robert Roy's goodness. *ib.*, 99.
Every sentence was uttered with an obvious sincerity and feeling. *Times*, No. 1823, 9746.

Observe the varied practice in:

Not as some do with angry grief or futile resistance, but with a quick patience, so complete that only a very quick eye would have found out that she was suffering at all. *MRS. CRAIK, The Laurel Bush*, 52.

b) sometimes when used in a description of the physical, mental or moral qualities of a person, animal or thing.

i. He was a tall, powerfully-built man of forty-five, with erect military carriage, and a face still preserving much of the freshness of youth. *BUCHANAN, That Winter Night*, Ch. I, 2.
In works of art Achilles was represented as similar to Ares, with magnificent physique, and hair bristling up like a mane. *NETTLESIPH, Dict. Clas. Antiqu.*, s.v. Achilles.

ii. He was a collected, quiet little gentleman in black stockings with a bald head. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 18.

Ephraim Quixtus, Ph. D., was a tall gaunt man of forty, with a sallow complexion. W. J. Locke, The Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. II, 22. His companion is a well-wrapped clergyman of medium height and stoutish build, with a pleasant, rosy face. Galsworthy, The Pigeon, I, (2). Her face...is decided and sincere, with deep-set eyes, and a capable well-shaped forehead. ib.

Note. The suppression is common enough in enumerations. (69.)

As he stands there with beating heart and kindling eye,...he is a symbol...of brave young England. Ch. Kingsley, Westw. Ho!, Ch. I, 5a.

68. Of particular interest is the suppression of the indefinite article in the sense of a weak any.

Thus it is wanting:

a) frequently in sentences with sentence-modifying ever or ever that suggest some such phrase as Was there ever a man that, etc. or There never was a man that, etc. (31, b.) The noun before which the article is omitted, is mostly found in the function of the subject, occasionally in that of the object. Sometimes both the subject and the object drop the article. The idiom here referred to is also met with in French, as in: Jamais écrivain ne peignit mieux ses contemporains; and in Dutch, as in: Nooit heeft grooter schelm op een troon gezeten.

The omission of the article seems to give an emotional colouring to these utterances, possibly also it is occasioned, at least in the Germanic languages, by a desire to give a rhythmical flow to the sentence.

i. * Had ever man so hopeful a pupil as mine? Farquhar, The Beaux' Stratagem, II, 3, (383). Did ever mortal hear of a man's virtue? Field., Jos. Andr., I, Ch. VIII, 18. Was ever man so crossed as I am? Sher., School for Scand., III, 1, (391). Did ever woman since the creation of the world, interrupt a man with such a silly question? Sterne, Tristram Shandy, I. I have seen him, within an hour of eternity, sleeping as sweetly as ever man did. Mac., Hist., II, Ch. V, 133. If ever poet were a master of phrasing, he was so. A. C. Bradley, Com. on Ten., In Memoriam, Ch. VI. 75. ** Julia sate within as pretty a bower | As e'er held houri in that heathenish heaven | Described by Mahomet. Byron, Don Juan, I, civ.

ii. * Queen Eliz. Was never widow had so dear a loss! — Children. Were never orphans had so dear a loss! — Duch. Was never mother had so dear a loss! Rich. III, ii, 2, 78. And ne'er did Grecian chisel trace | A nymph, a Naiad, or a Grace | Of finer form or lovelier face! Scott, Lady, I, xviii. Never man had a more unsentimental mother than mine. Ch. Bronte, Villette. Ch. XX, 264. Locke maintained such steady silence and composure as forced the tools of power to own with vexation that never man was so complete a master of his tongue and of his passions. Mac., Hist., II, Ch. V, 115. Never yet | Was noble man but made ignoble talk. Ten., L anc. and E l., 1081. Girl never breathed to rival such a rose: 'Rose never blew that equal'd such a bud. Id., Queen Mary, III, 3, (608a).
On his (sc. Wellington's) death it (sc. the nation) tried to give him such a public funeral as hero never had. McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. X, 126.

Never had heart felt more heavy, never had existence felt more unbearable, than Donovan's. EDNA LYALL, DONOVAN, I, 86.

The King, in consideration of Whittington's merit, said, "Never had prince such a subject"; which being told to Whittington at the table, he replied, "Never had subject such a king." ANDREW LANG, Blue Fairy Book.

** Since I could distinguish betwixt a benefit and an injury, I never found man that knew how to love himself. OTH., I, 3, 315.

*** Faint heart never won fair lady. PROV.

Note. The following quotations show that the omission is not regular.

i. I believe she regards him with as true a love as ever a girl felt for a man. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XLI, 401.

ii. * Never was a father more idolized by his children than was Lyman-Beecher. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 483, 163a.

Never was a man more exquisitely sensitive to snubs, slights and insults than Goldsmith. R. ASHE KING, OI. Goldsmith, Ch. II, 20.

** On a fairer face thine eye never rested. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. X, 94.

II. Conversely the omission is sometimes extended to sentences of a similar import not containing either ever or never.

When did Knight of Provence avoid his foe, or forsake his love? LYTTON, Rienzi, III, Ch. II, 130.

When was age so crammed with menace? TEN., Locksley Hall, sixty years after.1) Fully a century has passed, since mason's hand has touched it. HUNGERFORD, Molly Bawn, I, 152.1)

III. The indefinite article is not driven out by ever or never, when the tenor of the sentence is different from that of the above quotations.

* Never was an Englishman more at home than when he took his ease in his inn. MACAULAY.

Never was there a better chance for you. ROORDA, Dutch and Eng. Comp., §20.

** A better man Rome never lost. LYTTON, Rienzi, V, Ch. III, 207.

IV. Here mention may also be made of ever (e'er) a(n) in the sense of strong any (at all), and of never (ne'er) (a)n, the corresponding negative, the former now only archaic or vulgar, though the latter is in good colloquial use. MURRAY, s. v. ever, 8; ne'er a; never, I, 3; FRANZ, Shak. Gram. 2, § 272.

i. And I'd foot it with e'er a captain in the country. SHERIDAN, Riv., III, 4.

He knows every path and alley in the woods as well as e'er a hunter who frequents them. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. XL, 415.

Fra Moreale seems as much a bugbear to you as to e'er a mother in Rome. LYTTON, Rienzi, Ch. I, 149.

ii. Have we ne'er a poulterer among us? FARQUHAR, The Recruiting Officer, V, 4, (338).

Then by the Mass, sir! I would do no such thing — ne'er a Sir Lucius o'Trigger should make me fight. SHERIDAN, Riv., IV, 1.

Now my Lady... differs therein from my Lord, who loves never a bone in his skin. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. IV, 44.

And never a saint took pity on | My soul in agony. COLERIDGE, AnC. Mar., IV, III.

Never a day passed, but that cruel words were spoken between them. GRAPH.

1) DUBISLAV, Beiträge, § 8.

H. POUTSMA, A Grammar of Late Modern English. II.
b) sometimes in adverbial clauses which form the second member of comparisons, i.e. such as are introduced by either than or as, and are more or less like those with ever mentioned under a). Indeed, this adverb may occasionally be met with in them. The idiom seems to have been more common in Early Modern English than it is now. Compare also FRANZ, Sh‘ak. Gram. 2, § 267; ELLINGER, Ver. B. citr., 40; id. Eng. Stud., XXXI.

i. Your tongue’s sweet air | More tuneable than lark to shepherd’s ear. MIDS., I, 1, 183.

Though home is a name, a word, it is a strong one; stronger than magician ever spoke, or spirit answered to, in strongest conjuration. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXXV, 278.

ii. He gives not only a good dinner, but as dear a one as heart can desire. THACK., Men’s Wives, Ch. II, (325).

I slept at Carlow as sound as man could sleep. THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. III, 49.

He led her to an old-fashioned house, almost as small as house could be. MRS. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XXXI, 293.

They came into that wild Black Sea, and saw it stretching out before them, without a shore, as far as eye could see. CH. KINGSLEY, The Heroes, II, iv, 149.

He was as near perfection as mortal man could be. ANDREW LANG, Tennison, Ch. II, 11.

c) Sometimes in adnominal clauses modifying either a noun preceded by a superlative, or some such word(-group) as all, anything, nothing, no + noun. The suppression is especially frequent before the noun mortal or before the adjective mortal + noun. See d).

i. He is thus attempting the greatest task to which poet or philosopher can devote himself. STEPHEN, Pope, 161.1)

There was the chance of being blown up in some of the many experiments which Martin was always trying, with the most wondrous results that mortal boy ever heard of. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. Ill, 237.

ii. * All that servant ought to be. SHER. KNOWLES, Hunch., II, 3.2)

Mc. Potts is doing all that mortal man can do. HUNGERFORD, Molly Bawn, I, 278.1).

** ‘It’ and ‘which’ may refer to anything that heart of man can conceive. HODGSON, Erırór s, 8, 74.

*** I hope there may be no degree of age or experience to which mortal may attain, when he shall become such a glum philosopher, as not to be pleased by the sight of happy youth. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVII, 173.

d) Sometimes before the noun mortal or the adjective mortal + noun, in other connections than that mentioned under c).

i. Nowhere is mortal so much alone as in the heart of a great city. Rev. of Rev.

ii. Their forms were invisible to mortal eye. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 5.

It was long indeed since an English sovereign had knelt to mortal man. Ib., III, Ch. VIII, 97.

e) Sometimes after the preposition without.

i. Here you see an honest young soldier, who is willing to take her without fortune. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. XXXI, (470).

He inherited ... her health without flaw. CH. BRONTÉ, Villette, Ch. I, 2.

1) DUBISLAW, Beitränge, § 8. 2) MÄTZN., Eng. Gram. 2, III, 163.
The polite pupil was scarcely gone, when, unceremoniously, without tap in burst a second intruder. Ib., Ch. XXI, 295.
There is booty without end. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol, Ch. XIX, 144b. (Probably regularly in this combination from association with the liturgical expression: world without end, amen.)
A month which was, without exception, the most miserable I have ever spent. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, VI, 73.
Modern Italy, although a monarchy, is without doubt, the most genuinely democratic of the great countries of Europe. RICH. BAGOT, My Italian Year, Ch. II, 20.
My feelings have been outraged times without number. Westm. Gaz., No. 6383, 4c.
So we were told times without number. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 520a. (Probably regularly in this combination.)
The autumn hues of some of the fruit-trees are almost without rival. Ib., No. 6065, 2c.
The rest (sc. of the Tory newspapers), without exception, found it (sc. Lloyd George's campaign) perilously exciting. Ib., No. 6365, 1b.
The Lansburg incident in the House last week is not without precedent. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 504, 3b.

ii. I see a vacant seat...and a crutch without an owner. DICK., Christmas Car., III, 70.
His colour changed though, when without a pause it came on through the heavy door. Ib., I, 22.
A novel without a hero. THACK., Van Fair.
When we are struck at without a reason, we should strike back very hard. CH. BRONTÉ, Jane Eyre, Ch. VI, 64.
Without a military education of any sort Clive led an army like an experienced officer. MAC., Clive, (508b).
He does nothing without a reason. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. X, 116.

Note I. The same variable practice may be observed after beyond, when used in the sense of without.
i. (These) passages ... prove beyond doubt that a considerable period of time must have elapsed at Cyprus between the landing of Othello, and Desdemona's death. DEIGHTON, Introd. to 'Othello', 13.
With it came the desire ... to know beyond question whether her smiling unconcern meant malice or entertainment. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXVIII, 309.
ii. The appointment ... was cancelled beyond a doubt, because of Goldsmith's incompetence. R. ASHE KING/ OI. Goldsmith, Ch. VII, 87.
The loyalty of the people is beyond a question. MARJ. BOWEN, I will maintain, I, Ch. VI, 66.

II. In the following quotations the indefinite article could not be dispensed with, as being equivalent to the numeral one (8, a, 2):
England was left without an ally save Spain. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § 3, 370.
Balliol himself surrendered and passed without a blow from his throne to an English prison. Ib., Ch. IV, § 6, 216.
Balliol found himself at last without an adherent. Ib.

III. It is hardly necessary to observe that in enumerations the suppression is quite usual.
The country lay helpless without army or fleet, or the means of manning one. Green, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § 3, 370.
It is the exception to see a man without knife and pistol. Alg. Blackwood, Impressions at Batoum (Westm. Gaz., No. 5335, 2c).
IV. In some of the sentences mentioned under a), b), c) and d) the suppressed article may also be apprehended to be the generalizing definite article (7, c, Note II). Thus, for example, in: Faint heart never won fair lady. Prov.
They saw it (sc. the Black Sea) stretching out before them, without a shore, as far as eye could see. Ch. Kingsley, The Heroes, II, IV, 149.
He is thus attempting the greatest task to which poet or philosopher can devote himself. Stephen, Pope, 161.1)
Their forms were invisible to mortal eye. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. I, 5.
V. Sometimes a sentence is ambiguous, the sense varying according as the indefinite article or the generalizing definite article is supposed to be understood.
Was ever selfish man so called upon to make a greater sacrifice? Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 182.
69. As in Dutch, both the definite and the indefinite article are often suppressed in enumerations, generally to give an emotional colouring to the discourse. Sometimes it is doubtful whether it is the generalizing definite or the indefinite article that has fallen out. (7). Many instances have already been given incidentally in the preceding pages of this chapter, and also in Ch. XXIX, 25; 26, a. We add the following:

i. It was delightful to hear...the impracticable feats they were to perform during their six weeks' emancipation from the abhorred thraldom of book, birch, and pedagogue. Wash. Irv., Sketch-Bk., XX, 187.
Pen smoked and joked with guard and fellow-passengers and people along the familiar road. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. XXVIII, 297.
This slender line having to make its way through the forest will be subject to endless attacks in front, in rear, in flank. Id. Virg., Ch. LI, 528.
She sincerely loved and respected the former schoolmistress, to whom she was now become companion and friend. Mrs. Gask., Life of Char. Brontë, 102.
Then stout mother and thin daughter took their leave. G. Moore, A Drama in Muslin, 111.
The light which came from her, was like the light of sun, moon, and stars rolled into one. Books for the Bairns, LVI, 37a.
That he should really have expected so high-minded a lady to look with favour upon one who is a compound of fool, prodigal, and coward, is hardly to be supposed. Deighton, Introd. to 'Twelfth Night,' 15.
Whether as man, as orator or as statesman, Mr. Bright will be long and deeply lamented by the whole of the Anglo-Saxon race. Graph.
That he (sc. Leonardo da Vinci) was painter, architect, and sculptor was nothing unusual in the age of Raphael and Michelangelo. But he was musician, engineer, mechanic and a profound and exact investigator into natural science as well. Times, No. 1808, 679b.
Some forty others were injured in greater or less degree. 11. Lond. News, No. 3777, 412.

1) Dubislaw, Beiträge, § 8.
Note I. Some combinations have become traditional. Many have already been mentioned in 65. Also the following deserve attention:

**chapter and verse.** People say what they like to say, not what they have *chapter and verse* for. G. E. LIOI, M. D., V, Ch. XLIX, 359.

He was fifty-five, if he was a day. Miss Tabitha could have given you *chapter and verse* for it in a second. JOHN OXENHAM, The Simple Beguiler (Swaer, Selection, II, 138).

**Heaven and earth.** There are more things in *Heaven and earth*, Horatio, than are dreamt of in your philosophy. Ham. I, 5, 166.

I hold to my judge ... to the King of *Heaven and earth*. GREEN. 1

He would move *Heaven and earth* to ferret out a mystery. ALVAREZ, Mexican Bill, 24.

**time and tide.** *Time and tide* wait (or tarry) for no man. Prov.

**town and country.** I see Mr. Beauclerk very often both in *town and country*. GOLDSMITH (R. ASHE KING, O. L. Goldsmith, Ch. XX, 227).

Sold by all booksellers and newsmen in *town and country*. Athen., No. 4421.

II. Sometimes the singular is made to express a plural notion. (Ch. XXV, 35.)

What British and Boer have done for South Africa, Liberal and Unionist will yet have to do for this country. Westm. Gaz., No. 5173, 5b.

The huge many-coloured morning clouds went to and fro in the shapes of dragon or of cherub. CHESTERTON, The Free Man (T. P.'s Chrism. Numb. for 1911, 4b).

His intense love for *bird and beast* is well-known. W. L. PHELPS, Es. on Mod. Nov., Ch. II, 53.

70. Also in epigrammatic language, especially when two or more nouns, in whatever grammatical function, express a kind of antithesis, the article, whether definite or indefinite, is frequently dispensed with. Some of the epigrammatic sayings here following have the nature of proverbs. In not a few the omission of the article makes for rhythm.

i. Though *body* be strong, *mind* is stronger. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XV, 66b.

We can no longer set *body* against *spirit* and let them come to grips after the light-hearted fashion of our ancestors. FRANCIS THOMPSON, Health and Holiness, 30.

*few* conquered *Roman*, as *Roman* had conquered *East* and *West*. WILLIAM BARRY, The Papacy, Prol., II.

Zara, freed at last from eye of *friend* or *maid*, collapsed on to the white bearskin in front of the fire again. EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. XXXII 302.

ii. You will never lose *fair lady* for *faint heart*! SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXXI, 405.

A sinful heart makes *feeble hand*. Prov.

Use is *second nature*. Id.

I forbid you to put *pen* to paper. Thack., Van. Fair, III, Ch. V, 54.

For manners are not idle, but the fruit of *loyal nature*, and of *noble mind*. Ten., Guin., 333.

It seems that when *Turk* meets *Italian*, there is no tug-of-war, but only a worse kind of peace. Athen., No. 4433, 404b.

1) FOELS.—Koch, W. S. Gram., § 267.
Finally we subjoin some instances of the suppression of the article through the influence of metre. See also 9, g; 12, Note II; 31, b, Note III; 33, a, Note III; 35, a, c; 47, Note IV.

O Rome! I make thee promise; | If the redress will follow, thou receivest | Thy full petition at the hand of Brutus! J u l. Cæs., II, 1, 58. (Ordinary practice has to make a promise; see § 73, s. v. promise.)

But, with an angry wafture of your hand, | (You) gave sign for me to leave you. I b., II, 1, 247. (Ordinary practice has to make a sign.)

Some beauties yet no precepts can declare, | For there's a happiness as well as care. P o p e, Es. on Cr i t., I, 142. (Note the varied practice.)

Yet pass we that; | the war and chase | Give little choice of resting place. S c o t t, L a d y, I, xvi. (In ordinary prose war stands without, chase with the article.)

When late I left Caerleon, our great Queen | ... Made promise, | that whatever bride I brought, | Herself would clothe her like the sun in Heaven. T e n., M a r. of G e r., 783. (See above.)

I doubted whether daughter's tenderness, | Or easy nature, might not let itself, Be moulded by your wishes for her weal. I b., 797.

VACILLATION BETWEEN THE DEFINITE AND THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

In certain combinations either article may be expected, often with equal propriety, with the frequent result that there is some vacillation in the choice, and that another article is used, or preferred, in Dutch than in English.

a) There is often a distinct tendency to use the indefinite article in English, notwithstanding the fact that the noun is accompanied by a specializing adjunct, or that such an adjunct can be supplied from the context.

The following instances are intended to bring out this tendency. Some quotations with the definite article, and a few without either article, are added for comparison and to show the irregularity and arbitrariness of usage. It may not be superfluous to caution the reader that absence of illustration of either practice must not be considered as evidence that it is non-existent, rare or even infrequent.

charge. Breakfast, dinner and supper are provided at a charge of 11 d. per day. T i m e s.

chance. i. He stands a chance of rushing unanneled upon purgatory. L y t t o n, R i e n z i, II, Ch. II, 83.

If I had a chance to better myself where I am going, I would go with a good will. S t e v., K i d n a p p e d, 10.

If you have a chance of founding a home for yourself, do not throw it lightly aside. D o r. G e r a r d, E t e r n. W o m a n, Ch. XI.

The War-Office saw a chance to do a little cheese-paring at their expense. T i m e s.

All the more intelligent and able boys had a chance of securing good openings. W e s t m. G a z., No. 5317, 5a.

ii. Did you ever hear of anyone who would not escape from prison, if he had the chance? M a r. C r a w f., T a l e of a L o n e l y P a r i s h, Ch. XIII, 102.
I'll hit harder this time, if Heaven gives me the chance. Ch. Reade, The Cloister and the Hearth, Ch. XX, 81.

Give them the chance of settling everything themselves. El. Glyn, The Reason why, Ch. XII, 111.

He felt glad he had not given her the chance to snub him again. Ib., Ch. XX, 181.

condition. And for the wits, I'm sure I am in a condition to be even with them. Congreve, Love for Love, I, I, (201).

conviction. She felt a conviction that she was hastening to the tomb. Wash. Irv., Sketch-Bk., XXX, 328.

desire. i. I had a desire to see the old family seat of the Lucys. Wash. Irv., Sketch-Bk., XXVI, 264.

I have had a great desire to know something more about her. Dick., Little Dorrit, Ch. VIII, 41a.

I had a new pride in my room after his approval of them, and burned with a desire to develop their utmost resources. Id., C. o. p., Ch. XXIV, 178b.

He expressed a desire to slumber. W. J. Locke, Glory of Clew. Wing,

ii. He had rowed the skiff in which he left the castle, to the side of the lake most distant from the village, with the desire of escaping from the notice of the inhabitants. Scott, A b b o t, Ch. VII, 66.

desire. To give (leave, set) an example. Murray, s. v. example, 6.

That was to set an example. R. Ashe King, O. I. G o l d s m., Ch. XIII, 32.

Walk on your toes, whispered my mother, setting the example as she led the way up the stairs. Jerome, Paul Kelver, I, Ch. III, 26a.

Note. Murray does not illustrate any of the above locutions. Nor does he mention to set (etc.) the example. Compare also 40.

faculty. See 40.

fashion. It has even become a fashion to go over to Ireland. Acad.

It is a fashion at present to ascribe the great popularity of 'In Memoriam' entirely to the 'teaching' contained in it. A. C. Bradley, Comment on Tennyson's In M e m., Ch. IV, 36.

ii. It was then very much the fashion ... to publish results and conceal methods. De Morgan, E. P r o b a b., Pref. 1)

Compare also 8, b, 1, 63 and 67.

gift. a) If I had a gift for writing like that chap, l'd chuck the old office mighty quick, I can tell you. An Englishman's Home, I, (15).

habit. i. You have a bad habit of jumping at conclusions. Mrs. Craik, J o h n H a l., Ch. X, 100.

He had a habit of going to sleep in his chair after dinner. Rev. of Rev., CXCIII, 84b.

The chimney has a habit of smoking, when the fire is first lighted. Murray, s. v. habit, 9, a.

Some men have a habit of laughing at anything which is said just as they leave the dining-room. Mar. C r a w f., Kath. L a u d., I, Ch. VI, 115.

ii. He was little in the habit of resisting importunate solicitation. Mac., H i s t., I, 176. 1)

Note. For further illustration see also Ch. XXIV, 34, Obs. VIII, a.

hope. i. The judge paternally expressed a hope that the combative people would make it up. Roorda, Dutch and Eng. C o m p., § 14.

He had all the time nursed a faint hope of a possible reunion. Edna Lyall, D o n., II, 20.

1) Murray.
ii. Whatever dangers I went upon, it was with the hope of making myself more worthy of your esteem. Farquhar, *The Recruiting Officer*, II, 2, (268).

In the hope that no soldier would venture to outrage a lady,... she placed herself before the trunk. *Mac*, *Fred.*, (588a).

Her Majesty expressed the hope that he would soon be perfectly recovered. *Daily Chronicle*.

I have, therefore, in conclusion to express the hope that our educational authorities will be cautious in introducing phonetics and appointing teachers of it. *Sweet*, *Sounds of Eng.*, *Pref*.

*idea*. I always had an idea that you were at least seven feet high. *Thack.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 31.

Mrs. Paradyne has an idea that the boys are shunning him. *Mrs. Wood*, *Orville College*, Ch. VI, 89.

Compare notion.

*impression*. I have an impression that I have somewhere met with it before. *Murray*, s. v. *impression* 17.

*knack*. Hares and rabbits have a foolish knack of running butt into an advancing train. *Titbits*.

*notion*. Some persons have consequently taken up a notion that she was from the first an overrated writer. *Mac*, *Madame d'Arblay*, (730b).

She has a notion that a widow should not marry within seven years of her husband's death. *Hardy*, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. Lll, 426.

Compare idea.

*opinion*. Witnessing these things, the collegians would express an opinion that the turnkey, who was a bachelor, had been cut out by nature for a family man. *Dick.*, *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VII, 35b.

*opportunity*. i. I was afraid he would never give me an opportunity. *Sher.*, *Riv.*, I, 2.

I should have told you before now,... but I had not an opportunity. *Dick.*, *Cop.*, Ch. III, 20b.

The great fire of 1666 afforded an opportunity for effective extensive improvements. *Mac.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 403.

The other day I had an opportunity of introducing N. N. to P. P. *Punch*.

We are a free people, and we should never neglect an opportunity for impressing that fact on those who may be inclined to doubt it. *An Englishman's Home*, I, (13).

ii. One day I took the opportunity of reading to him the first canto. *Scott*, *Instr. to 'the Lady of the Lake'*. This was the opportunity to put his new-born resolution to the test. *Id.*, *Abbot*, Ch. VIII, 73.

I ought to give her the opportunity. *Dick.*, *Cop.*, Ch. LV, 391a.

What could be better for us than that they... should give us the opportunity of saying that they are wrecking the national interest for the sake of sticking to office? *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5277, 4a.

*Note*. For collocations without either article and for further illustration see 40.

*plan*. They had formed a plan to get her out of the castle. *Black's Sir Walt. Scott's Read.*, *Story of the Abbot*, 32.

*position*. i. We are in a position to state [etc.]. *Times*.

If she be in a position to carry out her assurances, there must be some form of government. *Ib.*, No. 1823, 983a.


promise. I readily gave a promise of making the settlement he required. Goldsm., V. C., Ch. XXXI.

Note. For further illustration see also 71 and Ch. XIX, 49, Obs. IV. Murray mentions to give (afford) promise, unfortunately without any illustrative quotations.

propensity. The inhabitants appeared to have a propensity to throw any little trifles they were not in want of, into the road. Dick., C. P., Ch. XXVII, 199a.

question. i. It is a question, whether N. had much to complain of. James Payn, Glow-Worm Tales.1) It is even now a question, whether we had not better entrust it to him. Roorda, Dutch and Eng. Comp., § 15.

It was a great question, if they should see him alive. Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 28.

ii. That is the question to which American public opinion demands an answer. Times, No. 1823, 983c.

reputation. He had a reputation of being a model father. James Payn, Glow-Worm Tales, I, B, 39.

resolution. I have formed a resolution to have no bailiff at all. Hardy, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. X, 87.

right. i. A sheriff has a right to arrest a criminal. Webster, s. v. right.

Gardner had a perfect right to put up a poster. Westm. Gaz., No. 5817, 2a.

When I do get a holiday, I think I’ve a right to spend it how I like. An Englishman’s Home, I, 24.

ii. I had no need to enlarge upon it, if I had had the right. Dick., C. P., Ch. LV, 391a.

Those who pay the piper have the right to call the tune. Times.

The thinking public has the right to demand an explanation. Eng. Rev., No. 38, 310.

iii. You have right to say it. Scott, Abbots, Ch. II, 21.

scale. The remuneration will be on a scale of 1 s. 6 d. per paper examined. Acad. and Lit.

situation. We are in a situation to offer more than the usual commission. Thack., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 69.

view. i. I composed it actually with a horror of the stage, and with a view to render the thought of it impracticable. Byron, Let. to Mr. Murray.

ii. He left the university without taking a degree with the view of becoming an artist. Trol., Thack., Ch. I, 28.

Note. For illustration see also Ch. XIX, 62, b.

way. i. His mother began to be greatly perplexed how to put him in a way to shift for himself. Wash. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 104).

The youngster ... seemed in a fair way to fulfil the prediction of the old gentleman before mentioned. Ib., 116.

ii. The foreign concessionaire is on the way to become a bogey in Belgium. Westm. Gaz., No. 6377, 2c.

wish. i. I expressed to Wordsworth a wish that his poems were printed in the order of their composition. Acad. 1)

Sir James expressed a wish to you again in the morning. Agn. & Eg. Cattle, Diam. cut Paste, II, Ch. I, 115.

ii. They expressed the wish that we should come to an amicable understanding with Russia. Times.

1) Ten Brug., Taalst., X.
b) Also the use of the indefinite article in the combinations illustrated by the following quotations is of some interest:

**average.** i. Earthquake-shocks occur, on an average, about three times a week. Huxley, Physiol., 188. 1)
Half a million workers have been affected by these troubles and have lost on an average fourteen days each. Westm. Gaz., No. 6377, 2c.

ii. And when he (sc. Mr. Pickwick) was knocked down (which happened upon the average every third round), it was the most invigorating sight [etc.]. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 271.

The agricultural labourer... is still on the average badly paid. Westm. Gaz., No. 6423, 1b.

The wind... blows southwest on the average for 103 days. Ib., 13c.

**change.** We must grow a little more terrestrial for a change. Eng. Rev., No. 57, 129.

**end.** * Its splendour... was all at an end. Wash. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 116).
The energy and the action of my life were at an end. Dick., Cop., Ch. LIV, 383a.

**Whereupon this colloquy came to an end.** Thack., Pend., I, Ch. II, 29.
These two cities (sc. New York and San Francisco) cannot cease to grow till... mankind pass off the globe and come to an end. Froude, Oceana, Ch. XX, 336.

Note. The indefinite article seems to be regularly used in the above phrases. With to the end, as used in the following quotation, compare to a (the) finish in the same meaning; see below.
The Boers will resist to the end. Times.

**finish.** i. The Free-Staters do not seem at all inclined to fight to a finish. Daily Chron.
The Government are fond of saying that the country has declared to continue the war in South Africa and fight to a finish. Daily News.

ii. This time it's a fight to the finish. Punch.

Note. Compare with this the sporting term to be in at the finish.
The old squire was determined to be in at the finish. W. S. Hayward, Love against World, 13.1)

**living.** She was compelled to appear before public audiences for a living. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 474, 714a.

**sacrifice.** The country would fall a sacrifice to the hostile ambition of the Spanish monarchy. Sher., Crit., III, 1.

**victim.** Her husband had fallen a victim to his zeal for the public safety. Wash. Irv., Dolf Heyl. (Stof., Handl., I, 102).

Compare: Shortly after this he became the victim of a passionate attachment to a young lady. Arthur C. Downer, The Personal Hist. of John Keats, 3.

74. In some combinations the definite article is preferred, although the indefinite would appear to be at least equally appropriate.

**exception.** It is the exception to see a man without knife and pistol. Westm. Gaz., No. 5335, 2c. (See also under rule.)

1) Murray.
What a happiness it would be to set the pattern about here! G. Eliot, M i d., I, Ch. III, 20.

rule. i. Symphonies and symphonic poems are now the rule rather than the exception. L o n d. N e w s , No. 3775, 3266.

ii. His supposition that usually both the publisher and author share a loss on the ordinary novel is, we fear, more in the nature of an exception than a rule. A t h e n . , No. 4479, 200c.

shoulder. i. Showing the cold shoulder. C o b h. B r e w . , D i c t. o f P h r a s e a n d F a b l e, s. v.

Casaubon has devilish good reasons ... for turning the cold shoulder on a young fellow whose bringing-up he paid for. G. Eliot, M i d., V Ch. XLVI, 341.

ii. He was therefore not willing to give them a cold shoulder. T r o l., B a r c h. T o w., Ch. XXXV, 316.
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS.

Page 4 line 5 from top, change world into would.
7 2 " Gate " Gates.
7 27 " more " wore.
25 7 " 45 " 44.
64 28 " , after minutes place (θ).
64 35 " (η) into (θ).
64 4 " bottom, place (ε) after understood.
81 22 " top, change head-word into noun in the modifying element.
81 38 " , change head-word into noun in the modifying element.
81 10 " bottom, change element modified into modifying element.
100 20 " top, change Love's Labour Lost into Love's Labour's Lost.
112 2 " bottom, change to into do.
140 13 " , for stands into stands for.
141 15 " top, change trives into trewes.
146 25 " , words-groups into word-groups, and strike out the comma.
155 20 " bottom, change ashes into ash(es).
164 1 " top, change respectables into respectables.
174 7 " Balcans into Balkans.
176 4 " bottom, change somewhat into somewhat.
201 26 " TROL.² into TROL.¹
205 1 " 24a " 25, a.
206 19 " 39 " 40.
231 16 " at one's wits end into at one's wits' end.
234 1 " XXVI, 5, c, Note into XXVI, 5, Note IV.
238 13 " shorts into sorts.
313 heading, change CONCORDS into CONCORD.
326 line 9 from bottom, change speacing into speaking.
343 17 " Old English into Middle English.
360 11 " Tithonius " Tithonus.
366 21 " particular " partial.
371 26 " immorta " immortal.
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS.

Page 384 line 3 from top, place i before disorderly.

" 401  19  "  "  , change elder born into elder-born.
" 401  21  "  "  "  eldest born into eldest-born.
" 410  5  "  bottom, change Ch. XXXI, 34, a into Ch. XXXI, 31, a; 34, a.
" 428  15  "  top, change grounds into grounds.
" 436  26  "  top, 38, f into 40.
" 437  5  "  bottom, change Ch. XXXI, 19 into Ch. XXXI, 20.
" 437  6  "  "  19 into 20.
" 443  22  "  "  add Compare Ch. XXXI, 19, a.
" 494  14  "  "  change periphrastical into periphrastical.
" 508  1  "  top, change Frequent into Interesting.
" 528  12  "  bottom, place c) before Before.
" 559  5  "  top, change indefinite into definite.
" 607  24  "  bottom, strike out to say truth.
" 650  14  "  top, change Ch. XXV, 17 into Ch. XXV, 10 and 17.

Page 6, line 4 from bottom. The use of wool instead of woollen, as in a wool hat, cap, jacket, etc. is not rare, but in these combinations the word has a different meaning from woollen: a wool cap, etc. being a cap, etc. made of knitted wool.

Lead, instead of leaden, seems to become more and more the ordinary word in the trade. See also MURRAY, s.v. lead, 10. It is probably the only word, when the reference is to strips or sheets of lead used for roofing or other building purposes; e.g.: a lead flat, a lead roof. MURRAY, s.v. lead, 7.

Page 33, c. So far as Early Modern English is concerned, the suppression of the genitival s after nouns ending in a sibilant may in many cases be considered as a survival of Middle English practice. Compare EINENKEL, Streifzüge, 83.

Page 50. Among the names of things mentioned in 16, a, which in ordinary prose are frequently placed in the genitive, include boat, ship, vessel, etc., and proper names of ships. Thus in the Times, No. 1842, ld: the Titanic's passengers, the Carmania's decks, the Carmania's captain.

For quotations with boat, ship, vessel, etc. see under 16, d).

Page 71, b. Add: Note. In such a sentence as But we beg pardon of our readers for arguing a point so clear (MAC., Es., War. H. a. t., 609b) of is not a genitive equivalent, but part of a prepositional object.

Page 97, line 20 from top. Like all and both, also half may belong to the modifying element alone:
He used to do half the chaps' verses. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. X, 107.

Page 100, Obs. II. Insert mostly between is and felt. Like the noun firm (Ch. XXVI, 9) genitives denoting a firm are occasionally construed as singulars. Selfridge's admits that Ready-for Service clothes have had a shocking reputation in the past. Westm. Gaz., No. 6147, 1b.

Page 112, 2, Obs. I, line 8—21. For what is here said about the th substitute: In Old English p became voiced between voiced sounds, according to BÜLBRING (Elementarbuch, § 474) about the year 700.
Thus in Ṓpās, clāpās, mūpās, papās, baṇu (baṇo, also baṇa, especially in later texts), respectively the plural of Ṓp, clāp, mūp, paḷp, baṇ (Modern English oath, cloth, mouth, path, bath). In Middle English the singular of these words ends in voiceless Ḟ, the plural in ēs, i.e. in voiced ơ + ēs, while, moreover, the short vowel in papās and baṇu was lengthened (before 1200). Hence the rule in Modern English: th at the end of a plural is voiced, if preceded by a long vowel.

If the half-long vowel of the singular is pronounced in the plural as well (new formations), th and s are voiceless. Thus in laths, truths, youths, whereas, if the vowel is lengthened in these words, th and s are voiced. In growths and heaths the vowel seems to be half-long with most, if not all, speakers, so that th and s are breathed.

The rule stated above also accounts for the fact that in such plurals as deaths, months, healths, where the vowel is short, and in others like births, fourths, hearths, in which it is half-long, th and s are voiceless.

Pag. 122. Note II. Add: Swine, both as a singular and a plural, is also used as an opprobrious designation of a man.

i. I was just bringing back your little lad for the second time, when I meets the swine coming out of this window in his Sunday togs and topper. Zangwill, The Next Religion, I, (60).

You're a nice, chivalrous, brotherly sort of swine, you are. Bern. Shaw, Getting Married, I, (207).

ii. These beastly swine make such a grunting here, | I cannot catch what Father Bourne is saying. Ten., Queen Mary, I, 3, (582b).

Page 125, c, line 28 from top. Add: prima donna — prima donnas — prime donne.

Page 130. Note I. Add: Moslem (or Muslim) has in the plural Moslims (or Muslims) and Moslemin, while some writers employ the singular form as a plural or collective. The plural moslemins is a vulgarism. For illustration see Murray.

Pag. 232, s.v. works. Add: Earthwork is also used in the singular.

Sigtryg threw up an earthwork and made a stand against the Cornish. Ch. Kingsley, Here, Ch. V, 386.

Pag. 237, s.v. nut. Add: the colloquial to be nuts to (=Dutch een bron van genot zijn voor, een kolfje naar de hand zijn van), Coralie had a tit-bit of information that she knew would be nuts to the old lady. Agn. & Eg. Castle, Diamond cut Paste, II. Ch. II, 111.

Page 266, c. Change It is, apparently, never preceded by a word denoting number etc. into It may be preceded by a word denoting number etc. It hardly appeared comfortable to the parent that she should have so many prickly offspring cuddling into her side. Westm. Gaz., No. 6276, 136.

Page 328, line 19 from top. The use of the neuter pronouns in referring to grown-up persons is not vulgar, as is here stated, but rather expresses contempt.

“Oh! the poor angry darling, there!” she laughed spitefully, “and was it jealous! Well, it shan’t be teased. But what a clever husband to know all about his wife! He should be put in a glass case in a museum. El. Glyn, The Reason Why, Ch. XXV, 232. (Note the change from it to he.)
Page 329, s. v. Providence. Also the feminine pronouns are occasionally used to refer to Providence.

Providence had given us the British Oak, the finest building material for building ships; why should we fly in her face by actually suggesting not only the sacrifice of our oak forests, but the substitution of a material which would not even float. Eng. Rev., No. 61, 116.

Page 343, b). Observe that youngster is occasionally said of the young of animals:

In turning over the grass in search of a ball, a mother hedgehog and five youngsters were discovered. Westm. Gaz., No. 6276, 13b.

Her five youngsters, about the size of small rats, were snuggling on one side of her. Ib.

Page 618, before line 7 from bottom insert:

hope. c) i. There is a hope that Great Britain may still participate in the Panama Exhibition. Westm. Gaz., No. 6401, 2c.

ii. There is hope yet. Dick., Christmas Car. 6, IV, 97.

Note. Usage may be equally divided. Compare 73.
POUTSMA, Hendrik, 1856-
   A grammar of late modern English.